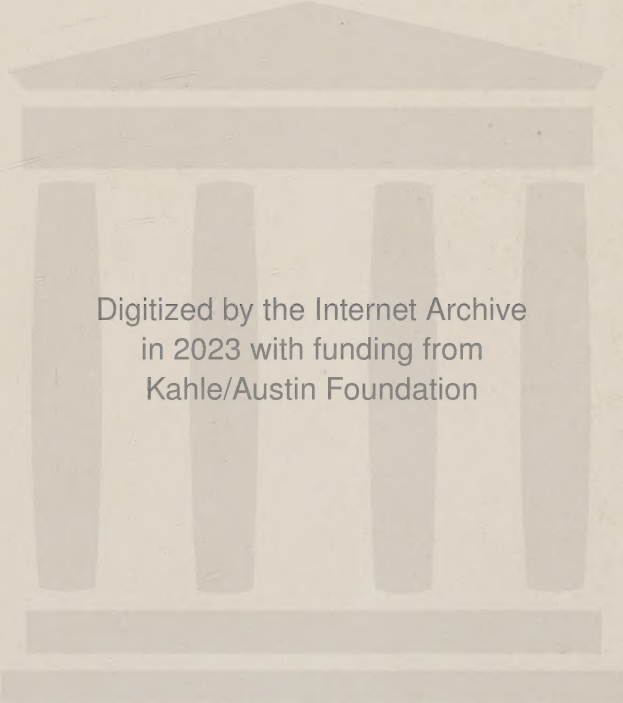


John H. Eastwood.

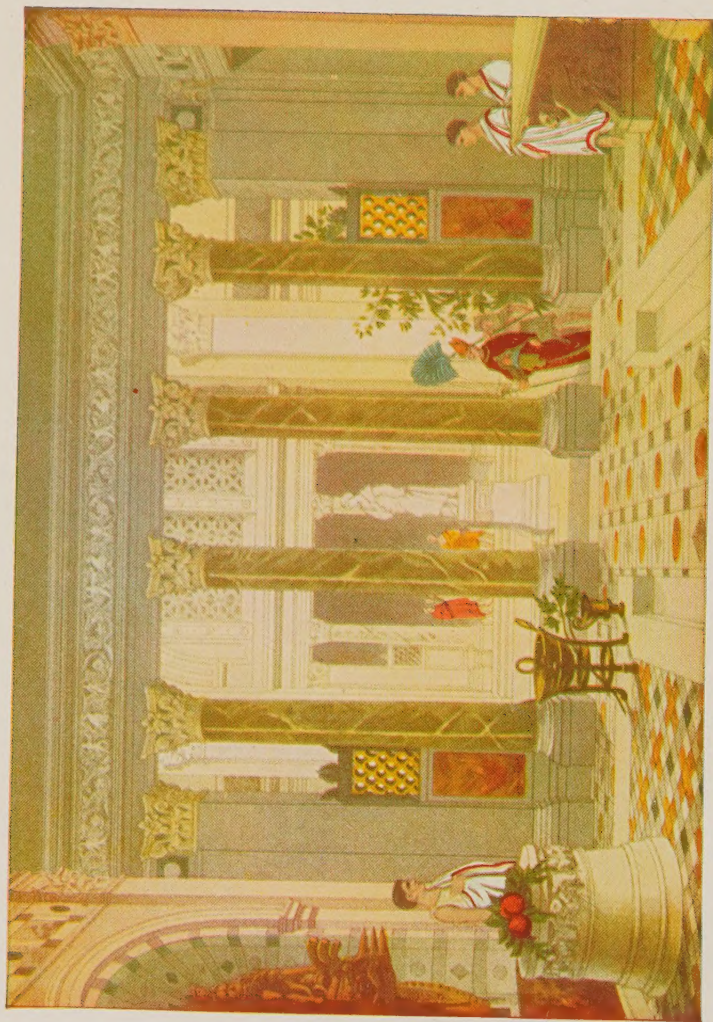
$$\cos A = \frac{b^2 + c^2 - a^2}{2bc}$$
$$1 - \cos A = 1 - \frac{b^2 + c^2 - a^2}{2bc}$$

ago - drive - 378 -

John F. Astor



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2023 with funding from
Kahle/Austin Foundation



A ROMAN PALACE

The Lake Classical Series

FIRST LATIN LESSONS

REVISED

BY

HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT

Ohio University, Athens, Ohio

AND

ANNABEL HORN

Girls' High School, Atlanta, Georgia



SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

CHICAGO

ATLANTA

NEW YORK

Copyright, 1922, 1928,
by Scott, Foresman and Company

The pictures on pages 39, 75, 113, 118, 132, and 149 are reproduced from photographs copyrighted by the Keystone View Company, and are used with their permission.

307.7



PREFACE

This book is a revision of Scott's *First Latin Lessons*, published in 1922. Much of the material of the earlier book has been retained, but numerous changes have been made both in the exercises and in other parts of the lessons. Certain features have been added in conformity with recent changes in method and emphasis in teaching, and the authors have availed themselves of the experience of many teachers who have used the earlier edition and who have offered helpful suggestions.

The following paragraphs from the preface of the earlier edition will serve to make clear the general point of view of this book and of the series to which it belongs.

The fact that the work of the first and second years of the high-school Latin course should give value in itself, apart from being merely a preparation for later study, has come to be generally recognized. The number of Latin pupils whose study of the subject does not go beyond these first two years is very large in proportion to the total number studying Latin, and probably this has always been the case. But in the effort to provide for those whose capacities and opportunities make it possible for them to continue the study of Latin through the high school and into the college, the needs of the larger group whose opportunities were certain to be more narrowly limited have not always been taken into account. Further, the fact that the values which were recognized were so far in the distance has probably tended to diminish the number of those who chose to continue beyond the two-year stage.

Evidently one of the chief values to be gained from two years' study of Latin is a better knowledge of the English language. This should involve on the one hand a clearer comprehension of grammatical structure and on the other an increased accuracy in the use of words. If these are to be among the

major objectives they should be recognized in the organization of the material which is first presented.

But young pupils will not study patiently mere lists of words for any length of time. Words must be employed in the expression of thought if they are to make on the mind of the boy or girl an impression which is sufficiently vivid to add to the store of memory. The exercises through which the vocabulary of the Latin language is to be made familiar should have something of the same kind of appeal as that made by the reading material employed in the first steps of learning to read the pupil's own language.

It may be said that the earlier edition of *First Latin Lessons* anticipated the main features of the reorganization of the elementary Latin course recommended in the Report of the Classical Investigation. The subjunctive mood and numerous other inflections and syntactical usages which had commonly been included in the work of the first year were omitted. Stress was laid on English derivation throughout, and the extensive use of connected paragraphs tended to develop a reading habit in connection with the acquisition of vocabulary. In the revised edition the same plan of organization has been retained, with such modifications as experience has suggested.

The following outline will indicate the outstanding features of the revised book:

1. *Provision for Classes of Different Ability.* Throughout the book paragraphs are given under the head of Optional Drill which may be used in accordance with the character of the class. With pupils of superior ability these paragraphs can be used for unprepared or "sight" work after the other exercises have been completed, or occasionally they may be used for tests in accuracy. With classes of medium ability portions of these paragraphs may be assigned for preparation as additional drill in connection with the learning of the forms or grammatical principles presented in the lesson, or when time

permits, the Optional Drill may be used for volunteer work at the end of the recitation period. With classes whose progress is slow these sections may be assigned for preparation in order to fix more firmly the principles and vocabulary of the lesson. When thus assigned the Optional Drill from two lessons may sometimes be combined where the length of the paragraphs permits.

2. *Short Vocabularies.* The average length of the vocabularies is less than in the previous edition of *First Latin Lessons*. No lesson has more than nine words, and usually the number is less than nine. No new vocabularies are given in lessons which include difficult paradigms. Thus the lessons which present *hic*, *ille*, *is*, *idem*, and the relative pronoun have no new words except the single word which is inflected. In connection with the first lessons taking up the third declension of nouns and the third conjugation of verbs only words of these new groups needed to provide material for drill are presented. In all such cases the lesson following that in which the new paradigm appears provides drill on these forms with new vocabulary but with no new grammatical material.

3. *Short Lessons.* The exercises and grammatical material have been planned with a view to making it possible for a class of medium ability to complete a lesson in a single recitation. The use of the Optional Drill in connection with the recitation has previously been described. It will be observed that in all cases the forms and principles to be learned are embodied in the lesson, and the pupil is not referred to the Appendix for parts of the assignment.

4. *Review Lessons.* A series of review lessons is given, each presenting the vocabulary of the preceding group of lessons and also the grammatical topics which have appeared in these lessons. In general the review lessons are so placed as to sum up a particular topic or set of topics. The review vocabularies are small enough to make possible thorough drill.

5. *Review of English Grammar.* The most essential principles of English grammar are given, together with exercises, preceding the first Latin lesson. Thereafter each new grammatical principle which is taken up is explained both in relation to English and to Latin. This coördination makes possible a review of English grammar in connection with Latin. For classes which have been given little training in English grammar the essential facts of the subject can be made clear as the work in Latin progresses.

6. *English Derivatives.* Attention is given throughout to the relation between English and Latin. Obsolete and rare words are avoided in the selection of illustrative derivatives, words being chosen which may reasonably be expected to come within the range of the pupil's reading.

7. *Latin Word Study.* A group of short lessons dealing with the formation of Latin words is distributed through the book. These have been limited to the simpler principles of word formation, since the authors believe that young pupils find only confusion in the attempt to deal extensively with this subject in the first year.

8. *Reading Exercises.* In addition to narrative paragraphs the reading exercises include a number of dialogues. This type of exercise appeals to the dramatic instinct of young pupils and also affords special drill on forms and vocabulary through the repetition involved in question and answer. Three plays from *Decem Fabulae* and the "Perseus" from Ritchie's *Fabulae Faciles* follow the lessons.

9. *Background Material.* A number of topics dealing with Roman life and history are treated in a series of English readings inserted at appropriate points. These have been written for this book, and the endeavor has been to give them a form within the comprehension of young pupils.

10. *Supplementary Lessons.* For the convenience of teachers who wish to vary somewhat from the outline given in the

Report of the Classical Investigation a series of ten supplementary lessons has been provided, presenting such topics as the ablative absolute, the dative with special verbs, deponent verbs, participles, and some others. These lessons are not an essential part of the course as developed in the book, and teachers may disregard them as a whole or may select from them such topics as seem desirable in preparation for the work of the second year. Provision is made for these topics in the second book of this series for teachers who wish to postpone them to that point. The play "Polyphemus," from *Decem Fabulae*, and the "Hercules," from *Fabulae Faciles*, are added as supplementary reading.

A special review vocabulary comprising those words in this book which are included in the list prepared by the College Entrance Examination Board for the first two years is given preceding the final vocabularies.

As explained in the preface to the first edition, the character *j* has been used to represent the consonant *i* in the spelling of Latin words in order to enable the young pupil to recognize more easily the relation between Latin words and their English derivatives. The origin of such words as *injury*, *juvenile*, *conjunction*, and the like is more easily seen when the Latin words from which they are derived are spelled *injūria*, *juvenis*, *conjūctus*, than when the classical spelling is used. Other variations from the classical spelling have been made for the same reason. Among them are *afficiō*, *appropinquō*, *expectō*. The uncontracted form of the genitive of *filius* and nouns in *-ium* is given to avoid confusion. The standard of spelling (including the use of *j*) represents in general the prevalent usage in Latin textbooks in this country and in England until a comparatively recent period. If the pupil should at a later time in his course use textbooks which employ a slightly different spelling he will have little difficulty in becoming accustomed to the forms which are used. Our Latin textbooks have never been

uniform in spelling at any time, and it seems preferable in a book for beginners to adopt the standard which will give the greatest value to the large number of those who are unable to continue the study for more than a few years.

The plays "Horatius," "Circe," "Medicus," and "Polyphemus" are used with the kind permission of Miss Ryle, the only survivor of the co-authors of *Decem Fabulae* at the time the first edition of this book was published. A few changes in the text of these plays have been made, chiefly for the purpose of decreasing the vocabulary or avoiding idioms which seemed likely to prove difficult for young pupils.

For helpful suggestions in regard to certain features of the revision the authors wish to acknowledge their obligation to Miss Marie Denneen of the North Carolina College for Women, to Miss Grace Bridge and Miss Grace Jackson of the Hyde Park High School of Chicago, and to Miss Katherine I. Smart of the Shaw Junior High School, Philadelphia, and also to the first three teachers above named for valuable assistance in reading the proofs. In the preparation of the lessons on Word Study Miss Denneen has kindly permitted the use of lists of derivatives prepared in connection with her work.

The colored picture of the Roman Forum is from *Le Forum Romain et la Voie Sacrée*, by M. l'Abbé H. Thédénat, *membre de l'Institut*, and is here used with the consent of the publishers, Plon-Nourrit et C^{ie}, of Paris, France. The other illustrations in three colors which are presented in this book are reproduced with the permission of G. Bell and Sons, London, England, from their admirable series of Latin Picture Cards, by Grainger.

January, 15, 1928

H. F. S.
A. H.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE.....	iii
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.....	11

INTRODUCTION

I. IMPORTANCE OF LATIN.....	15
II. THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.....	22
III. ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF GRAMMAR.....	26

LESSONS

I. SUBJECT AND PREDICATE.....	29
II. THE DIRECT OBJECT: ENDINGS OF ADJECTIVES.....	31
III. PLURAL NUMBER OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.....	34
IV. OMISSION OF SUBJECT: NAMES OF CASES.....	37
V. GENITIVE CASE.....	40
VI. INDIRECT OBJECT: DATIVE CASE.....	43
<i>THE CITY OF THE SEVEN HILLS</i>	47
VII. INDIRECT OBJECT (continued).....	49
VIII. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.....	52
<i>WORD STUDY I</i>	55
IX. PREPOSITIONS: ABLATIVE CASE.....	57
X. FIRST DECLENSION.....	61
FIRST REVIEW LESSON.....	65
SECOND REVIEW LESSON.....	67
XI. READING EXERCISE: SICILY.....	68
XII. CONJUGATION OF <i>sum</i>	70
XIII. FIRST CONJUGATION.....	73
<i>ROMULUS AND REMUS</i>	77
XIV. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES WITH <i>-ne</i>	79
THIRD REVIEW LESSON.....	82
XV. SECOND DECLENSION.....	83
XVI. GENDER OF NOUNS.....	85
XVII. SECOND DECLENSION (continued).....	89
XVIII. SECOND DECLENSION (continued).....	92

	PAGE
XIX. SECOND DECLENSION (continued).....	94
FOURTH REVIEW LESSON.....	98
<i>CITY LIFE IN ROMAN TIMES</i>	99
XX. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.....	101
XXI. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES: SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES.....	104
XXII. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.....	107
<i>WORD STUDY II</i>	110
XXIII. PASSIVE VOICE, PRESENT INDICATIVE.....	112
XXIV. READING EXERCISE.....	114
XXV. THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE <i>hic</i>	116
FIFTH REVIEW LESSON.....	118
<i>COUNTRY LIFE IN ROMAN TIMES</i>	120
XXVI. READING EXERCISE.....	121
XXVII. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE.....	123
XXVIII. SECOND CONJUGATION.....	126
XXIX. READING EXERCISE: <i>Colloquium</i>	129
XXX. THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE <i>ille</i>	132
<i>TRAVEL AMONG THE ROMANS</i>	134
XXXI. READING EXERCISE.....	136
SIXTH REVIEW LESSON.....	138
XXXII. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.....	139
<i>WORD STUDY III</i>	143
XXXIII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE.....	145
XXXIV. READING EXERCISE.....	148
XXXV. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.....	150
XXXVI. THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE <i>is</i>	153
SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON.....	156
<i>ROMAN SCHOOLS</i>	157
XXXVII. READING EXERCISE.....	158
XXXVIII. FUTURE TENSE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS.....	161
XXXIX. READING EXERCISE.....	163
XL. IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF <i>sum</i>	165
<i>WORD STUDY IV</i>	168
XLI. POSSESSIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON.....	169
EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON.....	173
XLII. THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS.....	174

	PAGE
XLIII. READING EXERCISE.....	177
XLIV. THIRD DECLENSION (continued).....	180
THE GODS OF THE ROMANS.....	183
XLV. THIRD DECLENSION (continued).....	185
XLVI. THIRD DECLENSION (continued).....	188
NINTH REVIEW LESSON.....	192
XLVII. PERFECT TENSE.....	192
XLVIII. READING EXERCISE: <i>Colloquium</i>	196
XLIX. PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE.....	198
WORD STUDY V.....	201
L. READING EXERCISE: <i>Hostēs Urbem Oppugnāre Parant</i>	202
LI. PRINCIPAL PARTS: STEMS OF VERBS.....	205
LII. PRINCIPAL PARTS (continued).....	208
THE ROMAN HOUSE.....	210
LIII. PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.....	213
TENTH REVIEW LESSON.....	216
LIV. THIRD CONJUGATION -ō VERBS, PRESENT INDICATIVE.....	217
LV. READING EXERCISE: <i>Bonus Dux</i>	220
LVI. THIRD CONJUGATION -iō VERBS, PRESENT INDICATIVE.....	222
LVII. ABLATIVE OF MEANS.....	226
ROMAN BOOKS.....	229
LVIII. FOURTH CONJUGATION.....	230
LIX. THE PERFECT TENSE (completed).....	233
ELEVENTH REVIEW LESSON.....	236
LX. IMPERFECT OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.....	237
LXI. READING EXERCISE: <i>Colloquium</i>	240
LXII. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN.....	242
LXIII. THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS (continued).....	245
WORD STUDY VI.....	248
LXIV. REVIEW OF PRESENT INFINITIVES.....	250
TWELFTH REVIEW LESSON.....	253
LXV. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.....	254
LXVI. READING EXERCISE: <i>Urbs Rōma</i>	257
LXVII. READING EXERCISE: <i>Colloquium</i>	260
LXVIII. THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES.....	262
LXIX. READING EXERCISE.....	265
LXX. THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING.....	267
PATRIOTISM AND HONOR AMONG THE ROMANS.....	270

	PAGE
LXXI. FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.....	272
THIRTEENTH REVIEW LESSON.....	275
LXXII. CONJUGATION OF <i>eō</i> AND ITS COMPOUNDS.....	276
LXXIII. READING EXERCISE.....	278
LXXIV. EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.....	281
LXXV. THE IMPERATIVE.....	284
LXXVI. CONJUGATION OF <i>possum</i>	287
LXXVII. READING EXERCISE: <i>Castra Rōmāna Oppugnantur</i>	289
FOURTEENTH REVIEW LESSON.....	291
LXXVIII. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.....	291
LXXIX. READING EXERCISE: <i>Rōmānus et Gallus</i>	295
ROME'S GREAT NAMES.....	297
LXXX. PAST PERFECT.....	299
LXXXI. DECLENSION OF <i>īdem</i>	302
LXXXII. READING EXERCISE: <i>Rōmulus et Remus</i>	304
LXXXIII. FUTURE PERFECT: THE PERFECT SYSTEM.....	306
FIFTEENTH REVIEW LESSON.....	309
LXXXIV. SYNOPSIS OF VERBS.....	310
LXXXV. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.....	312
LXXXVI. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES: TRANSLATION OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.....	315
ROMAN DRESS.....	318
LXXXVII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (continued).....	320
WORD STUDY VII.....	323
LXXXVIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (continued).....	324
SIXTEENTH REVIEW LESSON.....	326
LXXXIX. FORMATION OF ADVERBS.....	327
XC. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.....	329
XCI. QUOTATIONS: INDIRECT DISCOURSE.....	332
XCII. NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION.....	335
XCIII. CARDINAL NUMBERS: DECLENSION OF <i>duo</i> AND <i>trēs</i>	338
SEVENTEENTH REVIEW LESSON.....	341
ROME AND CARTHAGE.....	342
HORATIUS.....	344
THE STORY OF PERSEUS.....	351
CIRCE.....	359
LATIN SONGS.....	367
MEDICUS.....	374

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

	PAGE
I. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.....	378
II. DEPONENT VERBS.....	381
III. DEPONENT VERBS (continued).....	384
IV. DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS AND WITH SPECIAL VERBS.....	387
V. PARTICIPLES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.....	389
VI. THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.....	392
VII. TENSE OF INFINITIVES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.....	395
VIII. GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION: ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION.....	397
IX. CONJUGATION OF <i>volō</i> AND <i>ferō</i>	399
X. THE GERUND.....	401
POLYPHEMUS.....	403
HERCULES.....	410
VOCABULARY FOR ORAL EXERCISES.....	444
FAMILIAR LATIN PHRASES.....	445
GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX.....	447
SELECTED WORD LIST.....	480
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.....	1
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.....	31
INDEX.....	41

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS

	PAGE
A ROMAN PALACE	<i>Frontispiece</i>
THE INFLUENCE OF LATIN IN MODERN TIMES (Map)	17
THE ROMAN EMPIRE (Map)	18
ANCIENT BOOKS AND WRITING MATERIALS	21
ROMAN CHILDREN AT PLAY	28
A ROMAN FARM SCENE (<i>Colored</i>)	<i>Facing</i> 30
AT PLAY AND IN SCHOOL	31
A ROMAN PLOW	32
ROMAN COIN	36
A ROMAN GIRL	38
UNHAPPY OVER HIS LOAD	39
A ROMAN BOAT	40
MOSAIC PICTURE OF DOVES	45
CAT WITH A PARTRIDGE	46
THE TARPEIAN ROCK	48
SCATTERING FLOWERS	50
EUROPE IN ANCIENT TIMES (Map)	53
AN ANCIENT STREET SCENE	58
DECORATION FROM ALTAR IN POMPEII	60
ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS	63
A YOUNG ROMAN	64
A ROMAN BAKERY	67
SICILY (Map)	69
AN ANCIENT HOUSE WITH A BALCONY	72
ROMAN LANTERNS	75
ROMAN COOKING UTENSILS	76
THE CAPITOLINE WOLF	77
HUT ON THE PALATINE	78
AGRICOLA ET PUELLAE	80
OPPIDUM ITALIAE	84
TEMPLE OF PAESTUM	86
ROMAN FARM TOOLS	90
READING A ROMAN BOOK	92
A ROMAN ROAD (<i>Colored</i>)	<i>Facing</i> 94
TRAVELER LEAVING AN INN	97
A ROMAN AQUEDUCT	100
ROMAN TABLE AND LAMP	102

	PAGE
ROMAN SWORDS.....	106
A ROMAN FAMILY.....	109
LANTERN OF EARTHENWARE.....	113
A CHARIOT DRIVER.....	114
ROMAN HELMETS.....	115
CHARIOT HORSE AND DRIVER.....	117
AN ANCIENT MEAT MARKET.....	118
TRĒS PUERĪ RŌMĀNĪ.....	121
ROMAN JAVELINS.....	122
INTERIOR OF A ROMAN HOUSE (Restoration).....	124
ROMAN INFANTRY AND CAVALRY.....	128
SCENE NEAR TIVOLI.....	131
TUNIC.....	132
A TEMPLE OF JUPITER.....	133
A ROMAN CARRIAGE.....	134
ROMAN BOAT.....	135
THE RANSOM OF ROME.....	137
A ROMAN TRUMPET.....	138
GALLIC CAVALRYMAN.....	141
A STREET IN OSTIA.....	144
WRITING TABLETS.....	146
A STUBBORN ANIMAL.....	149
ROUND TEMPLE IN ROME.....	151
ANCIENT TOMB.....	155
A ROMAN SCHOOL.....	157
SHOPPING IN ROMAN DAYS.....	159
A ROMAN THEATER IN FRANCE.....	160
LOAF OF BREAD FROM POMPEII.....	163
MODEL OF THE THEATER OF HERCULANEUM.....	165
KILLING WILD ANIMALS.....	167
BARBARIAN PRISONERS.....	171
ROMAN ARCH IN FRANCE.....	175
GALLIC SOLDIERS.....	176
VERCINGETORIX.....	178
RUINS OF AN ANCIENT APARTMENT HOUSE.....	179
RŌMĀNĪ IN FLŪMINE NATĀBANT.....	181
COIN WITH TEMPLE OF JUPITER CAPITOLINUS.....	182
JUPITER.....	183
MARS.....	184
A WEARY TRAVELER.....	186
ROMAN STANDARDS.....	189
A ROMAN VICTORY.....	191
THE TOMB OF CECILIA METELLA.....	195
A BATTLE BETWEEN ROMANS AND BARBARIANS.....	197
A PACK MULE.....	200

	PAGE
THE SERVIAN WALL	203
MILESTONE	204
A STREET SCENE (<i>Colored</i>)	<i>Facing</i> 206
RUINS OF THE AMPHITHEATER AT CAPUA	207
MOSAIC PICTURE OF A TIGER	208
MODEL OF A ROMAN HOUSE	211
COURT OF A ROMAN HOUSE	212
VIEW OF THE PALATINE (Restoration)	215
A CENTURION	218
ENTRANCE TO A ROMAN FORTIFIED CAMP	221
A PAGE OF PREPOSITIONS	224
GIRLS PLAYING "JACKS"	232
A ROMAN AMPHITHEATER IN FRANCE	235
PUER IN RĪPĀ FLŪMINIS JACĒBAT	238
THE COLOSSEUM	240
ROMAN SCALES	244
FORTIFYING A ROMAN CAMP	247
A STREET OF POMPEII	251
A ROMAN MAUSOLEUM	252
ROMAN SPOONS OF SILVER	256
VIEW OF ANCIENT ROME (Restoration)	258
VIEW OF MODERN ROME FROM THE CAPITOLINE HILL	260
ARCH OVER A ROMAN ROAD	266
THE YOUNG AUGUSTUS	269
THE ROMAN FORUM—Restoration (<i>Colored</i>)	<i>Facing</i> 270
A ROMAN TEMPLE IN FRANCE	273
ANCIENT ROMAN MONEY	274
ROMAN MILLS	278
ROMAN LAMPS	280
A FIERCE COMBAT	283
ROMAN ROAD NEAR VEII	286
ROMAN RINGS	288
A STANDARD BEARER	290
GATE IN THE WALL OF MODERN ROME	293
DRAWING ON THE OUTER WALL OF A HOUSE IN POMPEII	296
CAESAR	297
CICERO	297
A ROMAN HARBOR (<i>Colored</i>)	<i>Facing</i> 302
ROMAN BUCKET	301
WALL OF AURELIAN	305
A BARBARIAN	308
GAUL (Map)	311
THE PYRAMID OF CESTIUS	315
PUER IN FLŪMEN CADIT	316
AUGUSTUS WEARING THE TOGA	318

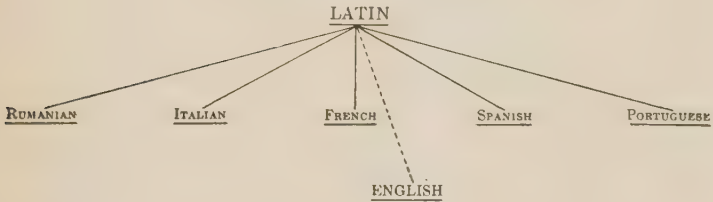
	PAGE
A ROMAN WOMAN WEARING THE STOLA AND THE PALLA.....	319
ALTAR OF JUPITER.....	322
FASCES.....	325
AN ARCHER.....	328
THE CIRCUS OF MAXENTIUS (Restoration).....	331
A ROMAN SACRIFICE.....	334
SEA-FOOD.....	337
HOISTING APPARATUS.....	340
HANNIBAL.....	342
SITE OF CARTHAGE.....	343
HORATIUS.....	350
HEAD OF MEDUSA.....	353
NEPTUNE.....	354
A ROMAN LITTER.....	373
ULIXĒS VĪNUM POLYPHĒMŌ OFFERT.....	407
JUNO.....	412
AN AMAZON.....	427

INTRODUCTION

CHAPTER I

IMPORTANCE OF LATIN

ANCIENT AND MODERN LATIN



Latin is the language which was spoken and written by the Romans. For a long time it was spoken more widely than any other language of Europe, and its importance has continued down to the present time. It is really an older form of five modern languages, French, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, and Rumanian. While these differ from each other so greatly that learning one does not make it possible for us to understand the others, they were once the same language.

Because of the fact that for a long while there were almost no schools and because there was little travel between the different regions where Latin was spoken, differences in ways of pronouncing words and in other matters connected with speaking and writing developed. These differences became so great that finally the people from one Latin-speaking country could not understand those from another, and their languages

came to have different names, though they are all merely changed forms of Latin.

LATIN WORDS IN THE ROMANCE LANGUAGES

Many words in common use in these *Romance* languages, as they are called, differ but little from their original Latin forms. Thus the French word *arbre*, meaning *tree*, is from Latin **arbor**, and *vendre*, meaning *to sell*, is from Latin **vēndere**.

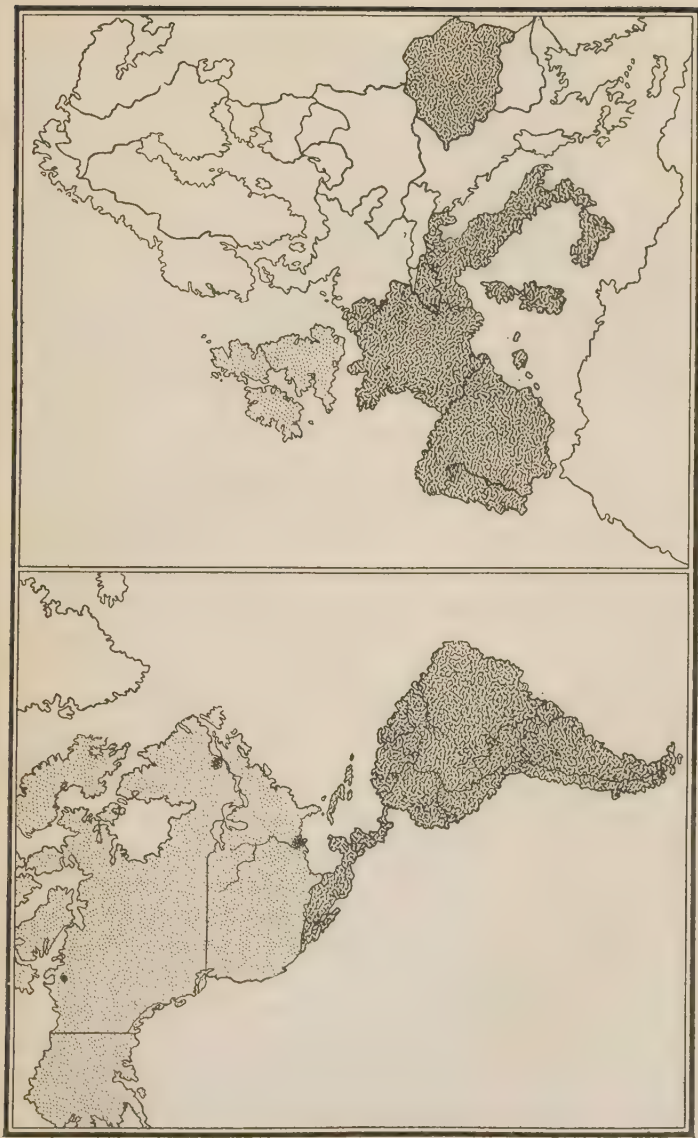
The Spanish word *agua*, meaning *water*, is from Latin **aqua**; *mar*, meaning *sea*, is from Latin **mare**; *amar*, meaning *to love*, is from Latin **amāre**.

The Latin word **vīta**, *life*, is in Italian *vita*, in Spanish *vida*, in French *vie*, in Portuguese *vida*, in Rumanian *viata*. The Latin word **venīre**, *to come*, is in Italian *venire*, in Spanish *venir*, in French *venir*, in Portuguese *vir*, in Rumanian *veni*.

In these last two words Italian has kept the form of the original Latin, but of course this is not always the case. Many Italian words have been changed from their original forms. All the Romance languages have borrowed some words from other sources, but in the main they are merely modern Latin.

A glance at the following table giving the numbers from one to ten in Latin and in the derived languages will show how close the relation is between these languages and Latin.

<i>Latin</i>	<i>Italian</i>	<i>French</i>	<i>Spanish</i>	<i>Portuguese</i>	<i>Rumanian</i>	<i>English</i>
ūnus	uno	un	uno	um	un	<i>one</i>
duo	due	deux	dos	dois	doi	<i>two</i>
trēs	tre	trois	tres	trez	trei	<i>three</i>
quattuor	quattro	quatre	cuatro	quatro	patru	<i>four</i>
quīnque	cinque	cinq	cinco	cinco	cinci	<i>five</i>
sex	sei	six	seis	seis	sesse	<i>six</i>
septem	sette	sept	siete	sete	septe	<i>seven</i>
octō	otto	huit	ocho	oito	opt	<i>eight</i>
novem	nove	neuf	nueve	nove	noua	<i>nine</i>
decem	dieci	dix	diez	dez	zece	<i>ten</i>



THE INFLUENCE OF LATIN IN MODERN TIMES

Dark shaded areas show regions where languages directly derived from Latin are spoken. Light shaded areas show regions where the language has been extensively influenced by Latin.



THE ROMAN EMPIRE

WIDE EXTENT OF THE INFLUENCE OF LATIN

In ancient times Latin was spoken only in central Italy, but as the Romans extended their power over the adjoining regions the use of their language also spread more widely. After they conquered the nations living in what is now Spain, Portugal, France, Switzerland, Jugo-Slavia, Rumania, and some other countries, Latin began to be used here as well as in Italy. Finally it replaced almost entirely the languages formerly spoken throughout all this region.

When the Roman Empire gradually lost its power, and when the barbarians drove back the Roman armies, the Latin language still remained in a large part of the territory that had been Roman. It was replaced by other languages in

parts of Switzerland, in what is now Jugo-Slavia, and in some other regions east of Switzerland. But as a result of the spread of the Romance languages over South America and part of North America in modern times, Latin may be said to be more influential today than when Rome was a great nation. Spanish is now the language of the whole of South America (except Brazil), and also of Mexico and Central America. It is also used to some extent in parts of Texas, of New Mexico, of Arizona, and of southern California. The language of Brazil is Portuguese. French is spoken in some regions of Canada and in portions of the state of Louisiana.

THE LATIN ELEMENT IN ENGLISH

In addition to the importance which Latin has through the Romance languages it has directly influenced our own language very greatly. The figure at the head of this chapter, page 15, will serve to indicate the relation of English to Latin. While English is not a Romance language, more than half of the words in the English dictionary are derived either from Latin or Greek, and many of the words of Greek origin were first borrowed by Latin from Greek and then taken into English from Latin. Some of the Latin derivatives in English have come through the Romance languages, French in particular; others have been taken directly from Latin.

In the following paragraph from the Declaration of Independence the italicized words are of Latin origin:

When in the *course of human events* it becomes *necessary* for one *people* to *dissolve* the *political* bands which have *connected* them with another, and to *assume* among the *powers* of the earth the *separate* and *equal station* to which the laws of *nature* and of *nature's* God *entitle* them, a *decent respect* to the *opinion* of mankind *requires* that they should *declare* the *causes* which *impel* them to the *separation*.

NEW WORDS FROM LATIN

Most of the new words which are being added to our language from time to time come from Latin or Greek. This is especially true of the names of new inventions. Such words as *submarine*, *automobile*, *telephone*, *tractor*, *motor*, *turbine*, are of this class. Further, the special terms used in chemistry, botany, physics, and other scientific studies are of Latin or Greek origin.

LATIN TERMS IN LAW AND MEDICINE

In the study of law, words derived from Latin are of very great importance. Such words as *jury*, *court*, *legal*, *conviction*, *acquittal*, and a great many other important words and expressions which lawyers must understand come from Latin. In the study of medicine, also, a great many Latin and Greek words or derivatives are used. The words *medicine*, *sanatorium*, *hospital*, *invalid*, *doctor*, *patient*, come from Latin. When a doctor writes a prescription he generally uses Latin words or their abbreviations.

THE FORMS OF ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

Some Latin words which have been taken into the English language have the same spelling in English as in Latin. Such are *census*, *terminus*, *stimulus*, *veto*, *momentum*, *animal*. The meanings have in some instances changed, but the greater number of such words retain the same, or nearly the same, meaning as in the original Latin.

But most English words of Latin origin have been somewhat changed in their form. We shall see later that the spelling of many English words is explained by the development of the Latin words from which they have come, and that a knowledge of Latin aids one in remembering how to spell these words.

The following Latin words have familiar English derivatives or related words:

insula, *island*

nōn, *not*

patria, *native country*

terra, *land*

Britannia, *Great Britain*

Hibernia, *Ireland*

Italia, *Italy*

America,³ *America*

Eurōpa, *Europe*

insular, insulation

non-conductor, non-interference

patriot¹, patriotic¹

territory², terra firma

Britannic

Hibernian

Italian

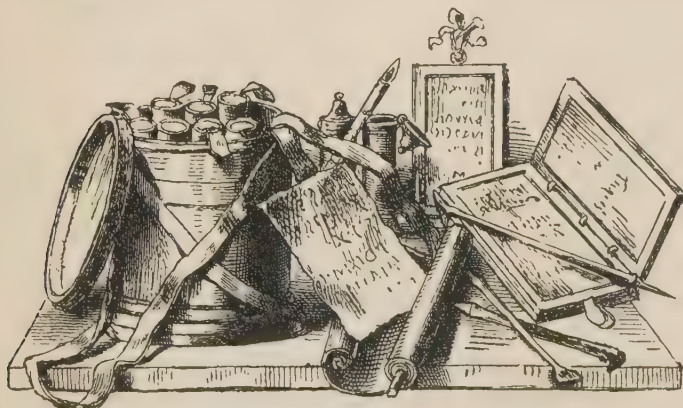
American

European

¹ These words are derived through Latin from Greek.

² There is a Latin word *territōrium*, meaning territory, which is derived from *terra*, and from this word *territory* has come into English.

³ While *America* does not represent a word known to the Romans, it is a Latin word in its formation.



ANCIENT BOOKS AND WRITING MATERIALS

CHAPTER II

THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

REGULARITY OF LATIN PRONUNCIATION

I. It is much easier for us to learn how to pronounce Latin than it is for a foreigner to learn how to pronounce English. The sounds of the letters in Latin are more regular than in English. For example in English *a* may stand for the five different sounds represented in *fate*, *fare*, *fat*, *far*, *fall*, while no letter in Latin represents more than two sounds. Further, in Latin textbooks for high schools the different sounds of the vowels are shown by their appearance in print.

There are no silent letters in Latin. In the English word *more* the final *e* is not sounded, and the word has only one syllable. On the other hand the Latin word **more** (meaning 'by custom' or 'according to custom') is pronounced in two syllables, about as we should expect if it were spelled *mo'reh*.

THE ALPHABET

II. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English except that it has no *w*. The letter *j* was not introduced until long after the time of the great Roman writers. Its sound was originally represented by *i*, which was used both as a vowel and as a consonant. The sounds of *u* and *v* were also represented by a single letter (originally *v*, later in most circumstances *u*). Roman writers seldom used *y* or *z*.

SOUNDS OF VOWELS

III. The vowels (**a, e, i, o, u**) had two sounds each, a long and a short sound. In modern high-school books long vowels are regularly printed with a mark above them (**ā, ē**, etc.). A vowel which is unmarked is short. The following table will illustrate these sounds:

Long

(ā = <i>a</i> in <i>father</i>)
ē = <i>e</i> in <i>fade</i>
ī = <i>i</i> in <i>machine</i>
ō = <i>o</i> in <i>holy</i>
ū = <i>u</i> in <i>rude</i>

Short

(a = first <i>a</i> in <i>ahá</i>)
e = <i>e</i> in <i>net</i>
i = <i>i</i> in <i>this</i>
o = <i>o</i> in <i>domain</i>
u = <i>u</i> in <i>full</i>

dāns pronounced about as if spelled in English *dahns* (with *s* as in *see*).

ad pronounced with *a* shorter than in **dāns**, but not as English *add*.

mē pronounced like English *may*.

et pronounced to rime with English *let*.

sic pronounced like English *seek*.

fit pronounced like English *fit*.

nōn pronounced to rime with English *lone*.

ob pronounced about as in English *obey*.

cūra pronounced *coo'ra*.

cum pronounced with *u* like *oo* in *foot* (not like *oo* in *too*).

SOUNDS OF DIPHTHONGS

IV. A diphthong is a blending of two vowel sounds to form a single syllable. The most important are **ae**, **au**, and **oe**. Their sounds are as follows:

ae = *ai* in *aisle* or *i* in *like*

caelum pronounced *ki'lum*.

au = *ou* in *round*

aut pronounced like English *out*.

oe = *oi* in *boil* or *oy* in *boy*

coepit pronounced *coy'pit*.

The three remaining diphthongs are of less importance. They are **ei** = *ei* in *vein*, **eu** = *eu* in *feud*, and **ui** almost = *ui* in *ruin*, but the **u** is shorter and the two are more closely blended.

SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

V. The consonants have in general the same sounds as in English. The following exceptions are to be observed:

c and **ch** have the sound of *k*

centum pronounced *ken'tum*.

pulcher pronounced *pul'ker*.

g has only one sound, that heard in *go*

regio pronounced *re'gi-o* (*g* as English *gift*).

j is equivalent to *y* in *yes*

jūdex pronounced *yu'dex*.

s has only the sound heard in *say*

rosa pronounced *ro'sa*, with *s* as in *say*.

t has always the sound heard in *top*. It does not combine with *i* to give the sound of *sh* as in *nation*.

nūntiō pronounced *nun'ti-o*.

v has the sound of *w*

vel pronounced like English *well*.

x has only the sound of *ks*

exemplar pronounced *eks-em'plar*.

bs and **bt** are equivalent to *ps* and *pt*

urbs pronounced *urps*.

ph and **th** are nearly equivalent to *p* and *t*

Pholus pronounced *Po'lus*.

Pantheon pronounced *Pan'te-on*.

NOTE. The Romans added to the sounds of **p** and **t** in **ph** and **th** a breath element so that the sounds were somewhat like those heard in a hurried pronunciation of *up here* and *at home*.

ACCENT

VI. The accent of words in Latin is fixed by definite rules, so that one is not compelled to learn how to accent each new word as a matter of memory, as is the case in English.

All words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable:
a'mō, lau'dant.

NOTE. The accent of words of more than two syllables may be taught by imitation for a few weeks, if the teacher prefers, and the learning of the rules for these words postponed.

VII. In a word of more than two syllables the accent falls on the syllable before the last if it has a long vowel or a diphthong or if its vowel is followed directly by two consonants: **lau-dā'mus, in-cau'tus, in-ter'dum, pu-el'la.**

VIII. If the vowel of the syllable before the last is short and is followed directly by another vowel or by only one consonant the accent falls on the second syllable from the last: **pe-cū'ni-a, a-gri'co-la, e-pis'tu-la.**

EXCEPTION. If the two consonants following a short vowel in the syllable before the last are a mute with **l** or **r**, that is, **bl, cl, br, cr**, etc., the accent falls on the second syllable from the last, just as it would if the vowel were followed by a single consonant or by another vowel.

NOTE. The mutes are **b, p, c, k, q, g, d, t, ph, th, ch.**

SYLLABLES

IX. A syllable must always have a vowel or a diphthong. The rules for the division of Latin words into syllables are as follows:

(1) A consonant between two vowels is taken with the vowel which follows it: **pō-nō, ha-be-ō.**

(2) Two consonants between two vowels are divided, one going with the vowel which precedes and one with the vowel which follows: **par-va, ter-ra.**

EXCEPTIONS. (1) If the two consonants are a mute followed by **l** or **r** (see VIII, note) both are taken with the vowel following: **pa-trī.** (2) In the division of a compound verb into syllables in writing or printing the prepositional element is separated from the simple verb: **ad-est.**

CHAPTER III

ELEMENTARY PRINCIPLES OF GRAMMAR

VALUE OF GRAMMAR

We learn English by hearing it spoken and by constantly using it. The mistakes which we make in childhood in the use of words are corrected many times, and we usually learn to avoid them without knowing any rules by which to decide whether an expression is correct or incorrect. But we cannot take so many years to learn a foreign language as we have taken to learn English. Therefore we need to learn general rules for the correct use of words. To understand these rules it is necessary to know the general principles of grammar.

These general principles are also useful in the study of English, since they make it possible to see the reason for choosing some forms of expression and avoiding others. The following paragraphs give a few facts which are necessary in order to understand some of the statements in the lessons which follow. Other explanations are given in the lessons where they are needed.

THE NOUN

(1) Words which are used to denote persons, places, or things are called *nouns*. Thus the words *boy, girl, house, tree, city, Italy, Rome, Spain* are nouns. Nouns are also used as the names of qualities or ideas, such as *bravery, kindness, happiness, truth, love, patriotism*.

THE VERB

(2) In the sentences *The boy walks* and *The tree has fallen* the words *walks* and *has fallen* denote actions. Such words are called *verbs*.

a. Some verbs denote mere existence or continuance in a place rather than action. In the sentences *He is in the city* and *We shall stay here*, *is* and *shall stay* are verbs of this kind.

THE ADJECTIVE

(3) We often use some other word with a noun to describe the appearance or character of the person or thing which the noun denotes. Thus, in the expressions *tall trees* and *brave men* the words *tall* and *brave* describe the trees and the men. Such words are called *adjectives*.

a. There are a few adjectives which merely show what person or thing is meant without describing the person or thing. Such are *this*, *that*, *other*, *same*. *The*, *a*, and *an* belong to this class. These last three words are called *articles*.

THE PRONOUN

(4) In the sentence *The man saw the boy and warned him*, the word *him* is used instead of *boy*. A word which is used instead of a noun is called a *pronoun*.

(5) The word denoting the person or thing referred to by a pronoun is called the *antecedent* of the pronoun. In the sentence given above *boy* is the antecedent of *him*.

CLASSES OF PRONOUNS

(6) The pronouns *I*, *you*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *we*, and *they* are called *personal* pronouns.

When the words *who*, *which*, and *what* are used to introduce questions they are called *interrogative* pronouns. When they are used in sentences which are not questions they are called *relative* pronouns. Thus, in the sentence *Who gave you a knife?* *who* is an interrogative pronoun. In the sentence *It was my*

mother who gave me a knife, who is a relative pronoun. Sometimes *that* is used instead of *who* or *which*. Thus, *The man that just came is my uncle*. When so used, *that* is a relative pronoun.

(7) Point out the nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs in the following sentences:

1. The heavy storm had injured many trees. 2. My father has read this book. 3. The horses draw a heavy load. 4. Your uncle built a new house. 5. My letter has been sent. 6. Where was the money found? 7. This picture has often been admired. 8. Why did these men leave their homes? 9. Columbus discovered a new continent. 10. These books contain many interesting stories.



ROMAN CHILDREN AT PLAY

FIRST LATIN LESSONS

LESSON I

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE

READING EXERCISE

1. 1. America est patria mea. America est patria tua. Italia nōn est patria mea.

2. Hibernia est insula et Britannia est insula. Sed America nōn est insula. Hibernia nōn est parva insula.

3. Hibernia nōn est patria tua. Britannia nōn est patria tua. Italia nōn est patria tua. Sed Italia est terra pulchra.

4. Britannia est insula magna et pulchra. Hibernia est insula magna et pulchra. America est terra magna et pulchra.

2.

VOCABULARY

est, is

et, and

mag'na, large

me'a, my, mine

par'va, small, little

pul'chra, beautiful

sed, but

tu'a, your, yours

THE ARTICLE

3. Latin has no word for the definite article *the* or for the indefinite article *a* or *an*. The Latin equivalent for *The boy has a book* or *A boy has a book* means literally *Boy has book*.

In translating we supply *the*, *a*, or *an* whenever the sense requires.

POSITION OF THE ADJECTIVE

4. The Latin adjective often follows its noun, as in the phrase **terra pulchra**. But **magna** and other adjectives denoting size commonly stand before their nouns as in English.

THE SUBJECT

5. In the first two sentences of paragraph 1 in section 1 we assert something about **America**. In the third sentence we assert something about **Italia**. These words are therefore the *subjects* of the sentences in which they stand.

Point out the subjects in all the sentences of paragraphs 3 and 4 of section 1.

THE PREDICATE NOUN

6. In the sentences of paragraph 1 in section 1, **patria** is linked to the subject by **est**, and in each of the sentences of paragraph 2 **insula** is in the same way linked to the subjects of these sentences.

The words **patria** and **insula** in these sentences are *predicate nouns*. Any form of the verb meaning *to be* (*is, are, was, were, will be, has been, etc.*) may be used to link the predicate noun to the subject.

A predicate noun denotes the same person, place, or thing as the subject.

Point out the predicate nouns in the sentences of paragraphs 3 and 4 of section 1.

THE PREDICATE ADJECTIVE

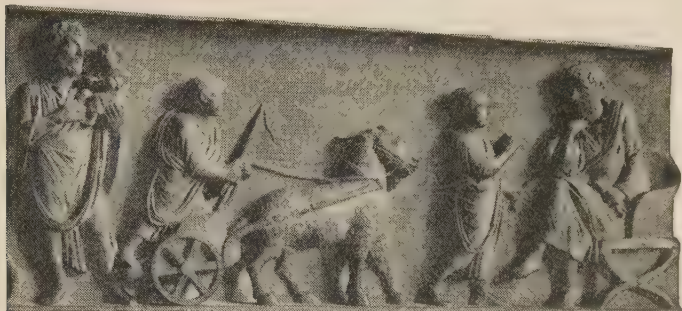
7. An adjective linked to the subject by any form of the verb meaning *to be* is a *predicate adjective*: **Insula est pulchra**, *The island is beautiful*.

8. EXERCISES FOR WRITING

1. My native country is small.
2. Italy is not an island.
3. Your native country is a beautiful land.
4. The island is large and beautiful.
5. My native country is not an island.



A ROMAN FARM SCENE



AT PLAY AND IN SCHOOL

REVIEW AND DRILL

9. 1. What are the most important modern languages which have developed from Latin?
 2. What general name is given to this group of languages?
 3. What differences are there between the English and the Latin alphabets?
 4. Read aloud the Latin of section 1.
-

LESSON II

THE DIRECT OBJECT: ENDINGS OF ADJECTIVES

READING EXERCISE

10. 1. Agricola filiam habet. Fīlia est parva. Parva filia agricolam amat. Agricola parvam filiam amat.
2. Agricola casam pulchram habet, sed casa nōn est magna. Casa mea nōn est magna. Sed parvam casam meam amō.
3. Eurōpam amās, sed filia tua Eurōpam nōn amat. Cūr filia tua Eurōpam nōn amat? Cūr filia tua Americam amat? America est patria, sed Eurōpa nōn est patria.

4. Patriam meam amō et patriam tuam amō. Patria mea est America et patria tua est Italia. Patriam tuam amās et patriam meam amās. Patria tua est terra pulchra.

11.

VOCABULARY

agri'cola, farmer

a'mās, you love

a'mat, loves

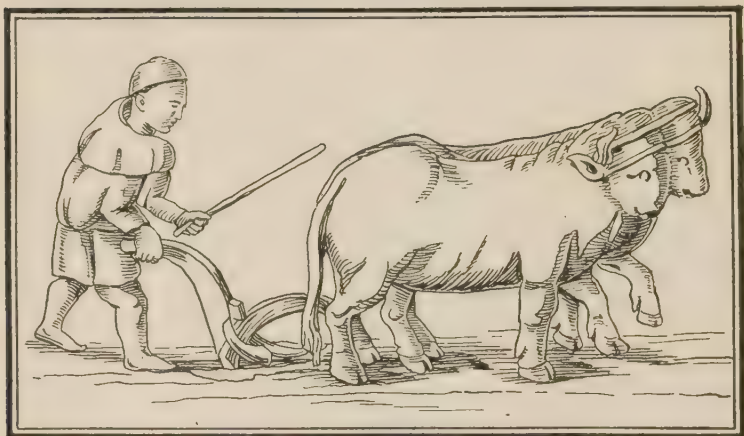
a'mō, I love

ca'sa, cottage

cūr, why?

fī'lia, daughter

ha'bet, has



A ROMAN PLOW

NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES ENDING IN -AM

12. In the sentence *Agricola filiam amat*, *The farmer loves the daughter*, **filiam** denotes the person whom the subject of the sentence is said to love. In the English sentence *The boy wrote a letter* the word *letter* denotes the thing which the subject is said to have written.

THE DIRECT OBJECT

13. A word denoting the person, place, or thing directly affected by an act or on which the act is said to terminate is

called the *direct object*. In the sentences of section 12, *filiam* and *letter* are direct objects.

14. In the preceding reading exercise, section 10, the direct objects end in **-am**. Adjectives modifying direct objects also end in **-am** in this exercise, while those modifying subjects or predicate nouns end in **-a**.

a. A predicate adjective modifies the subject of its clause.

b. The Latin words for *my* or *mine* and *your* or *yours* are adjectives, and their endings, like those of other adjectives, are determined by the words with which they are used.

POSITION OF THE VERB

15. The Latin verb commonly stands at the end of its sentence, as in the reading exercise, section 10. But forms of the verb meaning *to be* (*is, are, was, were, will be, etc.*) frequently come before the predicate noun or adjective.

THE USE OF "DO" IN NEGATIVE SENTENCES AND QUESTIONS

16. The English sentence *I do not love the cottage* is in Latin **Casam nōn amō** (*I love not the cottage*). Similarly, *Why do you love the island?* is in Latin **Cūr īnsulam amās?** (*Why love you the island?*). In such sentences Latin has no equivalent for *do*.

COMPLETION EXERCISE

17. Copy the following sentences, putting the proper endings (**-a** or **-am**) in place of the dashes.

1. Fīlia tua Americ— amat.
2. Patria mea nōn est Hiberni—.
3. Patri— tu— amās.
4. Fīlia tua īnsul— pulchr— amat.
5. Patria tua nōn est īnsul—.

OPTIONAL DRILL

TO THE TEACHER: The paragraphs for Optional Drill throughout the book may be used for practice or for study in class without previous preparation, or selected parts may be assigned for home study. It is not expected that they shall as a whole be made a part of the work regularly assigned for preparation.¹

18. Translate: 1. Patria tua, casa tua, filia tua. 2. Īnsula pulchra, terra pulchra, magna terra. 3. Patriam amō; patriam amās. 4. Īnsula est magna; ĩnsula est pulchra. 5. Filia tua ĩnsulam amat. 6. Agricola ĩnsulam amat. 7. Magnam ĩnsulam amās. 8. Cūr ĩnsulam amās?

(a) Write two English sentences containing direct objects.

(b) Write two English sentences containing predicate nouns.

(c) After copying the sentences of section 17 draw one line under each predicate noun and two lines under each direct object.

LESSON III

PLURAL NUMBER OF NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES

READING EXERCISE

19. 1. Fīlia tua nōn multam pecūniam habet. Sed agricola multam pecūniam habet. Agricola pecūniam amat.

2. Agricola parvās filiās habet. Parvae filiae agricolam amant. Agricola parvās puellās amat. Fīlia tua quoque parvās puellās amat.

3. Agricola parvam casam habet. Parva casa est pulchra. Parvam et pulchram casam laudāmus. Magnam casam tuam nōn laudāmus. Filiae tuae casam tuam nōn amant.

4. Britannia et Hibernia sunt magnae ĩnsulae. Italia et

¹For suggestions regarding the use of these paragraphs with classes grouped according to ability see page 2 of the Preface.

America sunt terrae pulchrae. Italia et America nōn sunt insulae.

5. Eurōpa multās insulās habet. Eurōpa terrās pulchrās quoque habet. Eurōpam laudāmus, sed Americam amāmus.

20.

VOCABULARY

amā'mus, we love	pecū'nia, money
a'mant, (they) love	puel'la, girl
laudā'mus, we praise	quo'que, also
mul'ta, much (mul'tae, many)	sunt, (they) are

SUBJECTS, PREDICATE NOUNS, AND OBJECTS IN THE PLURAL

21. In the sentence **Puellae casam amant**, *The girls love the cottage*, the subject is in the plural number and ends in **-ae**.

In the sentence **Britannia et Hibernia sunt insulae**, *Great Britain and Ireland are islands*, the predicate noun is also in the plural number and ends in **-ae**.

In the sentence **Puellae casās amant**, *The girls love the cottages*, the direct object is plural and ends in **-ās**.

The nouns in the plural number which are used as subjects or predicate nouns in the preceding reading exercise end in **-ae**, while the direct objects in the plural end in **-ās**.

FORMS OF ADJECTIVES WITH PLURAL NOUNS

22. The adjectives which modify plural subjects or plural predicate nouns in the preceding reading exercise end in **-ae**; those which modify plural direct objects end in **-ās**.

COMPLETION EXERCISE

23. 1. Parva puella cas— tu— (*your cottage*) amat.
2. Casae sunt parv— sed pulchr—.
3. America insul— pulchr— (*beautiful islands*) habet.
4. Filia mea et filia tua sunt puell— pulchr—.
5. Patri— me— (*my native land*) amō.



ROMAN COIN

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

24. 1. What are *pecuniary* difficulties? 2. What is a *laudatory* speech? 3. What is the meaning of *multicolored*? 4. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *amiable*.

OPTIONAL DRILL

25. 1. Parvam puellam laudāmus; parvās puellās laudāmus. 2. Casa magna est; casae magnae sunt. 3. Īnsulam pulchram amāmus; ĩnsulās pulchrās amāmus. 4. Terrās pulchrās laudāmus; patriam tuam quoque laudāmus. 5. Agricola casam habet; agricola pecūniam quoque habet. 6. Agricola patriam amat; agricolae patriam amant. 7. Īnsula est parva; ĩnsulae sunt parvae.

26. 1. The girls love the small cottages. 2. We praise the beautiful islands. 3. My daughter loves your daughters. 4. The farmer also loves your native country. 5. We love the little girls.

(a) Write the direct object form of the words for *cottages* and *girls*.

(b) Point out the subjects, objects, and predicate nouns in paragraphs 3 and 4 of section 19.

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: NUMBER

27. We have different forms of pronouns and also of nouns to show whether we are referring to one person or thing or to more than one. Thus *I* refers to one person, *we* refers to more than one. This distinction is called *number*. *I* is in the *singular* number, and *we* is in the *plural* number. In the same way, *book* is in the singular number, and *books* is in the plural number.

LESSON IV

OMISSION OF SUBJECT: NAMES OF CASES

READING EXERCISE

28. 1. Fīlia mea multās epistulās scribit. Epistulae saepe longae sunt. Longās epistulās amāmus. Fīliae tuae quoque epistulās longās amant.

2. Fīliae tuae sunt parvae puellae. Fīliās tuās saepe vidēmus. Sunt puellae bonae. Fīliās tuās saepe laudāmus. Fīliās tuās amāmus.

3. Nauta magnam casam habet. Saepe nautam vidēmus. Nauta patriam amat sed Eurōpam quoque amat. Italiam et Britanniam et Hiberniam amat.

4. Schola tua est bona, et scholam tuam saepe laudāmus. Schola mea quoque est bona. America scholās bonās habet. Eurōpa quoque multās scholās bonās habet.

5. Parvam casam tuam saepe vidēmus. Casam tuam laudāmus. Sed parva puella casam tuam nōn amat. Puella est filia tua. Magnam casam amat. Sed casa tua est pulchra.

29.

VOCABULARY

bo'na, good
epis'tula, letter
lon'ga, long
nau'ta, sailor

— sae'pe, often
scho'la, school
scri'bit, writes
— vidē'mus, we see.

OMISSION OF THE SUBJECT

30. We have seen that **amō** is translated *I love*, without a separate word for *I*. In the same manner **amat**, which is translated *loves* when used with a noun as subject, may be translated *he loves* or *she loves* when the preceding sentence makes it perfectly clear who the subject is.

Nauta Americam amat. Hiberniam quoque amat, The sailor loves America. He also loves Ireland.

We may translate *scribit* *he writes* or *she writes* if used without a subject, and *est* thus used may mean *he is* or *she is* or *it is*.

NAMES OF CASES

31. The subject is said to be in the *nominative case* and the direct object is said to be in the *accusative case*.

The endings for the nominative and accusative in all the nouns we have had thus far are as follows:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nominative	-a	-ae
Accusative	-am	-ās

32.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

1. We praise your long letter.
2. The sailor loves money, but he does not have money.
3. We see the small islands and the cottages.
4. The girl loves your good daughters.

5. The farmer does not write many letters.



A ROMAN GIRL

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

33. 1. What do we mean by *scholastic* standards? 2. What is an *aeronaut*? 3. What is meant by *inscribe*? Find other words suggested by *scribit*. 4. What is the meaning of *longevity*? 5. What is an *epistle*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

34. 1. Epistula bona; epistulae bonae; casa bona. 2. Parva schola; magna schola; magnae scholae. 3. Scholam tuam vidēmus; epistulam tuam vidēmus. 4. Nauta epistulam scribit; puella saepe epistulās scribit. 5. Nauta epistulam longam habet; nauta epistulās longās habet. 6. Nauta pecūniam habet; pecūniam amat. 7. Casam vidēmus; est casa magna. 8. Casa tua est parva, sed est casa pulchra.

35. 1. We praise the islands; we praise the sailors. 2. We do not praise your long letter. 3. We often see the large islands. 4. Your letters are good, but (they) are not long. 5. Why does not the sailor write good letters?

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: CASE

36. Such pronouns as *he*, *she*, and *who* have different forms to show how they are used in sentences. We say *He walks*, *I see him*, and *I have his ball*. In these sentences *he* is subject, *him* is direct object, and *his* refers to a person as possessing something. In like manner we use *she* and *who* as subjects, *her* and *whom* as direct objects of a verb or as objects of a preposition, and *her* (or *hers*) and *whose* to denote the person possessing something.

A noun has the same form for the subject as for the object of a verb or a preposition, but it has a different form to refer to a person as possessing something. Thus we say *The boy walks*, *I see the boy*, *I have the boy's ball*. These different forms and uses of nouns and pronouns in sentences are called *cases* or *case uses*. The subject is in the *nominative case*, the direct object is in the *objective case*, and the word referring to the possessor is in the *possessive case*.



UNHAPPY OVER HIS LOAD

LESSON V

GENITIVE CASE

READING EXERCISE

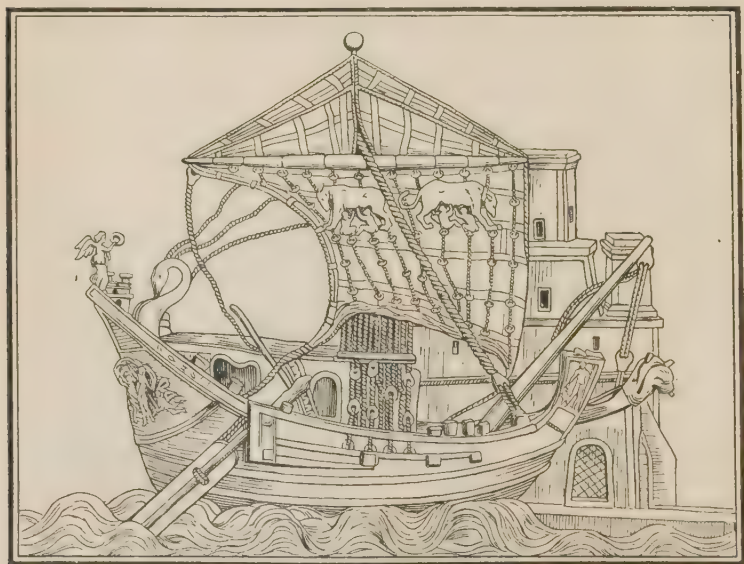
37. 1. Casa nautae est parva. Sed agricola magnam casam habet. Filiae nautae magnam casam agricolae laudant.

2. Poëta incola Americae est. Sed Hibernia est patria poëtae. Poëta filiam habet. America est patria filiae poëtae. Filia poëtae Americam amat.

3. Incolae insulārum sunt nautae et agricolae. Vīta agricolārum est vīta bona. Poëtae saepe vītam agricolārum laudant.

4. Vītam nautārum interdum laudāmus. Nautae multās terrās vident. Sed vīta nautārum interdum periculōsa est.

5. Fulvia est filia agricolae. Agricola Fulviam amat. Fulvia est puella pulchra.



A ROMAN BOAT

38.

VOCABULARY

Ful'via, Fulvia (<i>name of a girl or woman</i>)	periculō'sa, dangerous
in'cola, inhabitant	poē'ta, poet
inter'dum, sometimes	vi'dent, (they) see
lau'dant, (they) praise	vī'ta, life

LATIN NOUNS DENOTING OWNERSHIP OR POSSESSION

39. **Casa nautae est parva**, *The sailor's cottage is small.* Latin nouns ending in **-a** in the nominative and in **-am** in the accusative have a form ending in **-ae** in the singular to denote ownership or possession. The corresponding form in the plural ends in **-ārum**. **Casae nautārum sunt parvae**, *The sailors' cottages are small.*

TWO FORMS OF TRANSLATION FOR WORDS DENOTING POSSESSION, OWNERSHIP, ETC.

40. This form denoting ownership or possession and the like may be translated either by the possessive case, as in the examples above, or by *of* and the noun. Thus **casa nautae** may be translated either *the sailor's cottage* or *the cottage of the sailor*. In translating we use whichever of the two forms seems more natural in English.

a. While the ending of this form denoting possession is the same in the singular as is the subject form of the plural in the nouns we have had thus far, it will be possible to decide from the general meaning of the sentence how to translate such a form.

THE GENITIVE CASE

41. The Latin nouns described in section 40 are said to be in the *genitive case*. In addition to ownership the genitive denotes some other ideas for which we use the possessive case or a phrase with *of*, as *the boy's sister*, *the girl's father*, and the like.

a. An adjective modifying a noun in the genitive is also in the genitive and is in the same number as the noun.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

42. Write the Latin for the italicized words and phrases in the following sentences:

1. Ireland is the *sailor's* native country.
2. The inhabitants of *the islands* praise our native country.
3. Fulvia loves the *poet's* daughters.
4. We see the cottages of *the farmers*.
5. The *girl's* letters are long.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

43. When we say a thing is of *vital* importance we usually mean that it is absolutely necessary or that it is extremely important. But the original meaning of the word was stronger than this. From the origin of the word a *vital* matter should mean what we call "a matter of life and death." In this case as in many others the modern word has been somewhat changed from its earlier sense, though it is used in a few phrases with the meaning "necessary for life."

OPTIONAL DRILL

44. 1. *Filia agricolae; patria poëtae; patria poëtārum.*
2. *Epistula puellae; epistulae puellārum.* 3. *Interdum vītam agricolārum laudāmus.* 4. *Nautae interdum vītam agricolārum laudent.* 5. *Agricolae interdum vītam nautārum laudent.* 6. *Vīta nautae saepe periculōsa est.* 7. *Vīta tua periculōsa est.* 8. *Vīta poëtae nōn saepe periculōsa est.* 9. *Incolae insulae terram vident.* 10. *Filia agricolae epistulam bonam scribit.*

45. 1. Of the land; of the lands; of the letter; of the letters.
2. The sailor's daughter is small. 3. We praise the native



MOSAIC PICTURE OF DOVES

These mosaic pictures were made up of many small pieces of colored stone. Sometimes the floors of Roman buildings were decorated with fine mosaics.

COMPLETION EXERCISE

51. 1. Agricola epistulam poēt— (*to the poet*) dat.
2. Poēta pecūniam naut— (*to the sailor*) dat.
3. Rosās parv— puell— (*to the little girls*) dō.
4. Parvae puellae mihi epistul— (*letters*) dant.
5. Filia tua naut— (*to the sailors*) pecūniam dat.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

52. The words *legible*, *legibly*, and *illegible* are related to the Latin word of which *legit* is a form. Writing which is *legible* can be read; *illegible* writing cannot be read. One writes *legibly* if what he writes can be read. *Legend* also is derived from the same verb; and from *lēctum*, one of its forms which will be learned later, we have *lecture*. Originally *lecture* meant *a reading*.

a. An adjective modifying a noun in the genitive is also in the genitive and is in the same number as the noun.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

42. Write the Latin for the italicized words and phrases in the following sentences:

1. Ireland is the *sailor's* native country.
2. The inhabitants of *the islands* praise our native country.
3. Fulvia loves the *poet's* daughters.
4. We see the cottages of *the farmers*.
5. The *girl's* letters are long.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

43. When we say a thing is of *vital* importance we usually mean that it is absolutely necessary or that it is extremely important. But the original meaning of the word was stronger than this. From the origin of the word a *vital* matter should mean what we call "a matter of life and death." In this case as in many others the modern word has been somewhat changed from its earlier sense, though it is used in a few phrases with the meaning "necessary for life."

OPTIONAL DRILL

44. 1. Filia agricolae; patria poëtae; patria poētārum.
2. Epistula puellae; epistulae puellārum. 3. Interdum vītam agricolārum laudāmus. 4. Nautae interdum vītam agricolārum laudant. 5. Agricolaе interdum vītam nautārum laudant. 6. Vīta nautae saepe periculōsa est. 7. Vīta tua periculōsa est. 8. Vīta poëtae nōn saepe periculōsa est. 9. Incolae insulae terram vident. 10. Filia agricolae epistulam bonam scribit.

45. 1. Of the land; of the lands; of the letter; of the letters.
2. The sailor's daughter is small. 3. We praise the native



MOSAIC PICTURE OF DOVES

These mosaic pictures were made up of many small pieces of colored stone. Sometimes the floors of Roman buildings were decorated with fine mosaics.

COMPLETION EXERCISE

51. 1. Agricola epistulam poēt— (*to the poet*) dat.
2. Poēta pecūniam naut— (*to the sailor*) dat.
3. Rosās parv— puell— (*to the little girls*) dō.
4. Parvae puellae mihi epistul— (*letters*) dant.
5. Fīlia tua naut— (*to the sailors*) pecūniam dat.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

52. The words *legible*, *legibly*, and *illegible* are related to the Latin word of which **legit** is a form. Writing which is *legible* can be read; *illegible* writing cannot be read. One writes *legibly* if what he writes can be read. *Legend* also is derived from the same verb; and from **lēctum**, one of its forms which will be learned later, we have *lecture*. Originally *lecture* meant *a reading*.

OPTIONAL DRILL

53. 1. Parvae puellae epistulās dō; parvīs puellīs epistulās dō. 2. Agricola poētae pecūniam dat; poēta agricolae pecūniam dat. 3. Incolae insulae nautae epistulās dant; nautae incolīs insulae pecūniam dant. 4. Rosam filiae tuae dō; filia tua mihi epistulam dat. 5. Parvae puellae pecūniam dō et parva puella est laeta. 6. Nautae epistulam dō, et nauta epistulam legit. 7. Filia tua pecūniam habet sed Fulviae pecūniam nōn dat. 8. Fulvia epistulam legit et epistulam mihi ostendit.

54. 1. The little girl gives money to the farmers. 2. The little girls give money to the farmer. 3. The farmer gives letters to the little girl. 4. The farmer gives letters to the little girls. 5. I give a rose to the little daughter of the farmer. 6. The poet gives money to the sailors.

(a) Write two English sentences, each containing a direct and an indirect object.

(b) Write the nominative, genitive, dative, and accusative, singular and plural, of the words for *letter* and *cottage*.



CAT WITH A PARTRIDGE

A mosaic picture

THE CITY OF THE SEVEN HILLS

Near the bank of the Tiber River, in the western part of central Italy, stands a group of hills which have been famous for many centuries. These hills were the site of ancient Rome, though the modern city has spread beyond them. At some period in the distant past a group of settlers chose this place as a location for their homes, and from the humble beginning of a small hilltop village there grew a powerful city.

These early settlers were perhaps herdsmen in search of a place which could be easily defended against an attack by enemies. In modern times cities are usually located on streams which will afford plenty of water, and this means that they are built in valleys or plains. But the founders of ancient cities and towns took care first of all to choose a situation which would be difficult for an enemy to attack successfully.

The original Roman settlement is believed to have been on the hill called the Palatine, which stands not far from the river and which is cut off from all the other hills by valleys. This hill has steep slopes or precipices on part of its sides, and on top there is room for such a village as these early settlers might have required.

When Rome had become a great city the Palatine was the favorite location for the homes of wealthy and prominent men. Still later the emperors built their magnificent residences here. Our English word "palace" is derived from *Palatium*, the Latin name for the Palatine, because of the elaborate and costly buildings which stood on this hill. At the present time the Palatine is covered with a mass of ruins, which mark the site of these imperial palaces.

Another hill called the Capitoline, or the Capitol, from the Latin name *Capitolium*, stands not far from the Palatine. There was on this hill a famous temple which was also called the Capitol (*Capitolium*). From this we have borrowed the name



THE TARPEIAN ROCK

which we give to the building at Washington in which Congress meets and to the buildings in the various states in which the state legislatures hold their sessions. On one side of the Capitoline Hill was a high precipice called the Tarpeian Rock, from which criminals were thrown as a method of execution.

South of the Palatine was the Aventine, on which many of the poorer class lived. The Circus Maximus, a fa-

mous place for chariot races, lay in the valley between the Palatine and the Aventine. The four remaining hills are the Caelian, the Esquiline, the Viminal, and the Quirinal. The Viminal is supposed to have taken its name from bushes or shrubs similar to willows which grew there, so that it was to the Romans "Willow Hill." Some of the important buildings in connection with the modern Italian government are on the Quirinal.

A high wall of large hewn stones was built around the city after it had come to include all the seven hills, and small parts of this wall remain today. At a later time the city outgrew the limits of this wall, and another was built, which included a larger area than that of the original seven hills. Most of this later wall still stands, though the city has again spread beyond the boundary formed by the wall.

LESSON VII

INDIRECT OBJECT (Continued)

READING EXERCISE

55. 1. Fulvia Cornēliae rosam dat. Cornēlia rosam filiae agricolae ostendit. Filia agricolae quoque rosam cupit, sed Fulvia filiae agricolae rosam nōn dat.

2. Agricolaepistolās dō, et agricola mihi pecūniam dat. Agricolaepistolās legit. Agricolaepistolās Fulviae ostendit, sed Fulviaepistolās nōn legit.

3. Puella mihi casam poētae mōnstrat. Casa est parva. Poētam nōn videō, sed filiam poētae interdum videō. Filia poētae parvam casam amat.

4. Poēta filiae pictūram dat. Filia poētae mihi pictūram ostendit. Pictūram laudō et poētam laudō. Filia poētae est laeta puella.

5. Nauta mihi fābulam nārrat. Fulvia quoque mihi interdum fābulās nārrat. Filia tua multās fābulās legit et saepe parvis puellis fābulās nārrat. Parvae puellae fābulās amant.

56.

VOCABULARY

Cornē'lia, Cornelia (<i>name of a woman or girl</i>)	mōn'strat, points out
cu'pit, wishes, desires	nār'rat, tells
fā'bula, story	pictū'ra, picture
lau'dō, I praise	vi'deō, I see

57.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

1. Fulvia gives your daughter a rose.
2. I often give letters to the sailor.
3. The farmer gives money to the poet.
4. The poet shows the farmer a letter.
5. The girl points out the island to the farmer.



SCATTERING FLOWERS

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

58. 1. What is meant by a *fabulous* sum of money? 2. What is *narrative* poetry? 3. What connection can you see between *demonstration* and **mōnstrat**? 4. Find an adjective which is connected in derivation with **pictūra**.

OPTIONAL DRILL

59. 1. Fulvia fābulam mihi nārrat; Fulvia parvīs puellīs fābulam nārrat. 2. Cornēlia parvīs puellīs pictūram ostendit; nauta parvae puellae pictūram ostendit. 3. Fīlia tua mihi īsulam mōnstrat; nauta agricolae īsulam mōnstrat. 4. Pictūram pulchram laudāmus; pictūrās pulchrās laudāmus. 5. Casam Cornēliae videō; Cornēlia casam mihi mōnstrat. 6. Saepe poētās laudāmus; interdum poētās laudāmus.

60. 1. The sailor tells stories to the farmer; the sailor tells a story to the farmers. 2. The little girl wishes a rose; Fulvia gives the little girl a rose. 3. The farmer's daughter points out the cottage to me. 4. Cornelia shows the picture to the poet. 5. I see the farmer's cottage. 6. I praise the sailor's stories.

(a) Rewrite the last sentence in paragraph 4 of section 55, changing the subject to the plural and making any other changes that are necessary.

(b) Rewrite the last sentence of paragraph 5 of section 55, changing the subject to the singular and making any other changes that are necessary.

SUPPLEMENTARY REVIEW OF GRAMMAR

TO THE TEACHER: This review may be omitted with classes which recognize sentence elements with sufficient readiness, or it may be postponed to such a time as seems desirable.

THE SUBJECT

61. A word denoting the person, place, or thing about whom or about which we say or ask something is called the subject of the sentence: *The boy caught the ball. Where does your sister live?*

THE PREDICATE

62. What we say or ask about the subject is called the *predicate*. A noun or adjective in the predicate which is linked to the subject by a form of the verb *to be* (*is, are, was, were, will be, has been, etc.*) is called a *predicate noun* or a *predicate adjective*: *That boy is my friend. The apple is red.*

THE DIRECT OBJECT

63. A word denoting the person, place, or thing directly affected by the action of the verb or on which the action may be said to terminate is called the *direct object*: *The man helps his brother. They watched the game.*

THE INDIRECT OBJECT

64. A word denoting the person to whom something is given, said, or shown is the *indirect object*: *I gave your father the letter.*

a. We sometimes use *to* with the indirect object: *I gave a letter to your father.*

OPTIONAL DRILL

65. Point out the subjects, predicate nouns and adjectives, direct objects, and indirect objects in the following English sentences: 1. The storm damaged the crops. 2. The friends of this girl sent presents. 3. The engine of the airplane is small. 4. The large tree is an oak. 5. I gave the paper to your mother. 6. Tom showed his friend the medal. 7. The Indians told the scout a strange story. 8. Washington was a patriot. 9. Who saw the accident? 10. Why did the policeman arrest the man? 11. The man was a criminal.

LESSON VIII

DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

READING EXERCISE

66. 1. *Filia tua parvae puellae est benigna. Parva puella filiam tuam amat. Filia tua parvae puellae rosam dat. Rosa puellae est grāta.*

2. *Poētae saepe Italiam laudant. Italia poētīs cāra est. Sed patria mea mihi est cāra.*

3. *Epistulam filiae tuae nōn laudō. Epistula longa est, sed mihi nōn est grāta. Filia tua nōn bene scribit. Sed epistula tibi est grāta.*

4. *Fenestram casae tuae videō. Fenestra parva est. Casa agricolae multās fenestrās habet.*

5. *America multās silvās habet. Silvae Americae sunt magnae. Hibernia magnās silvās nōn habet.*

6. *Hispānia et Italia sunt terrae Eurōpae. Poētae interdum Hispāniam laudant. Est terra pulchra.*



EUROPE IN ANCIENT TIMES

67.

VOCABULARY

be'ne, well

benig'na, kind

cā'ra, dear

fenes'tra, window

grā'ta, pleasing

Hispā'nia, Spain

sil'va, forest

ti'bi, to you, you (*as indirect object*)

ADJECTIVES WITH A DEPENDENT DATIVE

68. In the sentence *Fulvia puellae benigna est*, *Fulvia is kind to the girl*, **puellae** is in the dative.

With adjectives meaning *kind*, *friendly*, *dear*, *pleasing*, *hostile*, *near*, and some others the dative is often used as the equivalent of an English phrase with *to*.

POSITION OF THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE

69. (1) The genitive commonly stands after the word on which it depends, even though the corresponding English word denoting possession would stand first. Thus *the poet's cottage* may be translated **casa poëtae**.

(2) The dative commonly stands before the word on which it depends. The words *kind to me* would take in Latin the order *to me kind*.

(3) The indirect object may either precede or follow the direct object.

70.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

1. Italy is dear to the poet.
2. Fulvia is kind to your daughter.
3. The roses are pleasing to the little girls.
4. I give the little girl a rose.
5. Your letters are not pleasing to me.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

71. The word *Pennsylvania* is derived from **silva** and the name of William Penn, the leader of the early settlers in that state. In this word the first syllable of **silva** has become *syl-*. There is an English adjective, *sylvan*, meaning "of the forests," in which the same change is seen. The name *Sylvester* is also derived from **silva**.

OPTIONAL DRILL

72. 1. Epistula mea tibi grāta est; epistulae meae tibi grātae sunt. 2. Epistulae tuae Cornēliae grātae sunt; epistulae Cornēliae tibi grātae sunt. 3. Casa tua magnam fenestram habet; casa mea multās fenestrās habet. 4. Fenestrās casae tuae videō; fenestram casae Cornēliae videō. 5. Puella est bona et benigna. 6. Puella bona tibi est cāra. 7. Patria tua tibi

est cāra. 8. Rosās pulchrās agricolae videō. 9. Patria mea magnās silvās habet. 10. Nauta nōn bene scribit. 11. Nauta nōn bene legit.

73. 1. Your daughter is dear to the little girl. 2. The little girls are dear to your daughter. 3. The roses are pleasing to the poet. 4. The island is pleasing to the sailor. 5. The little girl is kind to the sailor. 6. The forest is pleasing to you. 7. The little cottage is pleasing to you. 8. I see the window of the little cottage.

(a) Point out all the datives in section 66.

(b) Rewrite the third sentence in paragraph 1, section 66, changing the direct and indirect objects to the plural.

WORD STUDY I

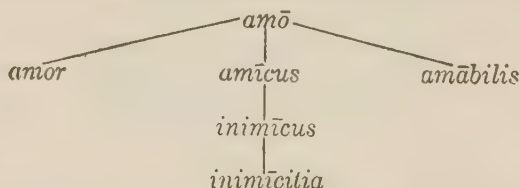
TWO CLASSES OF DERIVATIVES

We have seen (page 20) that many English words, such as *census*, *terminus*, *stimulus*, *veto*, *animal*, were originally Latin words, and have been taken into English without change of spelling. These have become so fully a part of our English vocabulary that we do not realize that they are borrowed from another language. In fact, however, they would be recognized by an ancient Roman, if he could come back to earth, as part of his own speech, unchanged in form in the course of two thousand years.

Many other words of Latin origin have been greatly changed from their earlier spelling and pronunciation. Examples are *humble*, *count*, *blame*, *sure*. These have not been taken directly from Latin into English, but have come down through French, and have been affected by the habits of pronunciation and the spelling of later times. The greater number of English derivatives from Latin are of this second class.

WORD FAMILIES

In studying the derivation of English words from Latin it is important to recognize the fact that there are groups of related Latin words. Thus **amō** (*I love*), **amor** (*love, noun*), **amicus** (*friend*), **amābilis** (*lovely*), **inimicus** (*enemy*), **inimicitia** (*enmity*) are related. They have a common element which is represented by **am-** in the first four of the group and by **-im-** in the last two. We might indicate their connection as follows:



In explaining the derivation of an English word we sometimes say that it is related to a certain Latin word though it does not come directly from that word but from another of the same family or group. Thus we may say the word *amiable* is related in derivation to **amō**, though it comes directly from **amābilis**, which is in turn derived from **amō**.

Some of the Latin words from which our English derivatives have come were not often used by Roman writers, and therefore the English derivative is more easily explained by its relation to some familiar word of the group to which the Latin original belonged.

FINAL -A OF LATIN REPRESENTED BY -E

Some words of the Latin first declension have an English form in which final **a** is represented by English **-e**. The following examples have been seen:

rosa	rose
fābula	fable
epistula	epistle

In the last two of these, certain other changes have taken place in addition to that of *a* to *e*. It is not quite exact to say that final *a* of the nominative has become *e* but we may disregard for the present the details of this change.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN WORDS IN -NTIA

There are numerous Latin words ending in *-ntia* which have given English derivatives in *-nce* or *-ncy*. The following familiar words are of this class:

patientia	<i>patience</i>	clēmēntia	<i>clemency</i>
temperantia	<i>temperance</i>	cōnstantia	<i>constancy</i>

Other changes in the spelling of derivatives will be explained later.

LESSON IX

PREPOSITIONS: ABLATIVE CASE

READING EXERCISE

74. 1. Poēta casam in īsulā habet. Casa mea quoque ibi est, et saepe poētam videō. Ex fenestrīs casae meae silvam videō. Silva pulchra est, et ibi saepe ambulō. Cum poētā in silvā ambulō. Poēta silvam amat.

2. Agricola et poēta nunc in viīs ambulant. Fulvia et Cornēlia interdum cum agricolā et poētā ambulant. Sed Cornēlia nunc in casā est. Fulviam nōn videō.

3. Fulvia nunc in Hispāniā est. Fīlia Cornēliae est cum Fulviā in Hispāniā. Cornēlia in Hiberniā quoque filiam habet. Fīlia Cornēliae ex Hiberniā epistulās scribit. Cornēlia epistulās filiae mihi ostendit.



AN ANCIENT STREET SCENE

75.

VOCABULARY

am'bulant, (they) walk

am'bulō, I walk

cum, with

ē, ex, from

i'bi, there, in that place

in, in, on

nunc, now

vi'a, street, road, way

a. In English the indefinite article has two forms, *a* and *an*. Similarly, in Latin the preposition meaning *from* given in this vocabulary has two forms, *ē* and *ex*. Before a vowel or *h* *ex* is always used. Before some consonants (but not all) *ē* is used.

CASE FORMS WITH CERTAIN PREPOSITIONS

76. In the phrases *with the girl*, *from the window*, *in the forest*, the words *girl*, *window*, *forest*, are said to be governed by the prepositions *with*, *from*, *in*.

The corresponding Latin phrases are **cum puellā**, **ex fenestrā**, **in silvā**. It will be observed that the letter in which these

nouns end is long (*ā*), while in the nominative it is short. The plural form of these nouns similarly used ends in *-īs*: *cum puellīs*, *with the girls*.

THE ABLATIVE

77. Latin nouns or pronouns governed by prepositions meaning *from*, *in*, or *with* are in the *ablative case*. In the nouns used thus far the ablative ends in *-ā* in the singular and in *-īs* in the plural.

a. An adjective modifying a noun in the ablative is also put in the ablative and is in the same number as its noun.

THE EXPLETIVE "THERE"

78. As seen in section 75, *there*, meaning *in that place*, is in Latin *ibi*. But in such sentences as *There is no danger* we use *there* merely to introduce the sentence, and no idea of place is expressed. When thus used *there* is called an *expletive*.

Latin has no equivalent for this expletive use of *there*, and the sentence *There is no danger* will be translated as if it read *No danger is*. In such sentences the Latin verb usually stands before the subject.

COMPLETION EXERCISE

79. 1. Est casa in īnsul— (*the island*).
2. Parvae puellae in vi— (*the street*) ambulat.
3. Cum parv— puell— (*the little girls*) ambulō.
4. Ex fenestr— me— (*my window*) puellās videō.
5. Parva puella est in Hiberni— cum Cornēli—.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

80. 1. What is the meaning of *via* in railroad time-tables?
2. What is the origin and meaning of *deviate*? 3. What is the meaning of *amble*? 4. What is a *perambulator*?

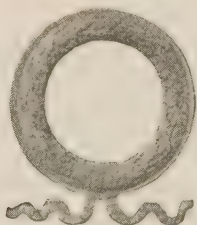
OPTIONAL DRILL

81. 1. In viā; in viīs; ex casā; ex casīs; cum puellā; cum puellis. 2. In silvā ambulō; ex silvā ambulō; cum agricolā ambulō. 3. Ex fenestrā nautam videō; in viā nautam videō; cum Cornēliā nautam videō. 4. Est silva in parvā īnsulā; sunt silvae in parvis īnsulis. 5. Filia agricolae nunc in Italiā est; filia agricolae ex Italiā epistulam scribit. 6. Filia agricolae cum filiā tuā in Italiā est. 7. Nautās in viīs cum agricolīs videō. 8. Poētae īnsulam amant et ibi saepe ambulant.

82. 1. In the cottage, in the cottages; from the street, from the streets; with the little girl, with the little girls. 2. The girls walk in the forest; the girls walk from the forest; the girls walk with the farmer. 3. I walk on the island; I do not walk in the street now. 4. I love the large forest and sometimes I walk there. 5. The daughters of the poet sometimes walk there.

(a) Write the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative of **silva** in the singular number.

(b) Write the nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative of **īnsula** in the plural number.



DECORATION FROM ALTAR
IN POMPEII

LESSON X

FIRST DECLENSION

THE CASE FORMS OF ROSA

83. The different case forms of the noun **rosa** with their meanings are as follows:

Singular Number

NOM.	ro'sa, a rose (as subject or predicate)
GEN.	ro'sae, of a rose, rose's
DAT.	ro'sae, to a rose, rose (as indirect object)
ACC.	ro'sam, rose (as direct object)
ABL.	ro'sā, (from, with, in, on) a rose

Plural Number

NOM.	ro'sae, roses (as subject or predicate)
GEN.	rosā'rum, of roses, roses'
DAT.	ro'sīs, to the roses, roses (as indirect object)
ACC.	ro'sās, roses (as direct object)
ABL.	ro'sīs, (from, with, in, on) roses

a. The part of a noun to which the endings are added is called the *base*. It may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular. Thus, the base of **rosa** is **ros-**.

84. The following sentences illustrate the use of the Latin cases:

The rose (**rosa**) is beautiful.

The fragrance of the rose (**rosae**) is delightful.

The sunshine has given color to the rose (**rosae**).

The girl is carrying a rose (**rosam**).

The butterfly is on the rose (**in rosā**).

The roses (**rosae**) are beautiful.

The fragrance of the roses (**rosārum**) is delightful.

The sun has given color to the roses (**rosis**).

The girl is carrying roses (**rosās**).

The butterflies are on the roses (**in rosīs**).

THE FIRST DECLENSION

85. Nouns which form their cases with the same endings as those of **rosa** are said to belong to the *first declension*. All nouns with the nominative ending in **-a** and the genitive in **-ae** are of the first declension.

a. In the vocabularies hereafter the nominative of new nouns of the first declension will be given, with the genitive ending printed after the nominative to show that the noun is of the first declension. Thus **lūna, -ae** indicates that **lūna** is a first declension noun.

APPOSITION

86. A noun is sometimes set beside another to explain the meaning of the first by indicating more definitely who or what is meant.

Filia mea, Cornēlia, est in casā, My daughter, Cornelia, is in the cottage.

A noun thus used is in *apposition* with the noun it explains. **Cornēlia** is in apposition with **filia**.

87. A noun in apposition is in the same case as the noun it explains.

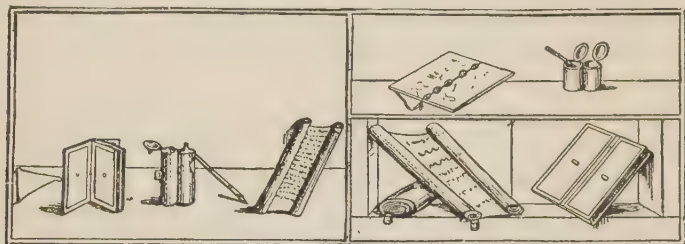
READING EXERCISE

88. 1. Casa nostra magnās fenestrās habet. Fenestrae sunt apertae. Ex fenestrīs viās vidēmus. Filiae agricolae in viīs ambulant.

2. Fulvia puellās expectat. Puellae ex scholā properant. Filia tua cum puellīs est. Puellae laetae sunt. Puellās nunc vidēmus.

3. Schola nostra est magna. Scholam nostram laudāmus. In scholā nostrā linguam Latinam discimus. Fāma scholae nostrae bona est.

4. Scholae Americae, patriae nostrae, sunt multae et bonae. In multīs terrīs Eurōpae quoque sunt scholae bonae. Sed Hispānia nōn habet multās scholās. Incolae Eurōpae scholās Americae saepe laudant.



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

89.

VOCABULARY

aper'ta, open

dis'cimus, we learn

expec'tat, awaits, waits for

fā'ma, reputation

Latī'na, Latin

lin'gua, language

nos'tra, our

pro'perant, (they) hasten, hurry

90.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

1. From the open windows I see the street.
2. Your daughters hasten from school.
3. There are many schools in America.
4. Cornelia waits for Fulvia, the poet's daughter.
5. The sailor has money, but he does not have a good reputation.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

91. 1. What is an *aperture*? 2. Find from a dictionary the original meaning of *disciple*. 3. What is meant by a *bilin-gual* country? 4. What is an *expectant* attitude?

OPTIONAL DRILL

92. 1. Americam, patriam nostram, amāmus; Italiam, patriam tuam, amās. 2. Cornēlia nunc in scholā est. 3. Puellae ex silvā properant; nautae ex viis properant. 4. Filiae tuae ex casā properant. 5. Filia tua Cornēliam in casā expectat. 6. Fulviam, filiam tuam, amās. 7. Linguam patriae tuae, Italiae, discimus. 8. Fenestra casae aperta est; fenestrae casae apertae sunt. 9. Ex fenestrā silvam videō; ex fenestrīs silvam vidēmus. 10. Lingua nostra nōn est lingua Latīna.

93. 1. Our schools are good. 2. We learn your language in our school. 3. Our school has a good reputation. 4. I see the open window; we see the open windows. 5. The language of America, your native country, is not the Latin language. 6. Your daughter awaits the little girls in the street.

(a) Write the declension of the nouns **lingua** and **terra**.

(b) Write the declension of **casa mea**.

(c) Give the three prepositions which have been used thus far and tell what case they govern.



A YOUNG ROMAN

FIRST REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS I-V

agricola	terra	amant
casa	vīta	laudent
epistula		vident
filia	amō	sunt
incola	amās	cūr
īnsula	amat	interdum
nauta	habet	nōn
patria	scribit	quoque
pecūnia	est	saepe
poēta	amāmus	
puella	laudāmus	et
schola	vidēmus	sed

ENDINGS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
Nom.	-a	-ae
Gen.	-ae	-ārum
Dat.	-ae	-īs
Acc.	-am	-ās
Abl.	-ā	-īs

USE OF CASES

- (1) The subject of a verb is in the nominative case.
- (2) A predicate noun is in the nominative case.
- (3) The genitive case is used to denote the possessor or owner of something. It is also used to express certain other ideas expressed in English by the possessive case or by *of* with a noun or pronoun.
- (4) The indirect object is in the dative case.

(5) The dative is often used with adjectives to express an idea which is expressed in English by *to* with a noun or pronoun.

(6) The direct object is in the accusative case.

(7) The ablative case is used as the object of prepositions meaning *from*, *in*, *with*.

NOTE. The genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative have certain other uses which will be explained later.

OPTIONAL DRILL A

1. Give the case and number of the following words; if any particular word might represent more than one form, name all the forms in which it might be found: *epistulās*, *fābula*, *filiārum*; *fāma*, *incolae*, *puellis*; *patriam*, *viae*, *patria*.

2. In the following sentences tell what case would be required to translate the italicized words or phrases: (a) The *island* is narrow. (b) The boy is the son *of a poet*. (c) My friend is walking with the *sailor*. (d) We heard a noise in the *street*. (e) You did not see the *picture*. (f) I gave the *girl* your book. (g) Your brother is a *farmer*. (h) I came from the *forest*.

OPTIONAL DRILL B

1. Write the names of the cases, observing carefully the spelling of each.

2. Write additional English sentences illustrating the uses of the cases.

3. Write the declension of five nouns from the review vocabulary.



A ROMAN BAKERY

SECOND REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS VI-X

fābula
fāma
fenestra
lingua
pictūra
rosa
silva
via

mihi
tibi

ambulō
dō
laudō
videō
dat
expectat
mōnstrat
nārrat
cupit
legit
ostendit

discimus
ambulant
dant
properant
bene
ibi
nunc
cum
ē, ex
in

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

1. What is *narrative* poetry? 2. What is a *fabulous* account of anything? 3. What is the meaning of *donor*? 4. How is *demonstration* related in meaning to *mōnstrat*? 5. What is a *laudatory* speech?

OPTIONAL DRILL

1. Pictūram videō et laudō. 2. Nautae ex viā properant. 3. Poēta saepe filiae agricolae fābulās nārrat. 4. Rosam in casā videō. 5. Poēta pecūniam mihi sed nōn tibi dat. 6. Nautae cum incolis insulae in viīs ambulant. 7. Fāma scholārum Americae est bona.

1. We praise the pictures. 2. We love the life of the sailor. 3. The girls hurry from the cottage. 4. We see the roses on the island. 5. Your daughter gives a picture to the poet.

LESSON XI

READING EXERCISE: SICILY

94. Sicilia est magna insula Eurōpae. In Siciliā sunt multae casae et villae. Sunt silvae quoque, sed silvae nōn sunt magnae.

Sicilia Italiae (*section 68*) propinqua est. Ex Siciliā Italiam vidēmus. Incolae Italiae quoque Siciliam vident. Aqua Italiam et Siciliam sēparat, sed aqua est angusta.

Messāna est in ōrā maritimā Siciliae. Incolae Messānae ōram maritimam Italiae vident. Casās et villās Italiae vident. Incolae ōrae maritimae sunt nautae, sed casae agricolārum ōrae maritimae propinquae sunt.

Sicilia est terra amoena. Saepe poētae Siciliam laudant.

95.

VOCABULARY

amoe'na, pleasant

angus'ta, narrow

a'qua, -ae, water

Messā'na, -ae, Messina,
a city of Sicily

ō'ra mari'tima, seacoast

propin'qua, near

sē'parat, separates

Sici'lia, -ae, Sicily

vil'la, -ae, farmhouse

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

96. 1. Your farmhouse is near the forest (section 68). 2. From the window of the cottage we see the water. 3. The island is long and narrow. 4. The seacoast is pleasant, and I often walk there. 5. The farmhouses in Sicily are not large. 6. There are (section 78) small islands near Sicily.



SICILY

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

97. 1. What are *aquatic* plants? 2. What is an *aqueduct*? 3. What is the meaning of *propinquity*? 4. What is the meaning of *villa* as an English word? 5. What hint regarding the spelling of *separation* can you find in *sēparat*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

98. 1. In terrā amoenā; ex insulā amoenā; ex insulis amoenis. 2. Patria nostra est terra amoena. 3. Filiae tuae ex villā

properant. 4. Villa multās et magnās fenestrās habet. 5. Fenestra villae est aperta. 6. Messāna viās angustās habet. 7. Incola Messānae mihi ōram maritimam Italiae mōnstrat.

99. 1. In the pleasant forest; from the large farmhouse; on the narrow seacoast. 2. The streets of Messina are narrow. 3. The sailors often see Sicily. 4. The small islands are near. 5. We see the forests of Sicily.

(a) Give the case of each noun in sentences 3, 4, and 5 of section 98, and point out the case ending.

(b) Write the declension of **villa** in full.

LESSON XII

CONJUGATION OF SUM

THE FORMS OF SUM

100. The forms of the Latin verb **sum**, meaning *I am*, are as follows when referring to present time:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1ST PERSON	sum, <i>I am</i>	su'mus, <i>we are</i>
2D PERSON	es, <i>you (singular) are</i>	es'tis, <i>you (plural) are</i>
3D PERSON	est, <i>(he, she, it) is</i>	sunt, <i>(they) are</i>

a. In English *you* may denote one person or more than one. We say *You are my friend* when speaking to one person, and *You are my friends* when speaking to two or more persons. Latin, however, has different forms for the singular and plural of this pronoun. The verb forms used to denote an act of the person or persons spoken to also differ according as the subject is singular or plural.

b. The infinitive of **sum** is **esse**, *to be*.

READING EXERCISE

101. 1. Incola Britanniae sum. Filia mea incola Hiberniae est. Sed patria nostra est America, et patriam nostram amāmus.

2. Nunc in Americā es, sed America nōn est patria tua. Patriam tuam amās. Cūr Americam nōn amās?

3. Nunc in Italiā estis. In Italiā sumus. Italia est terra pulchra. Sed Italia nōn est patria nostra. Italianam saepe laudāmus, sed Americam amāmus.

4. Ex fenestrā meā noctū stellās spectō. Saepe lūnam quoque spectō. Lūna nunc obscūra est, sed stellae clārae sunt.

5. Ex viā fenestram tuam vidēmus. Fenestra aperta est. Filiam tuam in casā vidēmus. Cūr filia tua nōn in viā cum puellis est?

6. Filia mea aegra est. Puellae sunt miserae quod filia mea est aegra.

102.

VOCABULARY

ae'gra, ill

clā'ra, bright, clear; famous

lū'na, -ae, moon

mi'sera, unhappy

noc'tū, at night

obscū'ra, dim

quod, because

spec'tō, I watch, look at

stel'la, -ae, star

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

103. 1. I am now an inhabitant of America. 2. The poet's daughters are in Ireland. 3. You are in a beautiful country. 4. We are in the cottage with the sailor. 5. I am watching (I watch) the stars, but I do not see the moon.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

104. 1. What is the meaning of *clarify*? What part of speech is it? 2. What is a *lunar* eclipse? 3. Find two English verbs derived from *spectō* with a syllable placed before *-spect-*. 4. What is a *constellation*?



AN ANCIENT HOUSE WITH A BALCONY

OPTIONAL DRILL

105. 1. *Stellās clārās spectō; lūnam quoque videō.* 2. *Lūna nunc nōn obscūra est; stellae nunc nōn obscūrae sunt.* 3. *Parva puella est aegra; parva puella est misera.* 4. *Parvae puellae sunt aegrae et miserae.* 5. *Fulvia est misera quod parva puella est aegra.* 6. *Nunc in Americā sumus; nunc in Americā estis.* 7. *Patria nostra nōn est in Eurōpā.* 8. *Noctū in casā sumus; noctū ex fenestrīs stellās vidēmus.* 9. *Filia nautae nōn es; filia poëtae nōn es.* 10. *Saepe misera es; cūr es misera?*

106. 1. The stars are now dim; the moon is now bright. 2. You are kind to Cornelia; Cornelia is kind to you. 3. The poet's daughter is unhappy because she does not have money. 4. From my window I watch the little girl in the street. 5. I am not often in the forest at night.

(a) Change the verbs of the first two sentences of paragraph 3, section 101, to the singular number.

(b) Give the dative singular and plural of **stella**.

(c) Change the verb of the second sentence in paragraph 5, section 101, to the plural number, making such other changes as are necessary.

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: PERSON AND NUMBER OF VERBS

107. In some tenses a verb has a different form when its subject is in the first person from what it would have if the subject were in the third person. Thus we say *I walk*, but *he walks*. The third person plural also differs from the third person singular. Thus, *he walks*, *they walk*. A verb is said to be in the same person and number as its subject.

LESSON XIII

FIRST CONJUGATION

THE VERB *PORTŌ*

108. The forms of *portō*, *I carry*, when referring to present time and representing the subject as doing the act expressed by the verb are as follows:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1ST PERSON	por'tō, <i>I carry</i>	portā'mus, <i>we carry</i>
2D PERSON	por'tās, <i>you carry</i>	portā'tis, <i>you carry</i>
3D PERSON	por'tat, <i>he, she, it, carries</i>	por'tant, <i>they carry</i>

a. The forms given above may also be translated *I am carrying*, *you are carrying*, *he is carrying*, etc. Latin has no means of distinguishing between such expressions as *I carry* and *I am carrying*, *he praises* and *he is praising*, *they walk* and *they are walking*.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION

109. The verb *portō* is said to be of the *first conjugation*. The infinitive meaning *to carry* is *portāre*. All verbs which have

the infinitive ending **-āre** are of the first conjugation and are conjugated like **portō**. The verbs **ambulō, amō, expectō, labōrō, laudō, mōnstrō, nārrō, properō, sēparō, spectō**, and **stō**, forms of which appear in this or the preceding lessons, are of the first conjugation.

a. The verb **dō** is of the first conjugation, but it is irregular in that it has the vowel **a** short everywhere in the indicative mood except in the second person singular, **dās**. The infinitive is **dare**.

PERSON ENDINGS

110. With a verb denoting an act done by the subject the following are the endings which are used to show person and number, together with their meanings.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
-ō or -m , ¹ <i>I</i>	-mus , <i>we</i>
-s , <i>you</i> (singular)	-tis , <i>you</i> (plural)
-t , <i>he, she, it</i>	-nt , <i>they</i>

READING EXERCISE

111. 1. Schola nostra est schola bona. Scholam nostram laudāmus et amāmus.

Scholam laudātis, sed in scholā nōn bene labōrātis. Fulvia scholam laudat et in scholā bene labōrat. Fulvia est puella impigra.

2. Cūr hīc stātis?

Hīc stāmus quod filiam tuam expectāmus. Ubi filia tua est? Filia mea nunc in scholā est.

3. Vesperī saepe in viīs ambulō. Nautae quoque ibi ambulant. Nautās saepe vidēmus cum in viīs ambulāmus. Agricolae quoque in viīs vesperī ambulant.

¹The use of **-m** as a person ending will be seen in certain forms to be learned later.

4. Jānuā est aperta, et Cornēliam in casā videō. Cornēlia agricolam expectat. Agricola epistulam portat. Agricola epistulam Cornēliae dat.

112.

VOCABULARY

cum, when

hīc, here

im'pīgra, energetic, industrious

jā'nua, -ae, door

labō'rō, -āre, work

por'tō, -āre, carry

stō, stā're, stand

u'bi, where, when

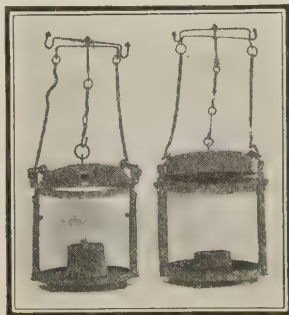
ves'perī, in the evening

COMPLETION EXERCISE

113. 1. Puellae saepe in viīs vesperī ambula—. 2. Cūr agricola ex silv— propera—? 3. Epistulās tuās nunc expectā— (*subject "we"*). 4. Cūr Cornēlia mihi pecūniam nōn da—? 5. Cornēlia tibi pecūniam nōn da— quod nōn bene labōrā— (*subject "you" singular*).

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

114. 1. What do you suppose was originally the duty of a *porter*? 2. What connection in meaning can you see between *stō* and *station*? 3. At what time of day are *vesper* services held?



ROMAN LANTERNS

OPTIONAL DRILL

115. 1. Ambulāmus; stāmus; labōrāmus; amāmus. 2. Spectat; spectant; spectō; spectāmus. 3. Labōrās; dās; labōrant; dant. 4. Amāre; labōrāre; stāre; dare. 5. Portant; portat; portās; portō. 6. Sunt; stant; sum; stō. 7. Ubi es? Ubi stās? Hic sum; hic stō. 8. Ambulātis; ambulat; ambulō; ambulāre.

116. 1. They await; they walk; they point out; they praise. 2. He loves; he gives; he hastens; he works. 3. They hasten; we hasten; you (*singular*) hasten; I hasten. 4. We tell; I tell; you (*plural*) tell; they tell. 5. You (*plural*) stand; you (*singular*) walk; we praise; we carry.

(a) Write the conjugation of **labōrō** and **stō** in the present active (like **portō**), and give the meaning of each form.

(b) Write the present active infinitive (like **portāre**) of **laudō**, **properō**, **nārrō**, **expectō**, and give English meanings.

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: INDICATIVE MOOD

117. A verb which states a fact or asks a question implying that the answer will be a statement of fact is said to be in the *indicative mood*.



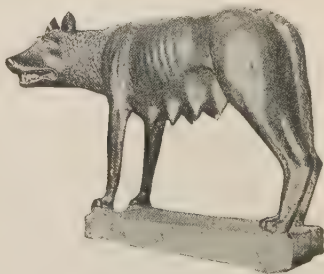
ROMAN COOKING UTENSILS

Some of these are very modern in appearance.

ROMULUS AND REMUS

The Romans believed that their city was founded by a hero named Romulus, and that from his name the word *Rome* was derived. The stories told regarding him are so largely imaginary that it is difficult to say what truth they may have had as a basis.

According to these stories Romulus and his twin brother Remus were sons of the god Mars and a princess whose father had been king of a city not very far from Rome. The grandfather of the boys had been driven from his kingdom and the kingship seized by his brother. This new king ordered the twins to be drowned in the Tiber River. The servants who were to carry out this cruel order placed the children in a box and left it near the edge of the river. Here they were found by a wolf, which, instead of injuring them, took care of them. Later, a shepherd found them and took them to his hut on the Palatine. After the boys grew up they drove out the brother of their grandfather who had wanted to kill them, and they restored their grandfather to the kingdom. Then they decided to build a city on the Palatine, where they had been brought up.



THE CAPITOLINE WOLF

In order to determine which of them should give his name to the new city they watched for signs to be given by the flight of birds. Both soon saw flocks of vultures, but Romulus saw the larger number and therefore claimed the right to have the settlement called by his name. While the wall was being built Remus ridiculed its small size and showed his contempt by jumping over it. As a result he was killed by Romulus or one of his followers. This story of the quarrel between the

two brothers and of the killing of Remus was rather frequently referred to in Roman literature. When the great poet Virgil wishes to picture a time of perfect peace he speaks of Romulus and Remus as living together in harmony instead of being engaged in strife. Romulus led his people in successful wars, and he also organized their government. He selected a council of elderly men as his advisers and to this council he gave the name *senate* (Latin *senātus*), from the Latin word *senex*, meaning "old man." The word "senate" is used in modern times not only for one division of our Congress but for a similar body in some other countries.

While Romulus was inspecting the army on a certain occasion a great storm came on, concealing him from sight. When the storm had cleared away, Romulus was no longer to be seen. His followers declared that he had been carried away to become one of the gods.

The modern Romans still keep a live wolf in a cage on the side of the Capitoline Hill as a reminder of the old legend of the wolf which cared for Romulus and Remus. In ancient times a hut, such as might have been the home of the shepherd where the boys were reared, was kept on the Palatine. The picture here given is that of a small building which was constructed on this same hill in recent times to represent this ancient shepherd hut.



LESSON XIV

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES WITH *-NE*

FORMS OF QUESTIONS

118. **Habetne poëta filiam?** *Has the poet a daughter?* **Estne Sicilia magna insula?** *Is Sicily a large island?* In these two Latin sentences the syllable *-ne* is added to the first word, to indicate that they are questions. In translation no separate English word is used for *-ne*.

We have previously had questions introduced by *cūr* and *ubi*. When such interrogative words as these are used or when we have interrogative pronouns meaning *who*, *what*, and the like, *-ne* will not be used.

ANSWERS TO QUESTIONS

119. A question which calls for *yes* or *no* in reply may be answered by repeating the words of the question in the form of a statement with *nōn* if the answer is *no*, without *nōn* if the answer is *yes*.

Sometimes the adverb *minimē* is used for *no* and *ita* for *yes*.

120. READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM* (A DIALOGUE)

Quid facit agricola?

Agricola terram colit.

Quis cum agricolā labōrat?

Puella cum agricolā labōrat.

Quis est puella?

Puella est filia agricolae.

Estne parva puella quoque filia agricolae?

Minimē. Parva puella est cōnsōbrīna filiae agricolae.

Quid portat parva puella?

Parva puella urnam portat.

Quid est in urnā?



Est aqua in urnā.

Ubi est amita parvae puellae?

Amita parvae puellae est in villā.

Labōratne amita puellae cum agricolā?

Minimē. Terram nōn colit.

Quid facit amita?

Amita in villā labōrat.

Labōratne interdum parva puella cum amitā?

Ita. Parva puella interdum cum amitā in villā labōrat.

121.

VOCABULARY

a'mita, -ae, aunt

co'lit, cultivates, tills

cōnsōbrī'na, -ae, cousin

(a girl or woman)

fa'cit, does, is doing

i'ta, so; yes

mi'nimē, by no means, no

quis, who?

quid, what?

ur'na, -ae, jar, pitcher

a. Quid has the same form for the nominative and the accusative singular.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

122. 1. Is your aunt now in Spain? 2. Does Italy have many islands? 3. Does the little girl carry water from the farmhouse? 4. What do the girls give to their cousin? 5. Where is your money now?

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

123. From *labōrō* of the vocabulary of Lesson XIII we have *labor*, *laborer*, and *laborious*. A *co-laborer* is one who works with another. A *laboratory* is a place where experimental work of certain kinds is done.

OPTIONAL DRILL

124. 1. Estne urna parva? Ita; urna est parva. 2. Habetne Fulvia parvam cōsōbrīnam? Ita; Fulvia parvam cōsōbrīnam habet. 3. Quis terram colit? Agricola terram colit. 4. Quid facit amita tua? Amita mea in ōrā maritimā ambulat. 5. Portatne parva puella magnam urnam? Minimē; parvam urnam portat.

125. 1. Are your daughters now in Europe? 2. Do the girls often walk in the forest? 3. Does Cornelia give money to your cousin? 4. Do the inhabitants of Sicily love Italy?

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE VERBS

126. A verb which takes a direct object is called a *transitive verb*. In the sentence *I saw the fire*, the verb *saw* is transitive. A verb which does not take a direct object is called an *intransitive verb*. In the sentence *We walked in the park*, the verb *walked* is intransitive.

THIRD REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XI-XIV

amita, -ae	expectō, -āre	facit
aqua, -ae	labōrō, -āre	
cōnsōbrīna, -ae	mōnstrō, -āre	hic
jānuā, -ae	nārrō, -āre	ita
lūna, -ae	portō, -āre	minimē
stella, -ae	properō, -āre	noctū
urna, -ae	sēparō, -āre	ubi
villa, -ae	spectō, -āre	vesperī
	stō, stāre	
quis	sum, esse	cum
quid	colit	quod

PERSON ENDINGS OF THE VERB, ACTIVE VOICE

*Singular**Plural*

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. -ō or -m, <i>I</i> | -mus, <i>we</i> |
| 2. -s, <i>you</i> (singular) | -tis, <i>you</i> (plural) |
| 3. -t, <i>he, she, it</i> | -nt, <i>they</i> |

THE IRREGULAR VERB *SUM*Present Infinitive, *esse*

(Present Indicative, see section 100)

FIRST CONJUGATION

Present Active Infinitive Termination, -āre

(Present Active Indicative, see section 108)

AGREEMENT OF VERBS

A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

QUESTIONS WITH -NE

(See section 118)

LESSON XV

SECOND DECLENSION

DECLENSION OF *TEMPLUM*

127. The different case forms of the noun **templum**, *a temple*, are as follows:

Singular

NOM.	tem'plum, <i>a temple</i> (as subject)
GEN.	tem'plī, <i>of a temple</i>
DAT.	tem'plō, <i>to a temple, temple</i> (as indirect object)
ACC.	tem'plum, <i>a temple</i> (as direct object)
ABL.	tem'plō, (<i>from, with, in</i>) <i>a temple</i>

Plural

NOM.	tem'pla, <i>temples</i> (as subject)
GEN.	templō'rum, <i>of temples</i>
DAT.	tem'plīs, <i>to temples, temples</i> (as indirect object)
ACC.	tem'pla, <i>temples</i> (as direct object)
ABL.	tem'plīs, (<i>from, with, in</i>) <i>temples</i>

THE SECOND DECLENSION

128. Nouns with the genitive singular ending in **-ī** are of the second declension. The second declension nouns are not all alike in the nominative. Some have the nominative ending in **-um**, others in **-us**, and others in **-er**. Those ending in **-um** are declined like **templum**.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

129. 1. Templum videō; templa videō. 2. Poēta templum laudat. 3. Oppidum nōn amō; oppidum nōn laudō. 4. Sicilia oppida et templa habet. 5. Oppida et templa Siciliae vidēmus. 6. Tēctum in silvā est. 7. Tēctum ex fenestrā meā videō. 8. Praemium tibi dō; praemium mihi dās. 9. Puella praemia

habet. 10. Incola oppidī es; incola oppidī sum. 11. Ex tēctō properāmus. 12. Agricola in oppidō est. 13. Incolās oppidōrum laudāmus. 14. Tempła oppidōrum laudāmus. 15. Nōnne Fulvia filia agricolae est? 16. Nōnne Sicilia templa habet? 17. Nōnne patriam tuam amās?



OPPIDUM ITALIAE

130.

VOCABULARY

nōn'ne, *a word used to introduce a question implying the answer "yes"*

op'pidum, -ī, town

prae'mium, -ī, reward

tēc'tum, -ī, house

tem'plum, -ī, temple

a. The difference between questions introduced by **-ne** and by **nōnne** may be illustrated by the following:

Amāsne patriam tuam? *Do you love your native country?*

Nōnne patriam tuam amās? *Do you not love your native country?*

b. The word **nōnne** is merely **nōn** with the interrogative **-ne** added.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

131. 1. We see the houses on the island. 2. I love the towns of my native country. 3. There are (*section 78*) temples in the towns of Sicily. 4. Does not the poet praise the towns of Sicily? 5. Does not Cornelia love the little girl?

OPTIONAL DRILL

132. 1. In oppidō; in oppidīs; ex oppidīs. 2. Templī; templōrum; ex templīs. 3. In templō stō; ex templō properō. 4. Tēctum vidēmus; tēctum in oppidō est. 5. Oppidum in insulā est; oppida vidēmus. 6. In oppidō labōrās; in oppidīs labōrāmus. 7. Nōnne filia nautae in oppidō est? 8. Nōnne Fulvia est cōnsōbrīna tua? 9. Nōnne amita tua parvam puellam amat?

133. 1. Fulvia has a reward. 2. I am often in the town. 3. Do not the girls walk in the street? 4. Do we not see the farmhouses?

(a) Give the genitive plural of **oppidum** and **nauta**.

(b) Give the ablative singular of **templum** and **insula**.

(c) Give the dative singular of **praemium** and **aqua**.

LESSON XVI

GENDER OF NOUNS

GENDER IN THE FIRST DECLENSION

134. Most first declension nouns are feminine, even though we should expect many of them to be neuter from their meanings. Those denoting males, however, are masculine. Thus, **agricola**, **nauta**, and **poēta** are masculine; **icola** may be either masculine or feminine. All other nouns of this declension which have been given are feminine.

GENDER OF NOUNS IN -UM

135. All nouns ending in **-um** in the nominative singular are of the neuter gender.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES IN GENDER

136. The adjectives which have been given with the ending **-a** have also a neuter form in **-um**, declined like **templum**.

An adjective agrees with its noun in gender as well as in case and number. Thus we say **parva puella**, *a small girl*, but **parvum templum**, *a small temple*.

READING EXERCISE

137. 1. Tēctum in magnō oppidō habeo, sed oppidum nōn amō. Parvā casam in silvā habeo, et aestāte in casā habitō. Fīlia mea quoque in casā aestāte habitat. Sed hieme in oppidō sumus.

2. Tēctum tuum in oppidō saepe videō. Tēctum magnum est sed nōn pulchrum. Casa in silvā est pulchra.



TEMPLE OF PAESTUM

3. Italia multa templa habet. Templa Italiae tibi nōta sunt. In Hispāniā quoque sunt templa. Oppidum tuum habet parvum templum.

4. Oppida patriae nostrae laudās. Filia tua oppida Italiae saepe laudat, sed in oppidīs Italiae nōn diū manet. Nunc in parvō oppidō Hispāniae est. Multa oppida Hispāniae et Italiae sunt pulchra.

5. Puellae parvum tabernāculum habent. Tabernāculum villae propinquum est. Cornēlia et cōnsōbrīna mea nunc in tabernāculō sunt.

138.

VOCABULARY

aestā'te, in summer

dī'ū, long, for a long time

ha'beō, I have

ha'bitō, I live

hi'eme, in winter

ma'net, remains

nō'ta, known, well known

tabernā'culum, -ī, n., tent

a. The forms **hieme** and **aestāte** are ablatives of nouns. The declension to which they belong will be explained later.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

139. 1. You do not praise the large town. 2. We often praise the towns of Italy. 3. I see a tent in the forest. 4. Cornelia gives me a large reward. 5. Fulvia does not remain in the town in summer.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

140. We say a region is *habitable* if it is a place where people can live. A *habitation* is a dwelling place or home. An *inhabitant* is one who lives in a particular place. A country is *uninhabited* if no one lives there. When we know the meaning of **habitō** it is easy to see the relation and source of all these words.

OPTIONAL DRILL

141. 1. Magnī oppidī; magnōrum oppidōrum; in magnō templō. 2. Quid videō? Quid habeō? Ubi habitās? 3. Templum videō; praemium habeō; in oppidō habitās. 4. Tēctum est magnum; tēcta sunt magna; tēcta sunt multa et magna. 5. Aestāte Fulvia in Britannīā manet. 6. Hieme Cornēlia in Hispāniā habitat. 7. Parva silva; parvum oppidum; in magnā silvā; in magnō oppidō. 8. Ex meō tabernāculō; in tuō tabernāculō.

142. 1. A beautiful town; beautiful towns; in a beautiful town. 2. In the small temple; from the small temple; from the small temples. 3. What do we see? 4. We see the farmer's cottage. 5. I live in the large town. 6. I have beautiful pictures. 7. In summer the girl remains in the town. 8. I have a great reward.

(a) Decline together **parvum oppidum**.

(b) Decline together **magnum templum**.

(c) Name the case of each noun in paragraph 3, section 137.

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: GENDER

143. We use the pronoun *he* when we are referring to a man or boy or a male animal, the pronoun *she* when we are referring to a woman or girl or a female animal, and the pronoun *it* when we are referring to something without sex. Thus when we are speaking of a boy we may say *He is a stranger*, when speaking of a girl we may say *She is not at home*, and when speaking of a book we may say *It is mine*. This distinction in pronouns is called *gender*.

Such words as *he* are in the *masculine* gender, such words as *she* are in the *feminine* gender, and such words as *it* are in the *neuter* gender.

Nouns also are said to have gender. Thus, *brother* is masculine, *sister* is feminine, and *house* is neuter.

a. A word like *friend*, which may refer to either a man or a woman, is sometimes said to be in the *common* gender.

LESSON XVII

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

DECLENSION OF *AMĪCUS*

144. The noun *amīcus* is of the second declension, and is declined as follows:

Singular

NOM.	<i>amī'cus</i> , a friend (as subject)
GEN.	<i>amī'cī</i> , of a friend, friend's
DAT.	<i>amī'cō</i> , to a friend, a friend (as indirect object)
ACC.	<i>amī'eum</i> , a friend (as direct object)
ABL.	<i>amī'cō</i> , (from, with, in) a friend

Plural

NOM.	<i>amī'cī</i> , friends (as subject)
GEN.	<i>amīcō'rum</i> , of friends, friends'
DAT.	<i>amī'cīs</i> , to friends, friends (as indirect object)
ACC.	<i>amī'cōs</i> , friends (as direct object)
ABL.	<i>amī'cīs</i> , (from, with, in) friends

a. Nouns of the second declension ending in **-us** are chiefly masculine.

ADJECTIVES IN **-US**

145. Such adjectives as **bona** and **magna** have a masculine form ending in **-us** in the nominative, with the other case endings like those of the noun *amīcus*.

READING EXERCISE: *FĪLIUS ET FĪLIA AGRICOLAE*

146. 1. *Agricola filium et filiam habet. Filius agricolae domī manet, sed filia in scholā hieme est, et tum in oppidō cum amīcō benignō agricolae habitat. Agricola oppidum nōn*

amat, et filiam hieme nōn saepe videt. Aestāte puella domī manet. Agricola equōs habet, et filiae equum bonum dat. Filia equōs nōn timet, et laeta est quod equum bonum habet. Filius agricolae laetus est cum puella domī est. Filius agricolae nūllōs amīcōs in oppidō habet.

2. Tēctum amīcī agricolae in nostrō oppidō est. Ex fenestrā meā tēctum amīcī agricolae videō. Ibi filia agricolae hieme habitat. Amīcus agricolae parvum filium habet, sed nūllās filiās habet.

147.

VOCABULARY

amī'cus, -ī, M., friend

do'mī, at home

e'quus, -ī, M., horse

fi'lius,¹ -ī, M., son

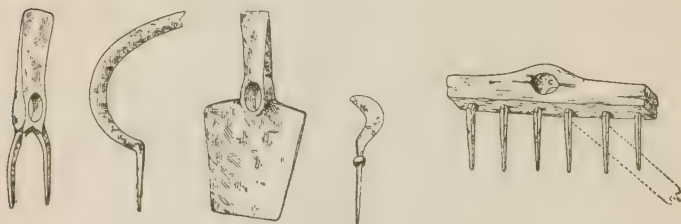
nūl'lus, no, none

ti'met, fears

tum, then

vi'det, sees

a. The genitive and dative singular of **nūllus** are irregular. They are not used in the exercises of this book.



ROMAN FARM TOOLS

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

148. 1. My friend loves good horses. 2. The sailor's son is a poet. 3. Cornelia praises the farmer's friend. 4. I give a letter to the sailor's son. 5. The cottage of the poet's friend is in the town.

¹ The genitive of this word is commonly filiī (contracted from filiī). The uncontracted form, however, is used in the exercises of this book.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

149. 1. What is an *equestrian* statue? 2. From a consideration of *filius* and *fīlia*, what do you think is meant by *filial* respect? 3. What is the meaning of *nullify*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

150. 1. *Equus meus*; *equus amīcī meī*; *hieme et aestāte*. 2. *Nūllum equum videō*; *nūllōs equōs videō*; *nūlla tabernācula videō*. 3. *Puella equōs videt*; *puella equōs timet*; *fīlia tua equōs timet*. 4. *Filius agricolae domī est*; *filius agricolae aestāte domī est*; *fīlia agricolae tum nōn est domī*. 5. *Cum amīcō*; *cum amīcīs*; *cum filiō tuō*; *cum amīcīs filiōrum tuōrum*. 6. *Nōn diū filius hieme in oppidō manet*. 7. *Multōs amīcōs habeō*. 8. *Amīcōs meōs laudō*. 9. *Amīcus meus filium habet*. 10. *Amīcus meus in parvō oppidō habitat*.

151. 1. Of my friend; of my good friend; with my friend; with my good friend. 2. The little girl fears your friend. 3. In winter the sailor remains at home. 4. Then he sees many friends. 5. Your friend has no horses.

(a) Give the nominative plural of the following nouns: *fīlia*, *fīlius*, *agricola*, *amīcus*, *equus*, *oppidum*, *tēctum*.

(b) Give the accusative plural of the following nouns: *puella*, *equus*, *tabernāculum*, *amīcus*, *fīlia*, *fīlius*.

(c) Decline *equus*.

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: THE ADVERB

152. We often use a word with a verb to tell how an action is done. In the sentence *He runs swiftly* the word *swiftly* tells how the act of the verb *runs* is done. Such words are called *adverbs*. Adverbs are also used to tell something about adjectives and even about other adverbs. In the expressions *too small* and *very swiftly* the adverbs *too* and *very* tell something about the adjective *small* and the adverb *swiftly*.

LESSON XVIII

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

DECLENSION OF *PUER* AND *AGER*

153. The nouns **puer**, *boy*, and **ager**, *field*, of the second declension, are declined as follows:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
NOM.	pu'er	pu'erī	a'ger	a'grī
GEN.	pu'erī	puerō'rum	a'grī	agrō'rum
DAT.	pu'erō	pu'erīs	a'grō	a'grīs
ACC.	pu'erum	pu'erōs	a'grum	a'grōs
ABL.	pu'erō	pu'erīs	a'grō	a'grīs

TWO CLASSES OF NOUNS IN *-ER*

154. The two classes of second declension nouns represented by **puer** and **ager** differ only in the fact that nouns like **puer** keep the **e** before **r** in all the cases, while in **ager** and similar nouns **e** appears before **r** only in the nominative singular. When a new word of this class appears in the vocabulary the genitive, or a part of it, is printed after the nominative to show whether it is declined like **puer** or **ager**.

155. READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM*

READING A ROMAN BOOK

1. Quid facit puer?
Puer librum legit.
2. Quis est puer?
Puer est Sextus, filius
poëtae.
3. Quid discit Sextus in scholā?
Sextus in scholā linguam
Latīnam discit.
4. Quid facit Sextus cum in
scholā nōn est?
Sextus labōrat in agrīs cum
in scholā nōn est.

5. Quid facit puella?
Puella epistulam scribit.
6. Cūr puellam nōn laudās?
Puellam nōn laudō quod nōn est impigra.
7. Quid portat parva puella?
Parva puella lilia portat.
8. Ubi est fēmina?
Fēmina est in villā.
9. Quid facit fēmina in villā?
Fēmina cēnam parat.
10. Quis cum fēminā in villā labōrat?
Filia fēminae quoque in villā labōrat.

156.

VOCABULARY

a'ger, a'grī, M., field	lī'lium, -ī, N., lily
cē'na, -ae, F., dinner	pa'rō, -āre, prepare
dis'cit, learns	pu'er, pu'erī, M., boy
fē'mina, -ae, F., woman	Sex'tus, -ī, M., Sextus (<i>the name of a man or boy</i>)
li'ber, li'brī, M., book	

COMPLETION EXERCISE

157. 1. Puer libr— (*a book*) legit. 2. Sextus in agr— (*the field*) cum agricol— (*the farmer*) labōrat. 3. Cūr puer— (*the boys*) nōn laudās? 4. Puer— (*the boys*) nōn laudō quod nōn labōr— (*subject "they"*). 5. Puer— (*the boys*) praemium nōn dō.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

158. 1. What grammatical term is connected in derivation with **fēmina**? 2. Find two nouns derived from **liber**. 3. The plural form **puerī** sometimes means "children." What is a *puerile* objection?

OPTIONAL DRILL

159. 1. In agrō; in agrīs; ex agrō; ex agrīs; cum puerīs; cum puerō; in librō. 2. Liber puerī; librī puerōrum; filius fēminae. 3. Quis librum habet? Quis librum videt? Quis librōs videt? 4. Fēmina lilia portat; lilia videō; lilia vidēmus. 5. Quid puella discit in scholā? Quid puella discit domī? 6. Quid facit Sextus hieme? Quid facit Sextus aestāte? 7. Sextus aestāte in agrīs labōrat. 8. Quis est Sextus? 9. Sextus est filius agricolae.

160. 1. The boy reads the books. 2. Why do you not praise the boy? 3. I do not praise the boy because he does not work. 4. I do not give a reward to the boy. 5. I see the farmer's fields. 6. I have the girl's books. 7. Of the good boy; of the good boys; with the boy's friend. 8. Of the fields; in the books; of the books.

(a) Make the direct objects plural in the answers to the questions in 1 and 5 of section **155**.

(b) Decline together **tuus liber**.

LESSON XIX

SECOND DECLENSION (Continued)

161. SUMMARY OF SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS*Singular*

NOM.	templum	amīcus	ager	puer
GEN.	templī	amīcī	agrī	puerī
DAT.	templō	amīcō	agrō	puerō
ACC.	templum	amīcum	agrum	puerum
ABL.	templō	amīcō	agrō	puerō



A ROMAN ROAD

Plural

NOM.	templa	amīcī	agrī	puerī
GEN.	templōrum	amīcōrum	agrōrum	puerōrum
DAT.	templīs	amīcīs	agrīs	puerīs
ACC.	templa	amīcōs	agrōs	puerōs
ABL.	templīs	amīcīs	agrīs	puerīs

a. The noun **vir**, *man* (genitive **virī**), also belongs to this declension. For this word, as for **puer**, the base is the same as the nominative.

THE VOCATIVE

162. In addition to the cases which have been given, there is another case called the *vocative*, which is used to denote the person addressed. Thus, in the sentences "John, come here," and "Boy, what street is this?" the words *John* and *boy* are in the vocative case.

The vocative has the same form as the nominative in all Latin nouns except those of the second declension ending in **-us**. The vocative singular of these nouns ends in **-e**. Thus, the vocative singular of **amicus** is **amīce**, the vocative of **Mārcus** is **Mārce**. The vocative plural is always the same as the nominative plural.

SUMMARY OF IMPORTANT FACTS REGARDING THE
SECOND DECLENSION

- 163.** (1) The genitive singular ends in **-ī**.
 (2) Nouns ending in **-um** are neuter.
 (3) Nouns ending in **-er** are masculine.
 (4) Most nouns ending in **-us** are masculine.
 (5) The nominative plural of masculine nouns ends in **-ī**.
 (6) The nominative and accusative plural of all neuter nouns (in all declensions) end in **-a**.

READING EXERCISE

164. 1. Mārcus, amīcus meus, agricola est, et multōs equōs habet. Mārcus equīs hieme multum frūmentum dat. Equī magnī et validī sunt. Aestāte equī interdum in agrīs sunt, et tum frūmentum nōn edunt. Sed frūmentum equīs damus cum labōrant.

2. Puerum in agrō cum agricolā vidēmus. Puer filius agricolae est. Agricola filiam quoque habet. Filia hodiē in hortō labōrat. Sed filia nōn est sōla in hortō. Amīcus puellae quoque in hortō est.

3. Cūr, Sexte, sōlus in viā ambulās?

Sōlus in viā ambulō quod amīcī meī hodiē in agrīs labōrant.

Cūr in agrīs cum amīcīs tuīs nōn labōrās?

In agrīs nōn labōrō quod nōn validus sum.

165.

VOCABULARY

e'dunt, they eat

frūmen'tum, -ī, N., grain

ho'diē, today

hor'tus, -ī, M., garden

Mār'cus, -ī, M., Marcus (*the name of a man or boy*)

mul'tī, many

sō'lus, alone

va'lidus, strong, well

a. The genitive and dative singular of **sōlus**, like the same cases of **nūllus**, are irregular. The other forms of these adjectives are regular.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

166. 1. The boy is the son of my friend. 2. I often praise the boy, but I do not praise the boy's friend. 3. We see the farmer's fields from the window of the cottage. 4. The boys are now in the garden with your daughter. 5. Marcus, why do you stand in the street?



TRAVELER LEAVING AN INN

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

167. 1. What is *horticulture*? 2. Give two English words connected in derivation with *sōlus*. 3. What is a *valid* reason? 4. What connection in meaning do you see between *validus* and *invalid*? 5. What are *edible* berries?

OPTIONAL DRILL

168. 1. In *hortō*; ex *hortō*; *hortōrum*; ex *hortīs*. 2. *Multi amīcī*; cum *multīs amīcīs*; cum *amīcīs validīs*; cum *sōlō amīcō*. 3. *Agricola multum frūmentum habet*; *equī multum frūmentum edunt*. 4. *Hodiē Mārcus sōlus in hortō labōrat*. 5. *Sextus et Mārcus sunt amīcī*. 6. *Cūr, Mārce, in viā stās?* 7. *Cūr, amīce, nōn labōrās?* 8. *Puerī sunt validī, sed nōn bene labōrant*.

169. 1. With Marcus alone; with many boys; in the small garden. 2. In winter the horses eat grain. 3. The boy is in the field. 4. The boys are in the field. 5. The boy's friend is alone in the forest. 6. Marcus works in the fields today.

(a) Give the nominative plural of the masculine nouns (excluding proper names) in Lessons XVII, XVIII, and XIX.

(b) Decline *hortus tuus*.

FOURTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XV-XIX

ager, agrī	praemium, -ī	habeō
amicus, -ī	puer, puerī	discit
cēna, -ae	tabernāculum, -ī	manet
equus, -ī	tēctum, -ī	timet
fēmina, -ae	templum, -ī	videt
filius, -ī	aestāte	edunt
frūmentum, -ī	domī	diū
hortus, -ī	hieme	hodiē
liber, librī	habitō, -āre	tum
lilium, -ī	parō, -āre	
oppidum, -ī		

ENDINGS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM. -us, -er, (-ir)	-um	-ī	-a
GEN. -ī	-ī	-ōrum	-ōrum
DAT. -ō	-ō	-īs	-īs
ACC. -um	-um	-ōs	-a
ABL. -ō	-ō	-īs	-īs

The vocative has the same form as the nominative except in the singular of nouns ending in **-us** in the nominative. These have the vocative singular ending in **-e**.

GENDER

Most nouns of the first declension are feminine. By exception **agricola**, **nauta**, **poēta**, and a few other words which regularly denote men are masculine; **incola** may be either masculine or feminine.

Most nouns of the second declension ending in **-us** and all those ending in **-er** are masculine.

All nouns ending in **-um** are neuter.

CITY LIFE IN ROMAN TIMES

The appearance of ancient Rome or of any other city of the Roman world differed greatly from that of a modern city. When we think of streets in which there were no automobiles, no street cars, no motor trucks, and no electric lights at night, we can realize something of this difference, though all these things were absent from the cities of our own country a century ago. But the streets of Rome were so narrow that the use of wagons during the daytime was very limited, and not even gas or oil lights were available for the streets.

Those who did not choose to walk were carried in litters, something like the conveyances still used in some cities of Asia. These were borne by slaves and were private property. There was nothing corresponding to the modern street car or omnibus or taxicab as a means of public conveyance. If one did not own slaves to carry his litter he had to walk, unless he could borrow a friend's conveyance and its bearers.

The streets were not paved with concrete or asphalt, though the Romans knew how to make very good concrete. Stone blocks or slabs were used, and these were usually well fitted together so that they made good pavements, though they might become rather rough as a result of being worn.

Instead of the great stores in which all sorts of articles are sold in a modern city, Rome had a great many small shops in which goods of various kinds were sold. Often these shops were in the front part of dwelling houses or apartment buildings.

While the buildings seemed tall in comparison with the narrow streets, they would not appear so in a modern city with office buildings of fifteen stories or more. Perhaps the buildings of Rome did not have more than five or six stories at the most. Since there were no elevators it was sufficiently tiresome to have to climb to the upper stories of such buildings.

Probably the house fronts were rather plain, and the general

appearance of many streets must have been very monotonous. But in various parts of the city there were fine temples and other public buildings. On two of the hills, the Capitoline and the Palatine, stood buildings of this sort, which were visible for a long way and which added distinction to the city.

Since machinery operated by steam or electricity did not exist, much of the work now done by such means was then done by slaves. This resulted in greater numbers of persons being employed for every sort of work and so increased the crowding in the streets and in places where work was going on.

One rather striking feature of ancient Rome was the abundant supply of water which was brought in by great aqueducts. These brought water for the great bathing establishments in the city and for various other uses. Parts of these aqueducts are still to be seen in the country about Rome, and one which was originally built more than 1800 years ago is still in use. It has been frequently repaired, but it is still in large part the ancient structure. The Romans built aqueducts in many parts of the world where their cities were located, and the ruins of a great many of these can still be seen.



A ROMAN AQUEDUCT

LESSON XX

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

170. DECLENSION OF *BONUS* IN ALL GENDERS

The adjective **bonus** is declined as follows:

	<i>Singular</i>		
	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	bo'nus	bo'na	bo'num
GEN.	bo'nī	bo'nae	bo'nī
DAT.	bo'nō	bo'nae	bo'nō
ACC.	bo'num	bo'nam	bo'num
ABL.	bo'nō	bo'nā	bo'nō
<i>Plural</i>			
NOM.	bo'nī	bo'nae	bo'na
GEN.	bonō'rum	bonā'rum	bonō'rum
DAT.	bo'nīs	bo'nīs	bo'nīs
ACC.	bo'nōs	bo'nās	bo'na
ABL.	bo'nīs	bo'nīs	bo'nīs

REVIEW LIST OF ADJECTIVES

171. The following adjectives, of which one form has previously been given, are declined like **bonus**¹:

amoenus, -a, -um	laetus, -a, -um	obscūrus, -a, -um
angustus, -a, -um	Latīnus, -a, -um	parvus, -a, -um
apertus, -a, -um	longus, -a, -um	periculōsus, -a, -um
benignus, -a, -um	magnus, -a, -um	propinquus, -a, -um
cārus, -a, -um	meus, -a, -um	tuus, -a, -um
clārus, -a, -um	multus, -a, -um	validus, -a, -um
grātus, -a, -um	nōtus, -a, -um	

¹ The adjectives **nūllus** and **sōlus** are also declined like **bonus** except in the genitive and dative singular.

a. It must be remembered that the words for *my* (*mine*) and *your* (*yours*) are adjectives in Latin, and hence they will agree in gender, number, and case with the word denoting the thing possessed.



ROMAN TABLE AND LAMP

READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM*

172. 1. Quid in pictūrā vidēmus?
In pictūrā mēnsam Rōmānam vidēmus.
Estne magna mēnsa?
Mēnsa nōn est magna sed est pulchra.
Estne mēnsa pretiōsa?
Ita; mēnsa est pretiōsa.
Suntne mēnsae Rōmānae saepe pretiōsae?
Ita est. Multae mēnsae Rōmānae sunt pretiōsae.

Sed quid est in mēnsā?

In mēnsā est parva lucerna.

Estne lucerna quoque pretiōsa?

Minimē. Lucerna nōn est pretiōsa.

2. Quis hodiē abest?

Mārcus hodiē abest.

Sed cūr Mārcus abest?

Domī manet et labōrat.

Ubi hodiē labōrat?

In hortō aut in agrīs filium agricolae iuvat.

Probāsne Mārcum?

Ita. Mārcum probō quod filium agricolae iuvat.

Manetne Sextus saepe domī?

Sextus nōn saepe domī manet.

173.

VOCABULARY

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*, from,

by

ab'sum, abes'se, be absent,

be distant

aut, or; aut . . . aut, either

. . . or

ju'vō, -āre, help, assist

lucer'na, -ae, *F.*, lamp

mēn'sa, -ae, *F.*, table

pretiō'sus, -a, -um, expensive,
costly

pro'bō, -āre, approve, approve
of

Rōmā'nus, -a, -um, Roman;
masculine as noun, a Ro-
man; *pl.*, the Romans

a. The verb **absum** is conjugated like **sum**, of which it is a compound: **absum**, **abes**, **abest**, etc.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

174. 1. Cornelia carries a small lamp and a book. 2. We often help the farmer in the field. 3. We watch the boys from the window or we walk in the street. 4. Why is your cousin absent today? Is she in the town? 5. On the table is an expensive book.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

175. 1. The Spanish word *mesa* is used in the southwestern part of the United States to mean a *tableland*. What do you suppose is its origin? 2. In English derivatives Latin *b* is sometimes represented by English *v*. What derivative from *probō* can you find? 3. What is the derivation of *precious*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

176. 1. In *magnō oppidō*; in *magnā villā*; in *magnō agrō*. 2. *Cum puellā bonā*; *cum puerō bonō*; *cum puerīs bonīs*. 3. *Cornēlia filium bonum et filiam bonam habet*. 4. *Amīcus noster est benignus*; *fēmina est benigna*. 5. *Puella abest*; *puellae absunt*. 6. *Puer est laetus*.

177. 1. The island is large; the temple is large; the horse is large. 2. I see the small lamp. 3. I see the farmer's small son. 4. Sextus has large horses. 5. Spain has many towns.

(a) Write the declension of **benignus** in full.

(b) Decline together **templum clārum**.

LESSON XXI

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES; SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

ADJECTIVES WITH MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION

178. An adjective must agree with its noun in gender, but its endings are not necessarily the same as those of the noun. Since **agricola**, **nauta**, and **poēta** are masculine, any adjective modifying one of them will be masculine.

The words for a *good sailor* are declined as follows:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
NOM.	nauta bonus	nautae bonī
GEN.	nautae bonī	nautārum bonōrum
DAT.	nautae bonō	nautīs bonīs
ACC.	nautam bonum	nautās bonōs
ABL.	nautā bonō	nautīs bonīs

SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

179. The masculine form of some adjectives may be used in the plural without a noun to denote persons. Thus, **multī** means *many (persons)*, **bonī** means *the good (persons)*. In descriptions of war or military operations of any kind **nostrī** means *our men* or *our soldiers*.

The neuter form of some adjectives may be used in the plural to refer to things. Thus, **multa** means *many things*.

READING EXERCISE

180. 1. Sextus est bonus agricola, et multum frūmentum habet. Magnum tēctum et parvum hortum habet. In hortō cum filiā et filiō nunc stat. Vesperī saepe in viīs cum amīcīs ambulat. Multī Sextum amant quod benignus est.

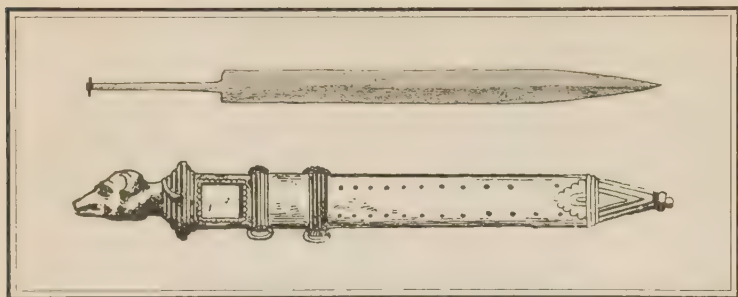
2. Fīlius Sextī in magnō bellō pugnat, et gladium et scūtum habet. Pūblius quoque, amīcus Sextī, in bellō pugnat.

3. Librōs multōrum poētārum laudō, sed librōs tuōs nōn laudō. Poēta bonus nōn es. Fāma tua nōn magna est.

4. Nunc amīcus nautae ex tēctō properat. Nauta laetus est quod amīcum videt. Nauta et amīcus nōn diū in viā ambulant, quod amīcus dēfessus est.

5. Cūr, amīce, ex tēctō properās? Ex tēctō properō quod nautam in viā videō.

6. Amīcus tuus sum, sed cōnsilium tuum nōn laudō. Nōn est cōnsilium satis bonum. Pūblius habet cōnsilium bonum.



ROMAN SWORDS

181.

VOCABULARY

bellum, -ī, N., war

cōnsilium, -ī, N., plan

dēfessus, -a, -um, tired, weary

gladius, -ī, M., sword

Pūblius, -ī, M., Publius (*name
of a man or boy*)

pugnō, -āre, fight

satis, *adv.*, sufficiently, enough

scūtum, -ī, N., shield

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

182. 1. Sextus praises my horses. 2. We do not expect a long war. 3. The sailor is tired. 4. Publius has a large shield. 5. The farmers are strong.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

183. 1. What is a *belligerent* attitude? 2. What is the meaning of the expression "*ante-bellum* days" (referring to the American Civil War)? 3. What was the original meaning of *gladiator*? 4. Find the meaning of the name of the flower *gladiolus*. 5. What is a *pugnacious* disposition?

OPTIONAL DRILL

184. 1. Agricola dēfessus; poēta bonus; nauta validus; poētārum bonōrum. 2. Bella longa; bellī longī· magna scūta:

magnōrum scūtōrum; magnī scūtī; multa scūta et multī gladii. 3. Cōnsilium bonum; cōnsilia bona; cōnsilium agricolae benignī. 4. Pūblius pugnat; Sextus nōn pugnat. 5. Sextus nōn est validus; poēta nōn est validus; fēmina nōn est valida.

185. 1. Many wars; in many wars; of many wars. 2. A tired sailor; of a tired sailor; with a tired sailor. 3. The boy sees the swords and shields. 4. Publius praises your plans. 5. The good farmer has good horses. 6. The good poet writes good books. 7. The sailor is strong.

(a) Rewrite the first sentence in paragraph 4 of section **180**, changing the subject to the plural.

(b) Decline **meus** and **tuus** in all genders and in both numbers.

LESSON XXII

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (Continued)

ADJECTIVES WITH THE MASCULINE IN -ER

186. There are certain adjectives which end in **-er** instead of **-us** in the nominative singular of the masculine. These are of two classes, with the same difference which has been seen in nouns ending in **-er**.

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Singular</i> <i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	mi'ser	mi'sera	mi'serum
GEN.	mi'serī	mi'serae	mi'serī
DAT.	mi'serō	mi'serae	mi'serō
ACC.	mi'serum	mi'seram	mi'serum
ABL.	mi'serō	mi'serā	mi'serō

Plural

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	mi'serī	mi'serae	mi'sera
GEN.	miserō'rum	miserā'rum	miserō'rum
DAT.	mi'serīs	mi'serīs	mi'serīs
ACC.	mi'serōs	mi'serās	mi'sera
ABL.	mi'serīs	mi'serīs	mi'serīs

Singular

NOM.	pul'cher	pul'chra	pul'chrum
GEN.	pul'chrī	pul'chrae	pul'chrī
DAT.	pul'chrō	pul'chrae	pul'chrō
ACC.	pul'chrum	pul'chram	pul'chrum
ABL.	pul'chrō	pul'chrā	pul'chrō

Plural

NOM.	pul'chrī	pul'chrae	pul'chra
GEN.	pulchrō'rum	pulchrā'rum	pulchrō'rum
DAT.	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs
ACC.	pul'chrōs	pul'chrās	pul'chra
ABL.	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs	pul'chrīs

a. The following adjectives have previously been seen in the feminine form. The nominative in all three genders is here given. All except **miser** are declined like **pulcher**.

aeger, -gra, -grum

noster, -tra, -trum

impiger, -gra, -grum

pulcher, -chra, -chrum

miser, -a, -um

READING EXERCISE

187. 1. Amīcus meus multōs librōs habet. Librōs amat. Filius amīcī meī librōs nōn amat. Sed puer bonus est, et bene

labōrat. Validus et impiger est. Equōs bonōs amat et laetus est cum in agrīs labōrat.

2. Amīcus tuus parvum hortum habet. In hortō sunt rosae et lilia. Filius amīcī tuī mihi saepe rosās dat. Lilia et rosās amō, et in hortō cum filiō amīcī meī interdum ambulō. Ex fenestrā tēctī nostrī hortum vidēmus.

3. Hortus Mārcī est pulcher, et ibi cum Mārcō saepe ambulāmus. Mārcus est amīcus noster. Sed hodiē Mārcus in hortō nōn ambulat quod aeger est. Miserī sumus quod amīcus noster est aeger.



A ROMAN FAMILY

Daughter, father, and mother

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

188. 1. The plan of the sailors is not good. 2. The boy has my sword. 3. The poet is unhappy. 4. The woman is unhappy. 5. The son of our friend is a sailor.

OPTIONAL DRILL

189. 1. Amīcus bonus; puer bonus; nauta bonus; agricola impiger; puella impigra. 2. Cum nautā bonō; cum fēminā bonā; cum amīcō bonō; poētārum clārōrum. 3. Nauta est miser; fēmina est misera; nautae sunt miserī; fēminae sunt

miserae. 4. Noster amicus; nostra patria; ex nostrō librō; in hortō pulchrō. 5. Cum cārō amīcō; bella periculōsa; laetus puer. 6. Puer est aeger; amicus tuus est aeger. 7. Parva fenestra; parvum tēctum; parvus ager.

190. 1. Copy the following sentences, replacing each dash by the correct case ending:

(1) Sextus equōs me— laudat. (2) Bellum long— expectāmus. (3) Filia tu— est puella bon—. (4) Poēta est clār—. (5) Nauta est valid—.

2. Translate the following phrases:

A beautiful garden; of an unhappy poet; with the sons of our friend; of the long wars.

(a) Decline **impiger**, using **pulcher** as a model.

(b) Give the Latin for the following phrases as direct objects: *an unhappy sailor; a sick friend; a strong farmer*.

WORD STUDY II

DISAPPEARANCE OF LATIN VOWELS IN ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

In the previous lesson on word study we saw that the words *fable* and *epistle* have lost a vowel from the original Latin forms *fabula* and *epistula*. Similarly *table*, from **tabula**, and many other words have been shortened by the loss of a vowel.

LOSS OF CONSONANTS

Sometimes the comparison of an English word with its Latin original shows that a consonant has disappeared. Thus we have a number of words beginning with **ex** in which the Latin word had **s** following **ex**. Of this class is *expect*, from an early Latin form consisting of **ex**+**spectō**. In this book **expectō** is spelled without **s**, but the form used by many Roman writers was **exspectō**. Later the Romans dropped **s**.

In like manner *exist* and *exile* come from words which once had **ex** followed by **s**. Some Latin textbooks still employ this form.

CHANGE OF **AE** AND **OE** TO **E**

In the word *premium*, from Latin **praemium**, we represent Latin **ae** by *e*. This change is seen in a number of words. We have *equal* from **aequālis**, which has about the same meaning as *equal* and which in turn comes from **aequus**, meaning *level*, *equal*, or *fair*.

Similarly Latin **oe** becomes *e* in English derivatives. From Latin **poena**, *punishment*, we have *penalty* and *penal*. Latin **poenitēre** (also spelled **paenitēre**) is of common origin with **poena** and is the source of *penitent* and *penitentiary*. The word *federation* is connected with Latin **foederātus**, meaning *bound together by a treaty* (**foedus**, *a treaty*).

WORDS ENDING IN **-ANT** AND **-ENT**

There are numerous English adjectives and nouns which end in **-ant** or **-ent**, such as *independent*, *patient*, *tenant*, *apparent*, *constant*. Most of these have come from Latin present participles, a class of words which have stems ending in **-ant**, **-ent**, or **-ient**.

All derivatives of this class which have come from verbs of the first conjugation end in **-ant**. Some of those from verbs of the remaining conjugations end in **-ant**, others in **-ent**. This seeming irregularity arises from the fact that in French, through which these words have mainly been brought into English, the ending had developed as **-ant** for the entire group. Later this was changed to **-ent** for many words to correspond with the spelling which would represent the original form. But this change was not uniform, and in consequence we have some words in which the original conjugation of the Latin word is indicated by the English spelling and others in which it is not. Nouns of this group usually have the ending **-ant**.

LESSON XXIII

PASSIVE VOICE, PRESENT INDICATIVE

USE OF THE PASSIVE VOICE

191. The two sentences *The boy helps his friend* and *The boy is helped by his friend* both have the word *boy* as subject, since in each sentence we say something about the boy. But in the first sentence the subject does the act, while in the second the act is done by someone else. A verb which denotes an act done by the subject is said to be in the *active voice*, and a verb which denotes an act done to the subject by some other person or thing is said to be in the *passive voice*. In the illustrative sentences given above, *helps* is in the active voice and *is helped* is in the passive voice.

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *PORTŌ*

192. The verb *portō* is conjugated as follows in the present indicative passive.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
por'tor, <i>I am carried</i>	portā'mur, <i>we are carried</i>
portā'ris, ¹ <i>you are carried</i>	portā'minī, <i>you are carried</i>
portā'tur, <i>he, she, it, is carried</i>	portan'tur, <i>they are carried</i>

a. These forms may also be translated: *I am being carried, you are being carried, he is being carried, etc.*

PERSON ENDINGS

193. The person endings used in the passive voice are as follows:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
-or (-r), <i>I</i>	-mur, <i>we</i>
-ris, <i>you (singular)</i>	-minī, <i>you (plural)</i>
-tur, <i>he, she, it</i>	-ntur, <i>they</i>

¹There is also a form of the second person singular ending in *-re*. It is not used in the exercises of this book.

a. The characteristic vowel **-ā-** becomes short before **-ntur**, and it disappears before **-or**. In the active, as we have seen, it becomes short before the endings **-t** and **-nt** and disappears before **-ō**.

THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT

194. With passive verbs the person by whom the act is done is denoted by the ablative with the preposition **ā** or **ab**, meaning *by*.

Epistula ā puellā portātur, *the letter is carried by the girl*.

a. Before vowels or *h*, **ab** is used; before most consonants, **ā**.

b. In addition to its use meaning *by* with the ablative of agent **ā** or **ab** sometimes means *from*. The distinction between **ē** or **ex** and **ā** or **ab** meaning *from* is that **ē** or **ex** denotes *place from within which*, while **ā** or **ab** does not indicate that the starting point is within the place named.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

195. 1. Laudantur; amantur; expectantur. 2. Laudāmur; laudāmus; amāmur; amāmus. 3. Lucerna ā fēminā portātur; fēmina lucernam portat. 4. Cōnsilium tuum probātur; cōnsilia tua probantur. 5. Amīcōs amātis; ab amīcīs amāminī. 6. Scūtum ā Mārcō portātur; rosae ā Cornēliā portantur. 7. Ā filiō tuō juvāmur; filium tuum juvāmus. 8. Īnsula ā nautīs mōnstrātur; nautae īnsulam mōnstrant. 9. Librī ā fēminīs dantur; librī puerīs dantur. 10. Fēminae puerīs librōs dant.



LANTERN OF
EARTHENWARE



A CHARIOT DRIVER

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

196. 1. He is praised; he is praising; he is kind. 2. They are helped; they are walking; they are happy. 3. The girl is loved; the girl is beautiful.

OPTIONAL DRILL

197. 1. Oppidum tuum laudātur. 2. Patria tua amātur. 3. Amīcī nostrī juvantur. 4. Scūtum ā puerō portātur. 5. Epistolae probantur; epistolae sunt bonae. 6. Puerī laudantur; puerī sunt impigrī. 7. Amīcus meus expectātur; amīcus meus in viā ambulat.

(a) Conjugate **amō** in the present passive and give the meaning of each form.

(b) Indicate the person endings in sentences 1 and 2 of section 195.

LESSON XXIV

READING EXERCISE

198. 1. Pūblius est vir bonus, et ab amīcīs amātur et laudātur. Fīlium habet, sed filius nōn laudātur, quod impiger nōn est et male labōrat. Pūblius est miser quod filius nōn est impiger.

2. In tēctō tuō galeam et scūtum videō. Gladium quoque videō. Tua arma sunt Rōmāna. Nunc virī galeās et gladiōs in proeliīs habent, sed scūta in bellō nōn portantur.

3. Oppidum nostrum viās lātās habet. In viīs multōs puerōs et puellās vidēmus. Puerī et puellae ex scholā properant.

4. Cūr nūllōs librōs hodiē portās? Librī meī hodiē ab amīcō meō portantur. Saepe librōs amīcī meī portō.

5. Ex oppidō nostrō castra vidēmus. Castra magna sunt. Amīcus meus nunc in castrīs est.



ROMAN HELMETS

199.

VOCABULARY

arma, -ōrum, N. *pl.*, weapons, arms

castra, -ōrum, N. *pl.*, camp

galea, -ae, F., helmet

lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad

male, badly

proelium, -ī, N., battle

vir, virī, M., man

a. The word **castra** is used in the plural number with singular meaning. When it is the subject of a verb the verb must be plural, although translated by an English verb in the singular. An adjective modifying **castra** must be plural.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

200. 1. The boys are helped by the men. 2. Our town is often praised by the poets. 3. The boy's plan is approved by many men. 4. Your native land is loved by my friend. 5. Rewards are given to the boys and girls. 6. The Roman poets are praised by the poets of our native land.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

201. 1. What is an *armory*? 2. What sort of person is a *malefactor*? 3. What are *virile* qualities?

OPTIONAL DRILL

202. 1. Expectāminī, expectātis; expectāris; expector. 2. Fābula nārrātur; fābulae nārrantur; fābulās nārrant. 3. Epistula portātur; epistulae portantur; scūtum ā virō portātur. 4. Vir ā fēminā laudātur; fēmina ā virō laudātur; vir fēminam laudat. 5. Vir arma habet; vir arma portat; arma ā virō portantur. 6. Castra vidēmus; agrōs lātōs vidēmus. 7. Pūblius galeam Rōmānam habet; Sextus gladium Rōmānum habet. 8. Cūr male labōrās? Male labōrō quod aeger sum.

203. 1. The boy is often praised; the boys are often praised. 2. The book is carried by the girl. 3. The letters are carried by the boy. 4. Our country is loved. 5. Your friends are loved. 6. A reward is expected. 7. Rewards are not given.

(a) Conjugate **juvō** in the present active and the present passive and give the meaning of each form.

(b) What Latin form will translate *is* in the sentence "The camp is large"?

LESSON XXV

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE *HIC*

204. The demonstrative **hic**, *this* (plural *these*), is declined as follows:

	<i>Singular</i>				<i>Plural</i>		
NOM.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec	
GEN.	hujus	hujus	hujus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs	
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec	
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs	

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

205. 1. Hī puerī; hujus puerī; cum hōc puerō; cum hīs puerīs. 2. Hoc oppidum; in hōc oppidō; in hīs oppidīs. 3. Haec fēmina, hujus fēminae; hae fēminae; hārum fēminārum; cum hāc fēminā. 4. In hāc terrā; ex hāc terrā; ex hīs terrīs. 5. Haec via est longa. 6. Hanc terram amāmus. 7. Hic puer est filius amīcī nostrī. 8. Hic poēta multōs librōs scribit. 9. Haec insula magnās silvās habet. 10. Haec castra ex oppidō vidēmus. 11. Huic puellae benignus es. 12. Praemium huic puerō dō.



CHARIOT HORSE AND DRIVER

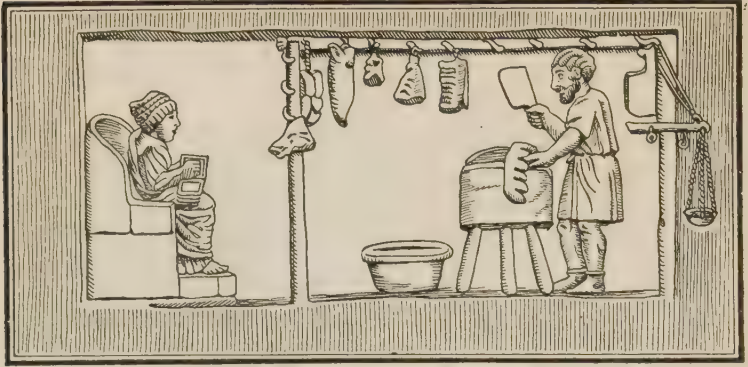
EXERCISES FOR WRITING

206. 1. With this friend; with these friends; with this sailor. 2. Of this friend; of these friends; of this school. 3. In this field; in these fields; from this field. 4. The boy gives a letter to this woman. 5. Your letter is pleasing to this farmer.

OPTIONAL DRILL

207. 1. Haec fēmina filiam habet. 2. Filia hujus fēminae hodiē in scholā est. 3. Cūr huic amīcō pecūniam nōn dās? 4. Hic ager est parvus. 5. Hunc librum tibi dō. 6. Hoc oppidum amō. 7. Amīcī mei in hōc oppidō sunt. 8. Puerī sunt in hīs tabernāculīs. 9. Fulvia est cōnsōbrīna hōrum puerōrum. 10. Haec templa nōn sunt magna.

208. 1. I live in this cottage. 2. The inhabitants of these islands are sailors. 3. Marcus is the son of this farmer. 4. Cornelia loves this girl. 5. These rewards are small.



AN ANCIENT MEAT MARKET

- (a) Decline together **haec terra**.
 (b) Decline together **hic amicus**.
 (c) Give the accusative singular of the Latin for the following: this field, this water, this temple.

FIFTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW LESSONS XX-XXV

arma, -ōrum *iel* aeger, -gra, -grum
 bellum, -ī *illem* amoenus, -a, -um
 castra, -ōrum *for* angustus, -a, -um
 cōsilium, -ī *plan* apertus, -a, -um
 galea, -ae *ben* benignus, -a, -um
 gladius, -ī *good* bonus, -a, -um
 lucerna, -ae *den* cārus, -a, -um
 mēsa, -ae *bus* clārus, -a, -um
 proelium, -ī *kind* dēfessus, -a, -um
 scūtum, -ī *slan* grātus, -a, -um
 vir, virī *entertine* impiger, -gra, -grum

laetus, -a, -um *happy*
 lātus, -a, -um *wide*
 longus, -a, -um *long*
 magnus, -a, -um *large*
 meus, -a, -um *my*
 miser, misera, miserum *misery*
 multus, -a, -um *many*
 noster, -tra, -trum *our*
 nōtus, -a, -um *well known*
 nūllus, -a, -um *none*
 obscūrus, -a, -um *dim*

parvus, -a, -um <i>small</i>	validus, -a, -um	male
periculōsus, -a, -um <i>danger</i>	hic, haec, hoc	satis
pretiōsus, -a, -um		ā, ab
propinquus, -a, -um	absum, abesse	
pulcher, -chra, -chrum	juvō, -āre	aut <i>either</i>
sōlus, -a, -um	probō, -āre	
tuus, -a, -um	pugnō, -āre	

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES IN -US

(See section 170)

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES IN -ER

(See section 186)

DECLENSION OF *HIC*

(See section 204)

PERSON ENDINGS OF THE VERB, PASSIVE VOICE

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1. -or (-r), <i>I</i>	-mur, <i>we</i>
2. -ris, <i>you</i> (singular)	-minī, <i>you</i> (plural)
3. -tur, <i>he, she, it</i>	-ntur, <i>they</i>

THE PASSIVE VOICE

(See sections 191, 192)

SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

(See section 179)

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

(See section 171 a)

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

An adjective agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case.

THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT

(See section 194)

COUNTRY LIFE IN ROMAN TIMES

In the earliest period of their history the Romans were farmers and herdsman, and the ordinary citizen cultivated his own land. But in later times when wealth had increased, farm work was chiefly done by slaves. Since the tools were of a simpler sort than those used on a modern farm, the work was harder and a greater number of workers was necessary.

Instead of using horses in plowing and in similar work, the Romans employed oxen. For lighter work, such as turning the mill to grind grain, donkeys or horses might be used, though these mills were often turned by slaves. To prepare a field for planting or sowing the crop required a much longer time than it does at present. The plows were not so well shaped for turning a furrow as a good plow of the kind now used, but they served to loosen the soil.

The Romans did not grow corn or potatoes, since neither of these articles was known in Europe until after the discovery of America. They raised wheat and some other kinds of grain, and they gave much attention to grapes and olives. Olives were especially important for oil, though they were also eaten as in modern times. Olive oil served the purpose of butter to a great extent, and also it was used for producing light.

Large numbers of sheep were kept, chiefly for the sake of their wool, since the Romans seem to have cared less for mutton than we do. In early times all cloth for garments among the Romans was made of wool, but at a later period silk, cotton, and linen came into use to some extent.

Wealthy Romans often had fine country places which were kept for pleasure rather than for profit. After the Romans had conquered a number of foreign countries they imported most of their wheat from these countries instead of raising it in Italy. Farming in Italy then came to be mainly the growing of fruit and the raising of cattle and other live stock.

LESSON XXVI

READING EXERCISE



TRĒS PUERĪ RŌMĀNĪ

209. 1. Hic puer est Mārcus. Ā dextrā stat Sextus, ā sinistrā stat Pūblius. Hī trēs sunt puerī Rŏmānī. Arma quoque Rŏmāna vidēmus. Mārcus gladium et scūtum habet. Sextus jaculum et sagittās portat. Pūblius est parvus, et arma nōn habet. Mārcus et Sextus et Pūblius sunt filiī Titī. Titus est sagittārius, et nunc in Hispāniā est. Rŏmānī cum incolīs Hispāniae pugnant.

2. (*Marcus speaks.*) Mārcus sum. Hic puer parvus est Pūblius. Pūblius gladium nōn habet quod parvus est. Puer tertius est Sextus. Sextus est magnus puer et arma portat. Filiī Titī sumus.

3. (*Publius speaks.*) Pūblius sum. Arma nōn habeō quod parvus sum. Sextus et Mārcus sunt puerī magnī et arma portant. Arma amant et bellum laudant, sed nōn in bellō pugnant.

210.

VOCABULARY

dextra, -ae, F., right hand;

ā dextrā, on the right

jaculum, -ī, N., javelin

sagitta, -ae, F., arrow

sagittārius, -ī, M., archer

sinistra, -ae, F., left hand;

ā sinistrā, on the left

tertius, -a, -um, third

Titus, -ī, M., Titus (*name of a man or boy*)

trēs, three



ROMAN JAVELINS

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

211. 1. This boy and this girl are in our school. 2. A friend of this boy is now in our town. 3. I often give this boy money. 4. (There) are no roses in this garden. 5. This farmer is a good man.

OPTIONAL DRILL

212. 1. Hoc jaculum est longum. 2. Cūr hās sagittās portās? 3. Interdum hunc sagittārium in oppidō vidēmus. 4. Incolae hujus terrae cum Rōmānīs pugnant. 5. Hīs parvīs puerīs arma nōn dantur. 6. Haec oppida viās lātās habent. 7. Titus est amīcus hōrum virōrum. 8. Hic poēta est incola Galliae. 9. Incolae hārum insulārum in parvīs casīs habitant.

213. 1. These archers do not carry shields. 2. My cottage is on this small island. 3. These tents are large. 4. Fulvia does not live in this town. 5. The books of these poets are not often praised.

(a) Give the Latin for the following as subjects: these boys, these girls, these rewards.

(b) Give the Latin for the following as direct objects: these fields, these cottages, these farmers.

(c) Decline together **haec castra**.

LESSON XXVII

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

CASE USE WITH PREPOSITIONS

214. The prepositions **cum**, **ex**, and **in**, as has been seen, take the ablative case. There are, however, many prepositions with which the accusative is used. The accusative, therefore, in addition to being the case of the direct object of a verb, is also found with certain prepositions.

When a new preposition is given in the vocabulary, the case with which it is used will be indicated. Thus **ante**, *prep. with acc.*, means that **ante** is a preposition which takes the accusative. The number of prepositions taking the accusative is larger than the number of those taking the ablative.

PHRASES WITH TO

215. We have seen that an English phrase with *to* is translated by the dative case if it is equivalent to an indirect object or if it depends on an adjective similar in meaning to those given in section **68**. In such phrases the English word *to* is represented by the case ending of the Latin word. But phrases with *to* denoting the place to which a person or thing moves are expressed by the preposition **ad**, followed by the accusative case.



INTERIOR OF A ROMAN HOUSE (RESTORATION)

READING EXERCISE: *SCHOLA MEA ET AMĪCĪ MEĪ*

216. 1. Māne ad scholam properō. Multī virī tum per viās properant. Ante scholam nostram est magnum aedificium. In hōc aedificiō multī virī labōrant. Amīcus meus, Pūblius, ibi aestāte labōrat, sed nunc in scholā est. Post hoc aedificium est via lāta. Trāns hanc viam est parva casa, et amīcus meus in hāc casā habitat.

2. Vesperī post hōrās scholae cum amīcīs meis saepe ambulō. Interdum amīcōs ad tēctum nostrum invītō. Saepe ad tēcta amīcōrum invītō. Multōs amīcōs habeo.

3. Māne puerī et puellae ad scholam properant. Haec schola est ante magnum aedificium. Ibi labōrō. Filius amīcī meī in hōc aedificiō aestāte labōrat, sed nunc in scholā est. Vesperī post hōrās scholae filius amīcī in viā ambulat. Multī puerī tum in viis ambulant. Interdum filius amīcī ad tēctum meum invītātur. Multōs amīcōs habet.

217.

VOCABULARY

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward

aedificium, **-ī**, N., building

ante, *prep. with acc.*, before,
in front of

hōra, **-ae**, F., hour

invītō, **-āre**, invite

māne, in the morning

per, *prep. with acc.*, through

post, *prep. with acc.*, behind,
after

trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

218. 1. The girl hurries to the cottages. 2. We walk through the forest with a friend. 3. The tent is in the forest behind the town. 4. (There) is a large building across the street. 5. My friends are often invited to your house.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

219. 1. What is an *edifice*? 2. Find the origin of the abbreviations *a. m.* and *p. m.* 3. What is a *transcontinental* railroad? 4. What is an *anteroom*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

220. 1. Ante bellum; post bellum; per silvam; trāns insulam. 2. Ante templum; ante templa; ante castra. 3. Per viās; per insulās; post insulās; post castra. 4. Multa aedificia; magna aedificia; ad oppidum; in oppidō. 5. Invitat; invītātur; māne labōrō; māne labōrāmus. 6. Hujus hōrae; hārum hōrārum; per hanc hōram. 7. Ad silvam; ex silvā; ad castra; ex castrīs. 8. Ad silvam properāmus. 9. Per viās properāmus. 10. Post hōrās scholae in viā ambulās.

221. 1. Before the cottage; behind the cottage; through the forests; in the forests. 2. Across the forest; across the field; through the field. 3. In this building; from this building; to this building. 4. I invite Titus to my cottage; Titus is invited

to my cottage. 5. In the morning I walk in the forest. 6. We walk through the forest.

(a) Tell which of the phrases with *to* in the following sentences will be translated by **ad** with the accusative and which by the dative case alone: (1) I gave the letter to the boy. (2) He is walking to the town. (3) We hurried to the window. (4) The report is not pleasing to your father.

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: THE CONJUNCTION

222. The words *and*, *but*, and *or* are used to join words or parts of sentences. In the sentence *Your father and mother are not in the city* the word *and* is used to join the words *father* and *mother*. In like manner, in the sentence *The train is late, but it will soon arrive* the word *but* joins the two parts of the sentence *The train is late* and *it will soon arrive*. Such words are called *conjunctions*. Conjunctions of a somewhat different kind are *because*, *although*, *if*, and some other words. In the sentence *I shall go if I receive the letter* the conjunction *if* is used to join the verb *shall go* and *I receive the letter*.

LESSON XXVIII

SECOND CONJUGATION

CHARACTERISTIC VOWEL OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

223. The verb **monet**, *he warns*, differs from **portat**, *he carries*, in that it has **e** instead of **a** before the ending **-t**. Similarly, **monēmus**, *we warn*, differs from **portāmus**, *we carry*, and **monētur**, *he is warned*, differs from **portātur**, *he is carried*.

This verb belongs to the *second conjugation*. The infinitive, meaning *to warn*, is **monēre**. All verbs which have the present active infinitive ending in **-ēre** are of the second conjugation and are conjugated like **moneō**. The present indicative of **moneō** is as follows:

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *MONEŌ*

224.

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

*Singular**Singular*mo'neō, *I warn, am warning*mo'neor, *I am warned*mo'nēs, *you warn, etc.*monē'ris, *you are warned*mo'net, *he, she, it, warns, etc.*monē'tur, *he, she, it, is warned**Plural**Plural*monē'mus, *we warn*monē'mur, *we are warned*monē'tis, *you warn*monē'minī, *you are warned*mo'nent, *they warn*monen'tur, *they are warned*

a. The person endings are the same as in the forms of *portō*.

b. The verbs *videō*, *habeō*, and *maneō*, which have been used in previous lessons, are of the second conjugation, as well as *moneō*, *timeō*, and *dēbeō*, which occur in the vocabulary of this lesson.

READING EXERCISE

225. Patria sociōrum nostrōrum est terra pulchra. In hāc terrā sunt multa oppida et magnae silvae. Ibi magna et pulchra aedificia quoque mōnstrantur. Agricolae ibi sunt impigrī et equōs bonōs habent. Interdum in patriā nostrā equōs ex hāc terrā vidēmus.

Sed incolae patriae sociōrum nostrōrum saepe bellum timent, et vīta ibi multa perīcula habet. In multīs terrīs Eurōpae vīta est perīculōsa quod incolae saepe in bellō pugnant. Castra et arma vident. Propter haec bella multī sunt miserī.

Sociōs nostrōs propter perīculum interdum monēmus. Cōpiās magnās nōn habent. Cōpiās parātās habēre dēbent. Sed nūllus vir bonus bellum cupit.



ROMAN INFANTRY AND CAVALRY

226.

VOCABULARY

<i>cōpia</i> , -ae, f., plenty; <i>pl.</i> , troops, forces	<i>periculum</i> , -ī, n., danger
<i>dēbeō</i> , -ēre, owe, ought	<i>propter</i> , <i>prep.</i> with <i>acc.</i> , on account of
<i>moneō</i> , -ēre, warn	<i>socius</i> , -ī, m., ally
<i>parātus</i> , -a, -um, prepared, ready	<i>timeō</i> , -ēre, fear

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

227. 1. We are sometimes warned by our friends. 2. You (*singular*) ought to have your book. 3. War is not feared by our allies. 4. You do not see our house from your window. 5. We do not fear danger, because we are prepared.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

228. 1. What is a *copious* supply? 2. Find in a dictionary the origin of the words *debt* and *peril*. 3. What is the original meaning of *monitor*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

229. 1. Monet; portat; monētur; portātur; monēmus; portāmus. 2. Habēmus; habitāmus; habet; habitat; timet; timētur. 3. Perīculum vidēs; perīculum timēs; perīculum timēre nōn dēbēs. 4. Cōpiaē nostrae parātae sunt; socii nostrī parātī sunt. 5. Magnās cōpiās habētis et timēre nōn dēbētis. 6. Hoc perīculum est magnum; haec perīcula sunt magna. 7. Sociōs monēmus; socii monentur; ā sociis monēmur.

230. 1. They are feared; they are warned; they are praised. 2. They have; they live; they see. 3. We ought to warn; we ought to praise; I ought to work. 4. I am prepared; we are prepared; he is prepared. 5. The forces of the allies are large. 6. Before these wars; after these wars; through this land.

(a) Conjugate **videō** and **timeō** in the present tense, active and passive.

(b) Decline together **hoc perīculum**.

LESSON XXIX

READING EXERCISE: COLLOQUIUM

231. Quid in mēnsā videō?

Librum Latīnum meum vidēs.

Habetne cōnsōbrīna tua librum Latīnum?

Ita. Cōnsōbrīna mea quoque librum Latīnum habet.

Cūr hōs librōs habētis?

In scholā nostrā linguam Latīnam discimus.

Habentne multī puerī et puellae in hāc scholā librōs Latīnōs?

Ita. Multōs librōs Latīnōs in scholā nostrā vidēmus.

Estne lingua patriae tuae lingua Latīna?

Minimē. Sed lingua nostra multa verba Latīna habet.

Cūr Sextus ā magistrō monētur?
 Monētur quod nōn bene labōrat. Saepe domī manet.
 Amatne Sextus linguam Latīnam?
 Minimē. Nullōs librōs amat. Nōn est impiger.
 Habetne multa praemia?
 Nulla praemia habet. Nam praemia puerō pigrō nōn
 dantur.
 Habetne multōs amīcōs?
 Amīcōs nōn habet. Multī (*section 179*) puerum pigrum
 nōn probant.
 Estne hic puer laetus?
 Nōn est laetus. Poenam timet.
 Timetne Mārcus quoque poenam?
 Minimē. Poena ā Mārcō nōn timētur.
 Cūr ā Mārcō poena nōn timētur?
 Mārcus bene labōrat. Saepe laudātur.

232.

VOCABULARY

magister, -trī, M., teacher¹

maneō, -ēre, remain

nam, *conj.*, for

piger, -gra, -grum, lazy

poena, -ae, F., punishment

verbum, -ī, N., word

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

233. 1. We often see your son in the town. 2. You ought to give money to this man. 3. Our forces are not feared by the Romans. 4. These boys are warned, and they fear punishment. 5. In summer we do not remain in the town.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

234. 1. What is a *verbal* agreement? 2. What is the derivation of *penitentiary*? 3. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *master*.

¹The word for teacher when denoting a woman is *magistra*, -ae.



SCENE NEAR TIVOLI

The modern town of Tivoli is on the site of the ancient Tibur, a town located in the hills not far from Rome.

OPTIONAL DRILL

235. 1. Monēmus; monēminī; ā magistrō monēmur. 2. Timēs; timēris; habēs; habitās. 3. Monēminī; timēminī; timētis. 4. Nunc timēre nōn dēbēs. 5. Verba tua nōn sunt grata. 6. Cūr poenam timēs? 7. Filius nautae est piger. 8. Magister puero librum dat.

- (a) Conjugate **habeō** in the present active.
- (b) Give the present infinitives of all the second conjugation verbs that have been learned thus far, with their meanings.
- (c) Point out the person endings in 1, 2, and 3 of section 235.
- (d) Write the accusative singular and plural of the words for "a lazy sailor."

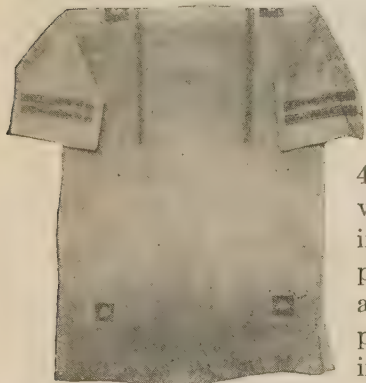
LESSON XXX

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE *ILLE*

236. The demonstrative *ille*, *that* (plural *those*), is declined as follows:

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
NOM.	il'le	il'la	il'lud	il'li	il'lae	il'la
GEN.	illī'us	illī'us	illī'us	illō'rum	illā'rum	illō'rum
DAT.	il'li	il'li	il'li	il'lis	il'lis	il'lis
ACC.	il'lum	il'lam	il'lud	il'lōs	il'lās	il'la
ABL.	il'lō	il'lā	il'lō	il'lis	il'lis	il'lis

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION



TUNIC

This garment was found in Egypt, but it probably represents the form of the Roman tunic.

237. 1. In illō oppidō; in hōc oppidō; cum illis amīcīs; cum hīs amīcīs. 2. Illīus virī; illīus bellī; illīus filiae. 3. Illī amīcō; cum illō agricolā; ab illō nautā. 4. Hae puellae et illī puerī; illī virī et hae fēminae. 5. Ille puer in periculō est. 6. Illī nautae periculum nōn timent. 7. Illōs amīcōs monēre dēbēmus. 8. Illa pictūra saepe laudātur. 9. Cūr in illā terrā manēs? 10. Ille vir huic puerō benignus est. 11. Illis sociīs pecūniam dare dēbēmus. 12. Post illam silvam est parvum oppidum.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

238. 1. That horse; that book; that war; that star. 2. Of that war; of that letter; of that field. 3. In those fields; in

these fields; in this island. 4. In that building; from those buildings; from that farmhouse. 5. That horse is small. 6. I often give letters to that girl.

OPTIONAL DRILL

239. 1. Magister illōs puerōs laudat. 2. Illud aedificium est magnum templum. 3. Hī virī et illae fēminae sunt incolae Eurōpae. 4. Illud verbum est verbum Latinum. 5. In illā mēnsā sunt librī tuī. 6. Cornēlia est amita illius puerī. 7. Cūr illum puerum nōn invītās? 8. Ab illīs virīs timēmur. 9. Illa oppida in Siciliā sunt. 10. Magister illī puerō praemium dat.

240. 1. I often see those towns. 2. The sons of that man are lazy. 3. The schools of that town are not praised. 4. Those boys and these girls live in this town. 5. The teacher gives that boy a book.

(a) Decline together **illud jaculum**.

(b) Decline together **illa fābula**.

(c) Conjugate **timeō** in the present passive.

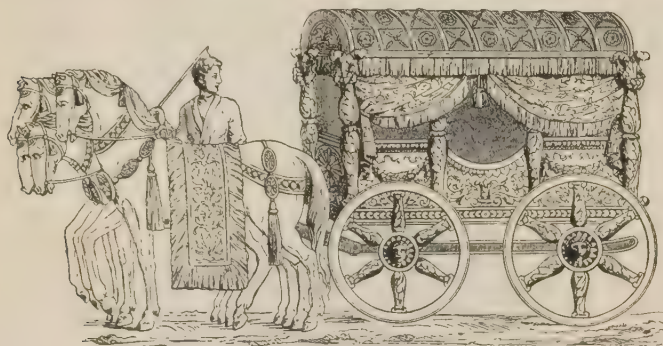


A TEMPLE OF JUPITER

TRAVEL AMONG THE ROMANS

In many respects the methods and conditions of travel among the Romans were like those in the early period of our own country. For travel by land, since there were no railroads, no automobiles, and no airplanes, one had to rely on vehicles drawn by horses or mules, unless he chose to ride horseback or to walk.

For a rather large part of Rome's history the Romans had an advantage over our own people of early times in that there were very good roads in Italy. These roads were not quite so good as our best modern automobile roads, but they were better than most of the roads in our country forty years ago. In many places the pavement of these ancient Roman roads is still to be seen.



A ROMAN CARRIAGE

The wagons and carriages used by the Romans were of various kinds. Some of them had covers or tops to keep off the rain and the sun, others were open. They did not have springs to lessen the effect of rough places in the road, but since the roads were usually smooth they were perhaps not so uncomfortable as might be thought. For journeys in which speed was important light carts were sometimes used.

A fact which made travel less satisfactory than at present was the lack of good hotels. Most of the places which were kept to provide accommodations for travelers were of a poor sort and were patronized chiefly by a rough and unpleasant-mannered class. Often they were headquarters for thieves. Persons who had acquaintances along the route by which they were traveling usually arranged to stop at the homes of these acquaintances instead of going to hotels.

Wealthy persons were always attended by a number of slaves, partly because this served to indicate that they had plenty of money and partly because bandits were sometimes to be feared. For short distances a traveler would be carried in a litter instead of riding in a carriage. Sometimes rather long journeys were made in this way. Strong and active slaves carried these litters, though there was one kind of conveyance for which the poles were attached to two mules, one in front of the litter and one behind, instead of being carried on the shoulders of slaves.

Those who traveled by sea could not rely on ships which left at regular dates like modern ocean liners, but had to find merchant vessels which were sailing at about the time they wished to go. These boats were small and they were apt to be uncomfortable. Since they depended either on sails or oars they were slow. But travel by water was almost entirely limited to the Mediterranean, chiefly between Italy and Greece or Italy and the north coast of Africa, so that the distances were short as compared with modern voyages.



LESSON XXXI

READING EXERCISE

241. 1. Ille vir est caecus, sed in viis sine amīcō saepe ambulat neque periculum timet. Saepe ad tēctum filiī ambulat. Filius in tēctō post hortum nostrum habitat.

2. Quam timida illa puella est! Sed nūllum periculum in hīs locīs est, et puella tūta est.

3. Cūr pecūniam illī puerō iterum dās? Pecūniam iterum illī puerō dō quod epistulās meās portat. Hodiē epistulam ad amīcum tuum portat.

4. Mārcus nōn adest. Ubi est? Cum amīcō in silvā est. Sed Titus et Sextus adsunt. Hī puerī sunt amīcī meī. Mārcus quoque amīcus meus est.

5. Filia illius fēminae nunc in Britanniā est. Fēmina epistulās ad filiam saepe scrībit. Filia quoque epistulās scrībit. Hās epistulās amīcō dat. Amīcus epistulās ad Americam portat.

242.

VOCABULARY

adsum, adesse, be present, be at hand

caecus, -a, -um, blind

iterum, adv., again

locus, -ī, m. (pl. loca, -ōrum, n.), place.

neque, conj., nor, and not

quam, adv., how, as, than

sine, prep. with abl., without

timidus, -a, -um, timid

tūtus, -a, -um, safe

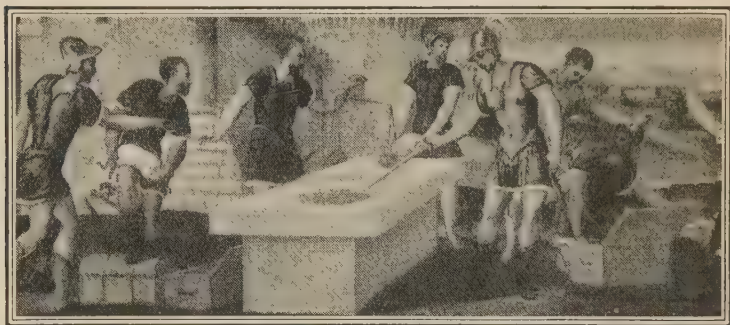
a. The verb **adsum** (like **absum**, section 173 a) is a compound of **sum**, and is conjugated like the simple verb: **adsum, ades, adest**, etc.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

243. 1. Who is that girl? 2. Why has that boy no books? 3. The daughter of that man is ill. 4. I often give letters to that boy. 5. That woman and that man are inhabitants of Ireland.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

244. 1. What is the meaning of *reiterate*? 2. Find an adjective, a noun, and a verb which are connected in derivation with *locus*. 3. What is meant by the statement "The legislature adjourned *sine die*"? 4. Find a noun which is connected in derivation with *timidus*.



THE RANSOM OF ROME

Gold is given to the Gauls that Rome may be spared. The Gallic leader adds his sword to the weights in the scales

OPTIONAL DRILL

245. 1. In illō locō; in hōc locō; ex hīs locīs; ex illīs locīs. 2. Iterum adsum; iterum adsumus; iterum adsunt. 3. Timidus es; quam timidus es!; tūtus es; tūtī sumus. 4. Sociōs nōn habēmus, neque bellum timēmus. 5. Ille vir caecus nōn sine amīcīs est. 6. In hōc locō sine perīculō manēmus. 7. Illī puerī parātī sunt. 8. Illī amīcō; cum illō agricolā; ab illō nautā. 9. Interdum ab illīs amīcīs invītāmur. 10. Iterum ab illīs amīcīs invītāmur.

246. 1. We are safe without weapons. 2. How timid that blind boy is! 3. Your son is not present today, nor do I see your daughter. 4. That place is not safe. 5. These men and those boys are my friends.

(a) Decline together *illa silva*.

(b) Decline the adjective *timidus* in all genders.

SIXTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XXVI-XXXI

aedificium, -ī <i>building</i>	caecus, -a, -um <i>blind</i>	timeō, -ēre <i>fear</i>
cōpia, -ae <i>troops</i>	parātus, -a, -um <i>prepared</i>	iterum <i>again</i>
dextra, -ae <i>right</i>	piger, -gra, -grum <i>lazy</i>	māne <i>morning</i>
hōra, -ae <i>hour</i>	tertius, -a, -um <i>third</i>	quam <i>as</i>
jaculum, -ī <i>javelin</i>	timidus, -a, -um <i>fearful</i>	ad <i>toward</i>
locus, -ī <i>wide</i>	tūtus, -a, -um <i>safe</i>	ante <i>before</i>
magister, -trī <i>teacher</i>	trēs <i>three</i>	per <i>through</i>
periculum, -ī <i>danger</i>	ille, illa, illud <i>that</i>	post <i>behind</i>
poena, -ae <i>punishment</i>	adsum, adesse <i>be present</i>	propter <i>on account of</i>
sagitta, -ae <i>arrow</i>	dēbeō, -ēre <i>ought</i>	sine <i>without</i>
sagittārius, -ī <i>archer</i>	invītō, -āre <i>invite</i>	trāns <i>across</i>
sinistra, -ae <i>left</i>	manēō, -ēre <i>remain</i>	nam <i>for</i>
socius, -ī <i>allies</i>	moneō, -ēre <i>warn</i>	neque <i>and not</i>
verbum, -ī <i>word</i>		

SECOND CONJUGATION

Present Active Infinitive Termination, -ēre

(Present Indicative, see section 225)

DECLENSION OF ILLE

(See section 236)

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

(See section 215)



A ROMAN TRUMPET

LESSON XXXII

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

THE IMPERFECT TENSE

247. In the sentence *I was walking in the street* the act denoted by the verb is in past time and is represented as going on or continuing. The forms of the Latin verb which correspond to this usage are said to be in the *imperfect tense*: **ambulābam**, *I was walking*.

a. Occasionally we use the simple past tense of an English verb when we really mean to represent an act or situation as continuing. Thus, *The man had many friends*. In this sentence *had* represents a situation continuing or existing at a past time and will be translated by the imperfect.

THE IMPERFECT ACTIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

248. The verbs **portō** and **moneō** are conjugated as follows in the imperfect active:

Singular

portā'bam, *I was carrying (or I carried)*
portā'bās, *you were carrying (you carried)*
portā'bat, *he, she, it, was carrying (he carried, etc.)*

Plural

portābā'mus, *we were carrying (we carried)*
portābā'tis, *you were carrying (you carried)*
portā'bant, *they were carrying (they carried)*

Singular

monē'bam, *I was warning (or I warned)*
monē'bās, *you were warning (you warned)*
monē'bat, *he, she, it, was warning (he warned, etc.)*

Plural

monēbā'mus, *we were warning (we warned)*
monēbā'tis, *you were warning (you warned)*
monē'bant, *they were warning (they warned)*

a. The syllable **-bā-**, which is seen in all the forms of the imperfect, is called the *tense sign* of the imperfect. The forms are made up of the present stem + **bā**¹ + person endings.

READING EXERCISE

249. 1. Gallī auxilium postulābant quod Rōmānī agrōs Galliae vāstābant et oppida occupābant. Gallī prō patriā fortiter pugnābant, sed satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbant, et propter perīculum auxilium dēsiderābant.

2. Auxilium postulāmus quod bellum timēmus. Agrī nostrī vāstantur, et oppida occupantur. Sine sociīs patria nostra nōn tūta est.

3. Bellum nōn dēsiderāmus, sed Rōmānōs nōn timēmus. Patria cāra est, et prō patriā pugnāmus.

4. In bellō agricolae nōn sine perīculō in agrīs labōrant. Tum fēminae et puerī et puellae in oppidīs timent. Bellum fēminīs nōn grātum est.

5. Mārcus in viā cum parvā puellā ambulābat. Puella rosam portābat. Parva puella cōnsōbrīna Mārcī est, et saepe cum Mārcō ambulat.

¹In this tense sign ā becomes short before the person endings -m, -t, -nt in the active and before -r and -ntur in the passive.

250.

VOCABULARY

auxilium, -ī, N., help, assistance

dēsiderō, -āre, desire

fortiter, *adv.*, bravely

Gallia, -ae, F., Gaul (*a country*)

Gallus, -ī, M., a Gaul

occupō, -āre, seize

postulō, -āre, demand

prō, *prep.* with *abl.*, for, on behalf of, before

vāstō, -āre, lay waste

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

251. 1. I was walking with friends in the street. 2. That boy was carrying a book and a letter. 3. Our allies were fighting bravely for (their) native country. 4. The Romans were laying waste the fields in Gaul. 5. The boys did not see (were not seeing) the danger.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

252. 1. Find an adjective ending in *-ic* which is related to **Gallus**. 2. What is the meaning of *pro-slavery*? 3. What is a *devastated* region? 4. What is an *auxiliary* verb?



GALLIC CAVALRYMAN

OPTIONAL DRILL

253. 1. Occupābat; occupat; occupātur; monēbat; monet; monētur. 2. Auxilium postulābat; auxilium postulat; auxilium postulātur. 3. Propter pericula; propter illud bellum; propter praemium. 4. Gallī illam terram vāstābant; Gallī illam terram

vāstant; illa terra ā Gallis vāstātur. 5. Prō patriā pugnābant; prō patriā pugnant; prō amīcīs fortiter pugnant. 6. Auxilium dēsīderābāmus; auxilium dēsīderāmus. 7. Tum perīculum timēbāmus; nunc perīculum nōn timēmus. 8. Cūr illum virum timēbātis?

254. 1. They were carrying; they were warning; he was praising; he is praised. 2. The Romans were laying waste those fields. 3. That man was walking in the forest. 4. He did not fear (was not fearing) danger in that place. 5. We were fighting bravely for our country. 6. He saw (was seeing) the danger and he demanded (was demanding) help. 7. They were seeing; they were fearing; they were warning; they were desiring.

(a) Rewrite paragraph 1, section **249**, changing the verbs to the present tense.

(b) Conjugate **timeō**, **habeō**, and **habitō** in the imperfect active.

PRINCIPLES OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR: TENSE OF VERBS

255. When someone says, *The boy stands in the street*, we know that the act is going on while we are being told about it; that is, in the present time. If the sentence is *The boy stood in the street*, we know that the act took place at some past time, and similarly the sentence *The boy will stand in the street* shows that the act is going to take place in the future. In these sentences the form of the verb shows what is the time of the act. The forms of a verb which show time are called *tenses*. There are six tenses in English. Their names are *present*, *past*, *future*, *present perfect*, *past perfect*, and *future perfect*. The following forms of the verb *walk* with the subject *I* show how these tenses are used.

PRESENT I walk
PAST I walked
FUTURE I shall walk

PRESENT PERFECT I have walked
PAST PERFECT I had walked
FUTURE PERFECT I shall have walked

WORD STUDY III

USE OF PREFIXES

We often attach a word or syllable to the beginning of another word in English and thus form a new word. From *contented* we form *discontented* by joining the syllable *dis-* to *contented*. A word or syllable thus joined to the beginning of a word is called a *prefix*.

LATIN PREFIXES

Most Latin prefixes are prepositions, though a few are not. We have had **absum** and **adsum** in which the prepositions **ab** and **ad** are prefixed to **sum**, and **expectō** in which **ex** is prefixed to **spectō** (with **s** dropped). Similarly **circum** (*around*) is prefixed to **spectō** to form **circumspectō**.

INSEPARABLE PREFIXES

In addition to the prepositions used as prefixes there are a few prefixes which are never found as separate words. One of these is **re-** (sometimes spelled **red-**), which regularly means *back* or *again*. From **re-** and **vocō** we have **revocō**, *call back*. Another of this class is **in-** meaning *not*. Words formed with this prefix sometimes denote the opposite of the simple word. From **amīcus**, *friend*, we have **inimīcus**, *enemy*, in which this prefix is seen.

These are called *inseparable* prefixes. Their number is not large.

a. The inseparable prefix, **in-**, *not*, must not be confused with the preposition **in**, *in* or *into*, which is also frequently used as a prefix.

CHANGES IN SPELLING

When a prefix is joined to a word a vowel in the original word is sometimes changed. As an example we have seen the first vowel of **amīcus** changed to **i** in the derived word **inimīcus**. Our word *prohibit* comes from a compound of **habeō** in which **a** has become *i*.

CHANGES IN MEANING WITH PREFIXES

Usually we can understand the meaning of a new word formed with a prefix when we know the meaning of the prefix and of the word to which it is attached. Thus **circum**, *around*, and **spectō**, *look*, form **circumspectō**, *look around*.

But sometimes the meaning of the new word has changed from that indicated by the parts or elements of which it is made up. Thus **expectō** (originally **exspectō**) cannot be defined exactly by taking the usual meanings of **ex** and **spectō**, though it keeps something of the idea of *look* (*look for*).

EXERCISE

Find in your English dictionary twenty words beginning with *ex* (not *extra*).



A STREET IN OSTIA

LESSON XXXIII

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND
INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

256. The use in questions of **quis**, *who*, and **quid**, *what*, has been seen in previous lessons. **Quis** is a nominative form and **quid** is either nominative or accusative. The genitive meaning *whose* or *of whom* is **cujus** in the singular and **quōrum** in the plural.

These are forms of the *interrogative pronoun*. Its complete declension is given below. In the singular the same forms are commonly used for the masculine and feminine, but the plural is regularly declined in the three genders.

Singular

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
NOM.	(<i>Qui</i>) quis (<i>Quis</i>)	quid (<i>Quid</i>)	<i>who, what</i>
GEN.	cujus	cujus	<i>whose, of whom, of what</i>
DAT.	cui	cui	<i>to whom, to what, whom</i> (as indirect object)
ACC.	quem (<i>Quem</i>)	quid (<i>Quid</i>)	<i>whom, what</i>
ABL.	quō (<i>Quo</i>)	quō	(<i>from, by, with</i>) <i>whom, what, etc.</i>

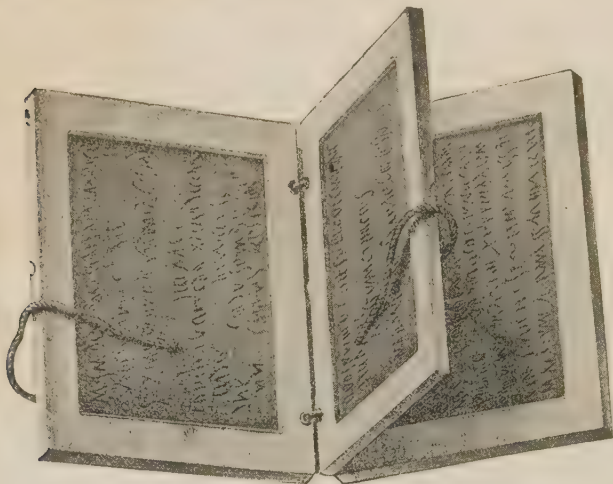
Plural

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
NOM.	quī	quae	quae	<i>who, what</i>
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	<i>whose, of whom, of what</i>
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus	<i>to whom, to what, whom</i> (as indirect object)
ACC.	quōs	quās	quae	<i>whom, what</i>
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus	(<i>from, by, with</i>) <i>whom, what</i>

THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE

257. In the sentences *Which road shall we take?* and *What town is this?* the words *which* and *what* are interrogative adjectives.

In the nominative singular the interrogative adjective is **quī** or **quis** for the masculine, **quae** for the feminine, and **quod** for the neuter. The feminine has in the singular **quam** for the accusative and **quā** for the ablative and the neuter has **quod** for the accusative. The other forms are the same for all genders as those of **quis** given on page 145.



WRITING TABLETS

READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM*

258. 1. Quis est ille vir?
Ille vir est Pūblius.
Cui Pūblius epistulam dat?
Pūblius epistulam Sextō dat.
Cujus filius est Sextus?

Sextus est filius amīcī meī.

In quō oppidō amīcus tuus habitat?

Amīcus meus in oppidō nōn habitat. Est agricola.

Sed quem videō in viā cum Sextō?

Titum in viā cum Sextō vidēs.

Cūr Titus adest?

Titus adest quod invitātur.

Ā quō hic puer invitātur?

Titus ab amīcō tuō invitātur.

2. Quōrum agrōs Rōmānī vāstābant?

Rōmānī agrōs Gallōrum vāstābant.

Quī oppida Gallōrum occupābant?

Rōmānī oppida Gallōrum occupābant.

Quōs Gallī timēbant?

Gallī Rōmānōs timēbant.

Quibus Gallī nunc pecūniam dant?

Gallī Rōmānīs pecūniam dant.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

259. 1. Whose son are you? 2. Whose (*plural*) daughters are those girls? 3. To whom (*singular*) was Titus giving money? 4. Whom (*singular*) do you see in the street? 5. Whom (*plural*) do our allies fear?

OPTIONAL DRILL

260. 1. Quid portās? Quid portābās? 2. Cujus librum habēs? 3. Cui librum dās? 4. Ā quō praemium datur? 5. Quōs fēmina monet? 6. Ā quibus auxilium postulātur? 7. Quōs ad tēctum tuum invitās? 8. Quōrum arma sunt illa? 9. Quid nunc expectās? 10. Quibus praemia dabātis?

261. 1. Who was working in the field? 2. Who were demanding money? 3. Whom (*plural*) ought we to await? 4. To whom (*singular*) were you telling this story?

LESSON XXXIV

READING EXERCISE

262. 1. Illud oppidum longē ab oppidis sociōrum abest. Sed incolae periculum in bellō nōn timent quod mūrus oppidi altus est. Propter hunc mūrum oppidum est tūtum.

2. Puerī in viā clāmant. Mē vocant, sed nōn respondeō quod amita mea mē nunc in tēctō manēre jubet. Hodiē aeger sum.

3. Cūr, puerī, in viā clāmātis? Quem vocātis?

Sextum vocāmus. In illō tēctō habitat.

Sed Sextum hodiē in tēctō manēre jubeō, quod aeger est.

4. Villa nostra est inter oppidum et silvam, sed nōn longē ab oppidō abest. Ex jānuā villae oppidum vidēmus. In illō oppidō multōs amīcōs habeo. Saepe amīci mei in villā nostrā sunt.

5. Inter haec magna aedificia est via angusta. Saepe in hāc viā ambulō quod casa nostra nōn longē ab hīs aedificiis abest. Amīcus meus quoque ibi habitat.

263.

VOCABULARY

altus, -a, -um, high, tall, deep

clāmō, -āre, shout

inter, *prep. with acc.*, between,
among

jubeō, -ēre, order, command

longē, *adv.*, at a distance, far

mē (*direct object*), me

mūrus, -ī, M., wall

respondeō, -ēre, answer, reply

vocō, -āre, call

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

- 264.** 1. Why do you not answer Marcus (*indirect object*)?
2. Our garden is between the house and the street. 3. On the right is a high wall. 4. Whose (*singular*) cottage do you see?
5. That island is far (distant) from Sicily.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

265. 1. What is meant by *altitude*? 2. What is an *inter-scholastic* contest? 3. What are *mural* decorations? 4. What is a *vocation*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

266. 1. Quis abest? Quī absunt? Quis respondet? Quī respondent? 2. Quem vocās? Quem vocābās? Quis clāmat? Quis clāmābat? 3. Quid jubēs? Quid vidēs? Quid vidēbās? 4. Oppidum ā silvā nōn longē abest. 5. Mūrus est altus; aedificium est altum. 6. Inter amīcōs; inter mūrōs; inter īnsulās. 7. Cūr mē vocās? Cūr mē vocābās? Cūr mē manēre jubēs? 8. Quōs timēbās? Quōs vidēbās? 9. Ā quibus illud oppidum occupātur? 10. Ā quō auxilium postulātur? 11. Cui epistulam dās?

267. 1. Who has my book? 2. By whom (*singular*) is the money demanded? 3. By whom (*plural*) are the towns being seized? 4. Whose son is Marcus? 5. To whom (*singular*) do you give the books? 6. Whose (*plural*) letters are these? 7. Who fears this man?

(a) Conjugate **respondeō** and **dēsīderō** in the imperfect tense, active voice.

(b) Decline **Gallia** in the singular and **Gallus** in the singular and plural.



LESSON XXXV

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF THE FIRST
AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

268. The verbs **portō** and **moneō** have the following forms in the imperfect indicative passive:

I

Singular

portā'bar, *I was being carried or I was carried*
portābā'ris, *you were being carried, etc.*
portābā'tur, *he was being carried, etc.*

Plural

portābā'mur, *we were being carried, etc.*
portābā'minī, *you were being carried, etc.*
portāban'tur, *they were being carried, etc.*

II

Singular

monē'bar
monēbā'ris
monēbā'tur

Plural

monēbā'mur
monēbā'minī
monēban'tur

READING EXERCISE

269. 1. Sociī nostrī superābantur quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbant. Agrī vāstābantur et oppida ācrit̄er oppugnābantur. Auxiliū rogābātur, sed cōpiās tum nōn habēbāmus. Nunc sociōs juvāre parātī sumus.

2. Agrī nostrī vāstābantur quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbāmus. Auxiliū postulābāmus, sed multī pericūlum nōn vidēbant. Nunc sociōs habēmus, et tūtī sumus.

3. Cōnsilia tua ōlim probābantur quod bellum nōn timēbāmus. Sed nunc cōnsilia tua nōn bona videntur, quod patria nostra in periculō est.

4. Quamquam populus Rōmānus magnās cōpiās habēbat, sociōs quoque habēbat. Hī sociī in bellō saepe auxiliū rogābant. Rōmānī sociōs in bellō juvābant.



ROUND TEMPLE IN ROME

270.

VOCABULARY

âcriter, *adv.*, vigorously,
fiercely

ôlim, *adv.*, formerly, once
upon a time

oppugnô, *-âre*, attack

populus, *-î*, *m.*, people

quamquam, *conj.*, although

rogô, *-âre*, ask

superô, *-âre*, defeat, overcome

videor, *-êrî*, seem

a. The verb **videor** is merely the passive of **videô**, but it is usually translated *seem*.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

271. 1. Our town was being fiercely attacked by the Gauls.
2. The Romans were being helped by allies and friends.

3. Formerly our allies were not feared by the Gauls, but now they are feared. 4. This boy often asked help. 5. Formerly your native country was not praised by the allies, but now it is often praised.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

272. 1. Give an adjective and a noun which are derived from *populus*. 2. What is an *insuperable* difficulty? 3. What is an *interrogative* sentence?

OPTIONAL DRILL

273. 1. Oppidum ācriter oppugnābātur; oppidum ācriter oppugnātur. 2. Juvābāmur; juvābāmus; juvāmus; rogābat; rogat; probābat; probat. 3. Ōlim Rōmānī Gallōs superābant; ōlim Gallī Rōmānōs superābant. 4. Hic poēta clārus vidētur. 5. Ille puer miser vidētur. 6. Oppidum tūtum vidēbātur. 7. Quamquam tūtus es, periculum timēs. 8. Quamquam sociōs habēmus, bellum nōn dēsiderāmus. 9. Quis cōsiliū tuum probat? 10. Ā quō cōsiliū tuum probātur? 11. Ā quō cōsiliū tuum probābātur? 12. Probābāmur; probāmur; probābāmus; probāmus.

274. 1. They were being defeated; they are being defeated; they are being warned. 2. The camp is being attacked (*section 108 a*). 3. Who was asking aid? 4. By whom (*singular*) was aid being asked? 5. The Roman people did not fear the Gauls. 6. The allies of the Roman people are in danger and are demanding help.

(a) Copy the imperfect passive forms of the verb *moneō* as given in section **268** and write the English meaning after each form.

(b) Write the declension of the interrogative pronoun.

(c) Change the verbs of section **269** to the present tense.

LESSON XXXVI

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE IS

275.

THE FORMS OF IS

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Singular</i> <i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	is, <i>he</i>	ea, <i>she</i>	id, <i>it</i>
GEN.	ejus, <i>his</i>	ejus, <i>her</i> (posses- sive)	ejus, <i>its</i>
DAT.	eī, <i>to him</i>	eī, <i>to her</i>	eī, <i>to it</i>
ACC.	eum, <i>him</i> (dir. obj.)	eam, <i>her</i> (dir. obj.)	id, <i>it</i> (dir. obj.)
ABL.	eō (from, by, with) <i>him</i>	eā (from, by, with) <i>her</i>	eō (from, by, with) <i>it</i>
		<i>Plural</i>	
NOM.	eī } <i>they</i> iī }	eae, <i>they</i>	ea, <i>they, those</i> <i>things</i>
GEN.	eōrum, <i>their</i>	eārum, <i>their</i>	eōrum, <i>their</i>
DAT.	eīs } <i>to them</i> iīs }	eīs } <i>to them</i> iīs }	eīs } <i>to them</i> iīs }
ACC.	eōs, <i>them</i> (dir. obj.)	eās, <i>them</i> (dir. obj.)	ea, <i>them</i> (dir. obj.)
ABL.	eīs } (from, by, iīs } with) <i>them</i>	eīs } (from, by, iīs } with) <i>them</i>	eīs } (from, by, iīs } with) <i>them</i>

a. The masculine and feminine forms will be translated like those of the neuter gender if they refer to antecedents which would be neuter in English. Thus a masculine form (**is**, **eum**, **eō**, etc.) will be used to refer to **ager** because it is masculine, and a feminine form will be used to refer to **silva**. But since *field* and *forest* are neuter in English, the pronouns which refer to them will be translated *it*

b. The forms **iī**, **iīs**, are pronounced in one syllable as if spelled **ī** and **is**.

ADJECTIVE USE OF IS

276. The forms of **is** are commonly used as pronouns meaning *he, she, it, his, him, her*, etc., as has been seen, but sometimes they are used as adjectives. When they modify nouns they will be translated either *this* or *that* as the sense requires. Thus **is puer** may mean either *this boy* or *that boy*, and **ea puella** may mean either *this girl* or *that girl*. But **is** does not emphasize the idea that the thing denoted by the noun it modifies is near, as does **hic**, or that it is some distance away, as does **ille**.

HIC AND ILLE AS PRONOUNS

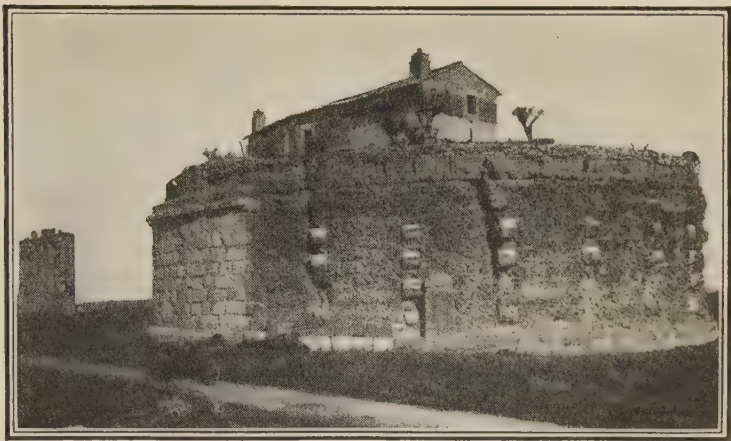
277. The forms of **hic** and **ille** are sometimes used as pronouns meaning *he, she, it, him, his, her*, etc., instead of the forms of **is**. The plural forms **hī**, **illī**, etc., mean *these* or *those* (*persons*); the neuter **haec**, **illa**, etc., mean *these things* or *those things*.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

278. 1. Eum vocāmus; eōs vocāmus; ab eō vocāmur; ab eīs vocāmur. 2. Eum moneō; eam moneō; cum eō; cum eīs. 3. Amicus ejus; ab amicis eōrum; cum amicis eōrum. 4. Eī pecūniam dō; eīs epistulās dō; epistulae eīs dantur. 5. Ea terra est terra amoena. 6. Cum eō amicō tūtus sum. 7. In eō locō cum filiō tuō stābam. 8. Fāma ejus poētae in Hispāniā est magna. 9. In eō oppidō cum amicō habitābam. 10. Patria tua ab eīs nōn probātur. 11. Ex eō locō multī properābant.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

279. 1. I often walk with him. 2. The man gives a reward to them. 3. With his friend; with their friend. 4. I was calling him. 5. I was helping them. 6. We are often helped by these allies. 7. Money is demanded by these boys.



ANCIENT TOMB

A small modern farmhouse has been built on top of the tomb.

OPTIONAL DRILL

280. 1. Mārcum laudāmus, sed amīcus ejus est piger. 2. In hōc oppidō agricolās et filiōs eōrum interdum vidēmus. 3. Puerōs expectāmus, sed eōs nōn vidēmus. 4. Hī virī praemia rogant, sed praemia eīs nōn dantur. 5. Eum laudō et ab eō laudor. 6. Eōs amāmus et ab eīs amāmur. 7. Amīcī meī nunc in hōc oppidō sunt, et saepe cum eīs in viīs ambulō. 8. Sextus est filius ejus nautae.

281. 1. We often see your son and his friend. 2. These women and their daughters do not remain on the island in winter. 3. The boys work well in school and the teacher praises them. 4. But Titus is not praised by him. 5. This man does not help friends and he is not helped by them.

(a) Decline together **id oppidum**.

(b) Give the accusative singular of **hic, ille**, and **is** in the masculine.

(c) Give the accusative plural of **hic, ille**, and **is** in the feminine.

SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XXXII-XXXVI

auxilium, -ī <i>help</i>	iubeō, -ēre <i>Common</i>	ācritēr <i>earnestly</i>
mūrus, -ī <i>wall</i>	occupō, -āre <i>seize</i>	fortiter <i>bravely</i>
populus, -ī <i>people</i>	oppugnō, -āre <i>attack</i>	longē <i>far</i>
altus, -a, -um <i>high</i>	postulō, -āre <i>demand</i>	ōlim <i>formerly</i>
is, ea, id <i>is</i>	respondeō, -ēre <i>answer</i>	inter <i>between</i>
mē <i>me</i>	rogō, -āre <i>ask</i>	prō <i>on behalf of</i>
clāmō, -āre <i>shout</i>	superō, -āre <i>defeat</i>	quamquam <i>although</i>
dēsiderō, -āre <i>desire</i>	vāstō, -āre <i>destroy</i>	
	videor, -ērī <i>seem</i>	
	vocō, -āre <i>call</i>	

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

(See section 256)

DECLENSION OF IS

(See section 275)

THE IMPERFECT TENSE

The tense sign of the imperfect is **-bā**.

THE IMPERFECT ACTIVE OF PORTŌ AND MONEŌ

(See section 248)

THE IMPERFECT PASSIVE OF PORTŌ AND MONEŌ

(See section 268)

ADJECTIVE USE OF IS

(See section 276)

HIC AND ILLE AS PRONOUNS

(See section 277)



A ROMAN SCHOOL

ROMAN SCHOOLS

Rome had no system of public schools supported by taxes as we have in our own country and as most other countries have today. But this did not mean that Roman boys and girls had no opportunity to gain an education. There were many private schools to which children could be sent for a small tuition fee, and in some families children were taught at home instead of being sent to school. Probably all but the children of the very poorest learned to read and write.

The elementary schools were held in small shops instead of in separate school buildings. There was only one teacher, who was often a slave. The pupils were apt to be treated rather harshly, and we have references to severe forms of punishment. A picture drawn on the wall of an ancient house shows a boy being whipped by his teacher. The furnishing of these school-rooms was scanty as compared with a modern school.

In these elementary schools the chief subjects taught were reading, writing, and methods of dealing with numbers, corresponding to some parts of our study of arithmetic. Much care was given to correct pronunciation. In the more advanced

schools pupils studied literature, both Greek and Latin. For the Roman boy Greek was the most important foreign language, in fact the only one taught in school. Since Greek literature was greatly admired by the Romans, the writings of the Greek poets were extensively taught. Roman poetry was also studied. On the wall of an ancient house there were found some lines from a Roman poet which appear to have been written by a boy or girl, perhaps as part of a lesson.

The education of girls usually stopped with the elementary school. But boys, if they belonged to families which could afford it, went on to schools which might be compared to our high schools. In these schools much attention was given to preparing and delivering orations, for the reason that public speaking was important to anyone who wished to take part in political life. Other studies accompanied this, but oratory was considered the most important.

Finally, to complete his education, the Roman boy often spent some time in Greece or Asia Minor, where he listened to lectures on philosophy by prominent teachers of this subject. This foreign study took the place of a modern university course after college.

LESSON XXXVII

READING EXERCISE

282. 1. Fulvia ex jānuā nōs vocat. In tēctum properāmus, et avunculum nostrum cum filiīs ejus ibi vidēmus. Avunculus noster et filiī ejus nōs salūtant. Eōs salūtāmus.

2. Avunculus meus in parvō oppidō habitat. Tēctum ejus est magnum et pulchrum. Mārcus nōn longē ā tēctō avunculī mei habitat. Interdum ad tēctum avunculī mei invitor, et Mārcum tum videō. Cum eō saepe in viīs ambulō. Ōlim in eō oppidō habitābam, et Mārcum saepe vidēbam.

3. Cūr ita timidus es? Timeō quod nūlla arma habeō, et inimicus meus armātus est. Nūllum auxilium videō, quamquam undique circumspectō. Manēre nōn audeō.



SHOPPING IN ROMAN DAYS

283.

VOCABULARY

armātus, -a, -um, armed

audeō, -ēre, dare

avunculus, -ī, m., uncle

circumspectō, -āre, look around

inimicus, -ī, m., enemy

nōs, we, us

salūtō, -āre, greet

undique, *adv.*, on all sides

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

284. 1. Titus is a good man, and we love him. 2. Sextus works well, but his son is not industrious. 3. I do not give him a reward, because he does not work well. 4. These men have no money, but they have many friends. 5. We were looking around on all sides, because our enemies had weapons.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

285. 1. What was the Spanish *Armada*? From what Latin word is *armada* derived? 2. What is an *audacious* plan? 3. What is a *circumspect* person? 4. What is the meaning of *inimical*? 5. What is the source and the meaning of the abbreviation *i. e.*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

286. 1. Cūr eum nōn salūtās? 2. Cum eō in hōc locō manēre nōn audeō. 3. Fulvia avunculum meum videt et ad eum properat. 4. Cornēliam et filiam ejus in casā videō. 5. Illī virī sunt armātī, et eōs timēmus. 6. Hōs virōs amāmus quod saepe ab eīs juvāmur. 7. Illī virī domī manent, sed filiī eōrum in Eurōpā sunt. 8. Id aedificium ubi Sextus labōrat in hōc oppidō est. 9. Parvās filiās et cōnsōbrīnam eārum in villā saepe vidēmus.

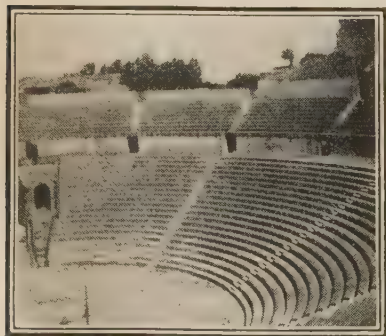
287. 1. This man is my enemy, but I do not fear him. 2. We are greeted by him. 3. Your uncle praises the boys and he is loved by them. 4. We do not dare to remain with them.

5. Why is the teacher feared by them?

(a) Conjugate *salūtō* in the imperfect tense, passive voice.

(b) Conjugate *audeō* in the imperfect tense, active voice.

(c) Point out all the forms of *is* in section 282 and give their case and gender.



A ROMAN THEATER IN FRANCE

LESSON XXXVIII

FUTURE TENSE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND
CONJUGATIONS

288. The future tense of **portō** and **moneō** is as follows:

ACTIVE

Singular

portā'bō, *I shall carry*
portā'bis, *you will carry*
portā'bit, *he, she, it, will carry*

Singular

monē'bō, *I shall warn*
monē'bis, *you will warn*
monē'bit, *he, she, it, will warn*

Plural

portā'bimus, *we shall carry*
portā'bitis, *you will carry*
portā'bunt, *they will carry*

Plural

monē'bimus, *we shall warn*
monē'bitis, *you will warn*
monē'bunt, *they will warn*

PASSIVE

Singular

portā'bor, *I shall be carried*
portā'beris, *you will be carried*
portā'bitur, *he, she, it, will be
carried*

Singular

monē'bor, *I shall be warned*
monē'beris, *you will be warned*
monē'bitur, *he, she, it, will be
warned*

Plural

portā'bimur, *we shall be carried*
portābi'minī, *you will be carried*
portābun'tur, *they will be
carried*

Plural

monē'bimur, *we shall be warned*
monēbi'minī, *you will be warned*
monēbun'tur, *they will be
warned*

a. The syllable **-bi-** is the tense sign of the future in the first and second conjugations. It has the form **-bu-** in the third person plural, **-b-** in the first person singular of both voices, and **-be-** in the second person singular of the passive.

THE PRESENT SYSTEM

289. The present, imperfect, and future tenses make up the present system of the indicative. These tenses are formed on the present stem of the verb, which is found by dropping **-re** of the present active infinitive. In the first and second conjugations the tenses of the present system are formed as follows:

Present = present stem + person endings.

Imperfect = present stem + **bā** + person endings.

Future = present stem + **bi** + person endings.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

290. 1. Titus auxilium rogābit quod in periculō est. 2. Titum juvābimus quod amīcus noster est. 3. Sextus ex viā nōs vocat, sed nōn respondēbimus. 4. Ex illō locō casam nostram vidēbitis. 5. Cōpia Gallōrum ā Rōmānīs nōn timēbuntur. 6. Cornēlia hōs librōs portābit. 7. Fīlium hujus virī iterum monēbō. 8. Illa fēmīna in Britanniā cum fīliā tuā manēbit. 9. Quamquam cōsiliū tuum probō, cōsilia amīcōrum tuōrum nōn probābō. 10. Sextum hodiē in oppidō cum Mārcō manēre jubēbō. 11. Juvat; juvābit; jubet; jubēbit. 12. Habet; habēbit; habitābit.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

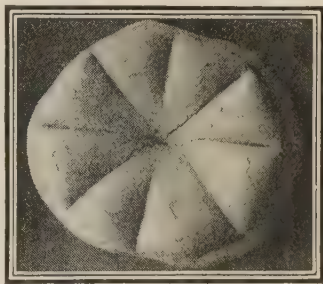
291. 1. I shall invite Marcus and Fulvia to my cottage. 2. The man has weapons and he will not fear danger. 3. Your friend will have money because he works well. 4. These girls will not remain in Spain. 5. I shall not live in this town.

OPTIONAL DRILL

292. 1. Huic puerō nōn iterum pecūniam dabō. 2. Agrī Galliae in bellō vāstābuntur. 3. Oppidum oppugnāre nōn

audēbitis. 4. Amita mea mē salūtābit et ad villam invītābit. 5. In villā filiōs et filiās amitae meae vidēbō. 6. Puerī ā Mārcō vocābuntur, sed nōn respondēbunt. 7. Habēbis; habitābis; juvābis; jubēbis.

293. 1. You will have money but you will not have friends. 2. I shall see famous towns in Ireland and Great Britain. 3. The inhabitants of the island will be warned by the sailors. 4. The boys will watch the horses in the field.



LOAF OF BREAD FROM POMPEII

LESSON XXXIX

READING EXERCISE

294. 1. Germānī ā Rōmānīs superābuntur, et multa oppida eōrum occupābuntur. Sed Rōmānī haec oppida nōn dēlēbunt. Oppida Germānōrum ā perīculō servābuntur.

2. Rōmānī Germānōs superābunt et multa oppida eōrum occupābunt. Sed haec oppida ā Rōmānīs nōn dēlēbuntur. Rōmānī nōn sunt barbarī.

3. Illud oppidum oppugnābimus. Multī vulnerābuntur, et multī necābuntur, sed oppidum ā cōpiīs nostrīs occupābitur.

4. Gallī castra ex hōc locō mox movēbunt. Nam Rōmānī magnās cōpiās habent, et castra Gallōrum oppugnāre parātī sunt.

5. Castra nostra movēbimus, quod cōpiae Rōmānōrum nōs oppugnāre paratae sunt. Tum eōs nōn timēbimus, quamquam magnās cōpiās nōn habēmus.

295.

VOCABULARY

barbarus, -ī, m., a barbarian; pl., the barbarians	moveō, -ēre, move mox, adv., soon
dēleō, -ēre, destroy, blot out	necō, -āre, kill
Germānus, -ī, m., a German; pl., the Germans	servō, -āre, save, preserve vulnerō, -āre, wound

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

296. 1. We shall help our allies, and their country (*patria*) will be saved. 2. The forces of the Romans will not fear the Gauls. 3. This town will be attacked and (will be) destroyed. 4. We were moving our camp from that place. 5. The Gauls will not attack our forces in this place.

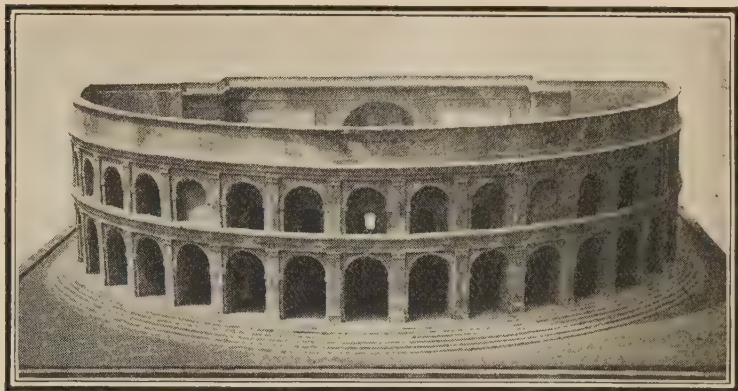
ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

297. 1. Mention an adjective which is suggested by *barbarus*. 2. What is an *indelible* stain? 3. What is a *vulnerable* spot? 4. What is an *immovable* obstacle?

OPTIONAL DRILL

298. 1. *Vulnerābit*; *vulnerābat*; *vulnerābitur*; *vulnerābātur*; *vulnerātur*. 2. *Timēbit*; *timēbitur*; *timēbat*; *timet*. 3. *Barbarī necābuntur*; *oppida dēlēbuntur*; *liber movēbitur*; *castra movēbuntur*. 4. *Mox oppida oppugnābuntur*. 5. *Mox castra oppugnābuntur*. 6. *Multi servābuntur*. 7. *Multi vulnerābuntur*. 8. *Multi necābuntur*. 9. *Eōs servābimus*; *nam amīcī nostrī sunt*. 10. *Movēbit*; *servābit*; *dēlēbunt*; *vulnerābunt*; *dēlēbuntur*; *vulnerābuntur*. 11. *Quis eum servābit*? 12. *Haec terra ab eīs vāstābitur*. 13. *Cōpia nostrae post hunc mūrum manēbunt*.

299. 1. He will praise; he will fear; he will be praised; he will be feared. 2. The shield will be moved; the weapons will be moved. 3. The boy will be invited; the boys will be invited.



MODEL OF THE THEATER OF HERCULANEUM

4. The wall will be destroyed; the books will be destroyed; they will destroy the books. 5. The town of the allies will be saved. 6. We shall be praised by him; we shall be approved by him. 7. We shall be warned by them.

(a) Decline together **is gladius**.

(b) Conjugate **moveō** in the imperfect tense, passive voice, and in the future tense, active voice.

LESSON XL

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF SUM

300. The irregular verb **sum** does not have the tense signs which have been seen in the imperfect and future of regular verbs.

IMPERFECT

Singular

e'ram, *I was*

e'rās, *you were*

e'rat, *he, she, it, was*

Plural

erā'mus, *we were*

erā'tis, *you were*

e'rant, *they were*

FUTURE

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
e'rō, <i>I shall be</i>	e'rimus, <i>we shall be</i>
e'ris, <i>you will be</i>	e'ritis, <i>you will be</i>
e'rit, <i>he will be</i>	e'runt, <i>they will be</i>

READING EXERCISE

301. 1. Ōlim in hāc terrā erant silvae multīs in locīs. Per hās silvās et per tōtam terram ferae bēstiae errābant. Barbarī quoque per silvās errābant et bēstiās saepe necābant. Nunc tēcta agricolārum et oppida vidēmus in eis locīs ubi ōlim erant barbarī et ferae bēstiae.

2. Semper amīcus tuus erō. Amīcī tuī erunt amīcī meī, et eōs in periculō juvābō. Sed patriae tuae amīcus nōn sum.

3. Cūr in silvā cum cēterīs puerīs herī nōn erās?

In silvā nōn eram, quod aeger eram.

4. Ubi herī erat hic servus? Eum nōn vidēbam.

Hic servus in tēctō avunculī meī herī erat.

302.

VOCABULARY

bēstia, -ae, <i>F.</i> , beast, animal	herī, <i>adv.</i> , yesterday
cēterī, -ae, -a, <i>pl.</i> , the other, the others	semper, <i>adv.</i> , always
errō, -āre, wander, err	servus, -ī, <i>M.</i> , slave, servant
ferus, -a, -um, fierce, wild	tōtus, -a, -um, the whole, all

a. The adjective **cēterī** is used chiefly in the plural. Its forms in the singular may be disregarded.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

303. 1. Yesterday I was in town with my uncle. 2. This house will always be dear to me. 3. We were in the tents behind the forest. 4. We are Romans; we will not be slaves. 5. Formerly there were many fierce animals on this island.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

304. 1. What abbreviation is used for *et cetera*? 2. Find the meaning of the expression *Errare est humanum*. 3. What is the meaning of the motto *Semper paratus*? 4. What is a *total* failure?



KILLING WILD ANIMALS

The picture represents a scene in the arena.

OPTIONAL DRILL

305. 1. *Semper impiger erō; semper impiger eram; semper impiger sum.* 2. *Parātus esse dēbeō; parātī esse dēbēmus; parātī esse dēbent.* 3. *Errābam; errābō; errābat; errābit.* 4. *Herī servus labōrābat; hodiē servus labōrat; bene servus labōrābit.* 5. *Tōtum oppidum est tūtum; tōtus locus est tūtus; tōta terra est tūta.* 6. *Cēterī errant; cēterī errābunt; cēterī errābant.* 7. *Bēstiae ferae in silvā erant; bēstiae ferae in silvā errant.* 8. *Hodiē amīcus tuus sum; herī amīcus tuus eram; semper amīcus tuus erō.* 9. *Amīcī tuī erunt tūtī.* 10. *Amīcī tuī monēbuntur.*

306. 1. He is; he was; he will be; I am; I was; I shall be. 2. He is unhappy; he is (being) warned; she will be happy; she will be praised. 3. We saw (were seeing) wild beasts in the forest. 4. The slaves were wandering on the island. 5. The whole town is in danger. 6. Yesterday I was in the farmer's cottage. 7. The others will be armed.

(a) Conjugate **habeō** and **habitō** in the future tense, active voice.

(b) Decline together **hic servus**.

WORD STUDY IV

LATIN PREFIXES AND ENGLISH SPELLING

It is often easier to remember how an English word of Latin derivation is spelled if we know something of how the Latin word was formed. Thus we have many words with doubled consonants, such as *affection*, *afflict*, *announce*. These words have *aff-* and *ann-* (not *af-* and *an-*) because one of the doubled consonants represents part of a prefix and the other represents the first letter of the word to which the prefix was attached.

ASSIMILATION

The last letter of a prefix is often changed because of the letter which immediately follows it. Thus **ad** becomes **ap-** before a word beginning with **p**. From **ad**+**propinquō** we get **appropinquō**. The change of a letter because of the influence of another is called *assimilation*.

The verbs **occupō** and **oppugnō** are examples of assimilation. The prefix with which they are formed is **ob**, *against*. Before **c** this has become **oc** (**ob**+**capiō**=**occupō**), before **p** it has become **op-** (**ob**+**pugnō**=**oppugnō**).

ENGLISH WORDS DERIVED FROM COMPOUNDS OF AD

The following have *aff-* because they are derived from Latin words in which **ad** was prefixed to a word beginning with **f**, with **d** changed to **f** by assimilation.

affable	affidavit	affix
affect	affiliate	afflict
affection	affirm	affront

The following have *ann-* because they are derived from Latin words in which **ad** was prefixed to a word beginning with **n**, with **d** changed to **n** by assimilation.

annex

announce

annihilate

annul

annotate

We shall see later some examples of assimilation with other prefixes.

PARTIAL ASSIMILATION

Sometimes the final letter of a prefix is not changed to the same letter as that which follows, but to one that can be easily pronounced with it. The prefix **com-**, *together*, or *with*, becomes **con-** before certain letters. Thus **com+clāmō** gives **conclāmō** and **com+servō** gives **cōnservō**. Before words beginning with *d* or *t* this same change of **com-** to **con-** takes place: **com+dūcō** gives **condūcō**.

EXERCISE

Find how many words in your English dictionary begin with *acc-*. (Nearly all these are derived from the combination of **ad** and a word beginning with *c*).

LESSON XLI

POSSESSIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON

THE USE OF *SUUS*

307. In the sentences *The boy praises his friends* and *The boys praise their friends* the words *his* and *their* refer to the subjects of the sentences in which they stand. That is, the "possessors" are the same persons as the subjects. The Latin word used to translate *his*, *her*, *its*, or *their* when

thus used is **suus**, which is an adjective, declined like **meus** and **tuus**. The two sentences just given are, in Latin:

- (1) **Puer amīcōs suōs laudat.**
- (2) **Puerī amīcōs suōs laudant.**

It is possible to decide whether *his* or *their* will be used to translate **suōs** in these sentences by observing whether the subject is singular or plural.

If the subject is feminine **suus** will be translated *her*. Thus, **Puella amīcōs suōs laudat** means *The girl praises her friends*.

DISTINCTION BETWEEN **SUUS** AND **EJUS**

308. In the sentences *They praise his friends* and *He praises their friends* the words *his* and *their* do not refer to the subjects of the sentences in which they stand. That is, the "possessors" are not the same persons as the subjects. When *his*, *her*, *its*, are thus used they are translated by **ejus**, the genitive singular of **is**, and *their* similarly used is translated by **eōrum** (or **eārum**), the genitive plural of **is**.

- (1) **Amīcōs ejus laudant**, *They praise his friends*.
- (2) **Amīcōs eōrum laudat**, *He praises their friends*.

309. It must be remembered that **suus** is an adjective, and takes the same gender, number, and case as the word denoting the thing possessed. Thus in the sentences in **307** **suōs** is masculine accusative plural to agree with **amīcōs**. The words **ejus** and **eōrum** (**eārum**) are pronouns in the genitive case, and their forms are not affected by the nouns which they modify.

a. Sometimes possessive words are omitted in Latin when the meaning is quite clear, even though the corresponding English sentence requires that possessives be used. They are to be supplied in translation whenever the sense requires.

Fēmina fīliam amat, *The woman loves her daughter*.



BARBARIAN PRISONERS

READING EXERCISE

310. 1. Hic vir filium suum semper laudat. Sed filius ejus nōn est impiger, neque habet multōs amīcōs.

2. Hī virī filiōs suōs laudant. Sed filiī eōrum nōn sunt impigrī, neque bene labōrant. Quamquam laudantur, puerī bonī nōn sunt.

3. Cornēlia filiam suam amat, sed filiam amīcī meī nōn amat. Fīlia ejus ad tēctum amīcī meī nōn saepe invitātur.

4. Illī barbarī sunt perfidī, et castra nostra oppugnāre parant. Igitur arma nostra parāta sunt.

5. Barbarī castra vestra nōn oppugnābunt, quod arma parāta habētis.

6. Lignum ex silvā ad tabernāculum portō. Amīcī meī ante tabernāculum cēnam parant. Tabernāculum in locō apertō est. Ex hōc locō tabernāculum vidēs.

7. Avunculus tuus imperat; cūr nōn pārēs?

Statim pārēbō.

311.

VOCABULARY

igitur, <i>conj.</i> , therefore	statim, <i>adv.</i> , at once
imperō, -āre, command	suus, -a, -um, his, her, its,
lignum, -ī, <i>N.</i> , wood	their
pāreō, -ēre, obey	vester, -tra, -trum, your (<i>of</i>
perfidus, -a, -um, treacherous	<i>more than one person</i>)

a. The verbs **imperō** and **pāreō** take a dependent dative instead of a direct object. This construction is not used in the exercises of this book, except in the Supplementary Lessons.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

312. Write the Latin equivalent for the italicized words in the following sentences: 1. The farmer is working in *his* (own) field. 2. *His* son is also working in the field. 3. The barbarians were destroying *their* (own) towns. 4. We see *their* camp from this place. 5. The woman stands before the door of *her* cottage.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

313. 1. What is an *imperious* manner? 2. What is an *imperative* necessity? 3. What is a *perfidious* enemy? 4. What is *lignite*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

314. 1. Suum librum habet; ejus librum habeō; tuum librum habet. 2. Vestrōs librōs habent; suōs librōs habent; librōs eōrum habēmus. 3. Imperābō; statim pārēbis; statim pārēre dēbēs; imperāre dēbeō. 4. Lignum portābit; lignum portābitur. 5. Barbarī perfidī erunt; barbarī perfidī erant. 6. Igitur tūtus es; igitur tūtus eris. 7. Inimicum timeō quod perfidus est. 8. Quamquam barbarī perfidī sunt, eōs nōn timēmus. 9. Hī barbarī nōn pārent. 10. Arma parant. 11. Tabernācula vestra in locō nōn tūtō stant.

315. 1. The man praises his son. 2. I do not praise his son. 3. They will destroy their (own) towns. 4. Their towns

will be attacked. 5. The woman warns her daughter. 6. We often warn her daughter. 7. The man praises his (own) plan. 8. We do not praise his plan. 9. The boy will invite his friends but he will not invite my friends.

(a) Conjugate **sum** in the present and future tenses.

(b) What are the different words by which *their* may be translated into Latin?

EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XXXVII-XLI

avunculus, -ī <i>uncle</i>	tōtus, -a, -um <i>all</i>	pāreō, -ēre <i>obey</i>
barbarus, -ī <i>barbar</i>	vester, -tra, -trum <i>your</i>	salūtō, -āre <i>greet</i>
bēstia, -ae <i>animal</i>	nōs <i>us</i>	servō, -āre <i>save</i>
inimīcus, -ī <i>enemy</i>		vulnerō, -āre <i>wound</i>
lignum, -ī <i>wood</i>	audeō, -ēre <i>dare</i>	herī <i>yesterday</i>
servus, -ī <i>slave</i>	circumspectō, -āre <i>warn</i>	igitur <i>therefore</i>
armātus, -a, -um <i>armed</i>	dēlēō, -ēre <i>destroy</i>	mox <i>soon</i>
cēterī, -ae, -a <i>the other</i>	errō, -āre <i>wander</i>	semper <i>always</i>
ferus, -a, -um <i>wild</i>	imperō, -āre <i>command</i>	statim <i>at once</i>
perfidus, -a, -um <i>treacherous</i>	moveō, -ēre <i>move</i>	undique <i>from every side</i>
suus, -a, -um <i>his</i>	necō, -āre <i>kill</i>	

POSSESSIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON

(See section 307)

FUTURE TENSE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

The tense sign of the future in the first two conjugations is **-bi**.

FUTURE TENSE OF PORTŌ AND MONEŌ

(See section 288)

IMPERFECT AND FUTURE OF SUM

(See section 300)

LESSON XLII

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS

THE NOMINATIVE AND GENITIVE OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

316. Nouns of the third declension have the genitive singular ending in **-is**. In this declension the nominative singular is formed in a number of ways. But if the genitive singular is learned at the same time as the nominative, these variations in the nominative will cause no difficulty. This declension includes masculine, feminine, and neuter nouns.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN **-UM**

317. There are two general classes of nouns in the third declension. They differ mainly in the ending of the genitive plural. Those which belong to the first class have the genitive plural ending in **-um**. Masculine and feminine nouns of this class are declined as follows:

rēx, M., *king* **mīles**, M., *soldier* **frāter**, M., *brother* **homō**, M., *man*

Singular

NOM.	rēx	mī'les	frā'ter	ho'mō
GEN.	rē'gis	mī'litis	frā'tris	ho'minis
DAT.	rē'gī	mī'litī	frā'trī	ho'minī
ACC.	rē'gem	mī'litem	frā'trem	ho'minem
ABL.	rē'ge	mī'lite	frā'tre	ho'mine

Plural

NOM.	rē'gēs	mī'litēs	frā'trēs	ho'minēs
GEN.	rē'gum	mī'litum	frā'trum	ho'minum
DAT.	rē'gibus	mīli'tibus	frā'tribus	homi'nibus
ACC.	rē'gēs	mī'litēs	frā'trēs	ho'minēs
ABL.	rē'gibus	mīli'tibus	frā'tribus	homi'nibus

ENDINGS

318. The case endings, as seen on page 174, are as follows:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
NOM.	— ¹	-ēs
GEN.	-is	-um
DAT.	-ī	-ibus
ACC.	-em	-ēs
ABL.	-e	-ibus



ROMAN ARCH IN FRANCE

READING EXERCISE

319. 1. Gallī ducem bonum habēbant. 2. Tum milītēs in castrīs manēbant. 3. Frāter meus hodiē abest. 4. Pater tuus est vir bonus et multōs amīcōs habet. 5. Frāter rēgis ā multīs laudātur. 6. Hic mīles est validus neque periculum timet. 7. Ille mīles parvum frātre[m] habet. 8. Dux noster eōs hominēs nōn timet. 9. Librum frātris tuī habeō. 10. Is homō est amīcus patris tuī. 11. Rēx militibus pecūniam dabit. 12. Epistula tua ā frātre tuō laudātur.

¹ The ending of the nominative singular in *rēx* and *mīles* is really -s, which gives -x when combined with g or c. But this ending does not appear in all third declension nouns.



GALLIC SOLDIERS

320.

VOCABULARY

dux, ducis, M., leader

frāter, frātris, M., brother

homō, hominis, M., man

mīles, mīlitis, M., soldier

pater, patris, M., father

rēx, rēgis, M., king

a. Both **vir** and **homō** are sometimes translated *man*; **vir** may also mean *hero*, while **homō** may refer to any human being. With an adjective of favorable significance, as, for example, **bonus**, we commonly find **vir** rather than **homō**.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

321. 1. I will give your brother a reward. 2. The king's soldiers have good weapons. 3. You are often praised by your father. 4. We see the leader of the allies with large forces. 5. The leader of these soldiers is the king's brother.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

322. 1. Find in a dictionary the derivation of *duke*. 2. What is a *fraternal* organization? 3. Give the meaning and derivation of *militia*. 4. What is *paternal* affection? 5. How is *regalia* connected in meaning with *rēx*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

323. 1. *Rēgis*; *rēgum*; *cum mīlite*; *cum militibus*. 2. *Frātris tuī*; *patris tuī*; *cum patre tuō*. 3. *Dux rēgem laudat*; *rēx ducem laudat*. 4. *Amīcus ejus hominis*; *amīcus eōrum hominum*. 5. *Rēx ā duce laudātur*; *dux ā rēge laudātur*. 6. *Quis mīlitem vocat*? 7. *Ā quō mīles vocātur*? 8. *Ā quibus mīlitēs timentur*? 9. *Filius hujus rēgis nōn erit rēx*.

324. 1. Of the soldier; of the soldiers; with the king. 2. With your brother; with that leader; with those leaders. 3. Gaul does not have a king. 4. The farmhouses were seized by the soldiers.

LESSON XLIII

READING EXERCISE

325. 1. In *Galliā* est *nūllus rēx*. In *Americā* est *nūllus rēx*. *Ōlim* in *multis terris Europae* erant *rēgēs*. *Etiam nunc* in *Hispaniā* est *rēx*.

2. *Frāter meus* et *pater tuus* in *bellō* erant. *Frāter meus* erat *dux*, et *multī eum laudābant*. *Pater tuus nōn erat dux*, sed erat *bonus mīles*, et *fortiter pugnābat*.

3. *Castra Rōmānōrum ā tergō oppugnāre parāmus*. *Pauci mīlitēs in eō locō sunt*, et *eōs facile superābimus*. *Sine morā tōta castra occupābimus*.

4. *Sociī iterum auxilium nostrum postulant*. *Patria eōrum in periculō est*, et *mīlitēs nōn sunt parātī*. *Eōs juvābimus*,

quamquam bellum nōn dēsiderāmus. Pācem amāmus et semper amābimus.

5. Titus tē invitāt, sed sorōrēs et frātrēs tuōs nōn invitāt. Titus est tuus amīcus bonus.

326.

VOCABULARY

etiam, *adv.*, even, also

facile, *adv.*, easily

mora, -ae, *f.*, delay

paucī, -ae, -a, *pl.*, few, a few

pāx, pācis, *f.*, peace

soror, sorōris, *f.*, sister

tē, you (*accusative and ablative singular*)

tergum, -ī, *n.*, back; ā tergō, at the rear, from the rear

EXERCISES FOR WRITING



VERCINGETORIX

327. 1. The king of the barbarians has large forces. 2. Our allies do not have a king. 3. I see your father and your brother in the street. 4. The soldiers praise their leaders. 5. The barbarians prepare to attack the town.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

328. In times of war or other disasters, nations and also business organizations and private citizens often find it impossible to pay debts as they come due. In these circumstances a *moratorium* is sometimes declared, that is, a period of delay in the payment of all debts. What is the derivation of *moratorium*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

329. 1. Dux validus; ducis validī; ducēs validī; ducum validōrum. 2. Frātris nostrī; patris nostrī; frātrum nostrōrum; cum frātre nostrō. 3. Paucī rēgēs; paucī militēs; illī militēs; illius militis. 4. Etiam nunc in illā terrā est rēx. 5. Mora nōn erit longa; mora nōn erat longa. 6. Sine morā oppugnābimus. 7. Ā tergō oppugnāmur; ā tergō oppugnābāmur. 8. Facile ex periculō servābimur; facile ex periculō eōs servābimus. 9. Dux noster nōn est rēx; dux eōrum erat rēx; ducēs eōrum erant rēgēs. 10. Cum illō duce; ab hōc milite; cum meis frātribus; ā patre tuō.

330. 1. Of a good soldier; of good soldiers; of a kind father; of an energetic brother. 2. With our leader; with your leaders; by the king of the Germans; by the leaders of the Gauls. 3. Your brothers will be safe. 4. The soldiers of the king will be defeated. 5. The father of the soldier is present.

(a) Decline together **pa-ter meus**.

(b) Decline together **ille rēx**.

(c) Write the third person singular of **pāreō** and **imperō** in the present, imperfect, and future of the active voice.



RUINS OF AN ANCIENT APARTMENT
HOUSE

LESSON XLIV

THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

NEUTER NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN -UM

331. There are many neuter nouns of the third declension. These, like the masculine and feminine nouns, form the nominative in different ways. Neuter nouns belonging to the same general class of the third declension as the masculine and feminine nouns which have been given in the preceding lessons are declined as follows:

<i>flūmen</i> , N., <i>river</i>	<i>caput</i> , N., <i>head</i>	<i>corpus</i> , N., <i>body</i>
<i>Singular</i>		
NOM. <i>flū'men</i>	<i>ca'put</i>	<i>cor'pus</i>
GEN. <i>flū'minis</i>	<i>ca'pitis</i>	<i>cor'poris</i>
DAT. <i>flū'minī</i>	<i>ca'pitī</i>	<i>cor'porī</i>
ACC. <i>flū'men</i>	<i>ca'put</i>	<i>cor'pus</i>
ABL. <i>flū'mine</i>	<i>ca'pite</i>	<i>cor'pore</i>
<i>Plural</i>		
NOM. <i>flū'mina</i>	<i>ca'pita</i>	<i>cor'pora</i>
GEN. <i>flū'minum</i>	<i>ca'pitum</i>	<i>cor'porum</i>
DAT. <i>flūmi'nibus</i>	<i>capi'tibus</i>	<i>corpo'ribus</i>
ACC. <i>flū'mina</i>	<i>ca'pita</i>	<i>cor'pora</i>
ABL. <i>flūmi'nibus</i>	<i>capi'tibus</i>	<i>corpo'ribus</i>

a. These three words illustrate different formations of the nominative, but there is no difference in the manner in which they are declined.

b. As in the neuter noun **templum** of the second declension, the accusative singular of these nouns is the same as the nominative singular, the accusative plural is the same as the nominative plural, and the nominative and accusative plural end in **-a**.

READING EXERCISE: *PUER QUI (WHO) NATAT*

332. 1. Tectum nostrum nōn longē ā rīpā flūminis abest. Saepe in eō flūmine natō aut in rīpā stō. Frāter meus quoque interdum in flūmine natat. Natāre amāmus. In mediō flūmine est magnum saxum. Ad saxum natāmus, tum in saxō diū sedēmus et cēterōs pucrōs spectāmus. Flūmen nōn altum est, et caput meum vidēs cum in flūmine stō. Corpora valida habēmus quod saepe natāmus et quod in agrīs labōrāmus.

2. Puerī Rōmānī quoque natāre amābant. Rōma est in rīpā magnī flūminis, et in flūmine puerī Rōmānī saepe natābant. Etiam hieme Rōmānī in flūmine natābant. Illī virī corpora valida habēbant, et milītēs bonī erant.



RŌMĀNĪ IN FLŪMINE NATĀBANT

333.

VOCABULARY

caput, capitis, N., head
 corpus, corporis, N., body
 flūmen, flūminis, N., river
 medius, -a, -um, middle, the
 middle of

natō, -āre, swim
 rīpa, -ae, F., bank (of a stream)
 saxum, -ī, N., rock, stone
 sedeō, -ēre, sit

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

334. 1. From this place I see the river. 2. The soldiers have strong bodies. 3. The boys sometimes swim in the rivers. 4. There (*see section 78*) are forests on the banks of the rivers.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

335. 1. What is *capital* punishment? *Corporal* punishment? 2. Find an English word derived from **medius**. 3. What are *riparian* rights? 4. What is a *natatorium*? 5. What is a *sedentary* occupation?

OPTIONAL DRILL

336. 1. Flūminis lātī; flūminum lātōrum; ex illō flūmine; trāns hoc flūmen. 2. Corpus validum; corporis validī; parvum caput; parva capita. 3. In mediō agrō; in mediā silvā; in rīpā ambulāre; ex rīpā spectāre. 4. Sunt magna flūmina in patriā nostrā. 5. Ille equus parvum caput habet. 6. Hī barbarī magna corpora habent, sed nōn erunt mīlitēs bonī. 7. In hōc flūmine aestāte natāmus.

337. 1. These rivers; of these rivers; in these rivers. 2. Large heads; small bodies; of a large head. 3. We swim in the river or we sit on the bank. 4. In the middle of the island (*not genitive*) is a small cottage. 5. We shall remain in Spain for a long time. 6. There is a large stone in the middle of the street.

(a) Decline together **hoc flūmen**.

(b) Conjugate **sedeō** in the future tense, active voice.

(c) Give the accusative singular of **rīpa**, **equus**, **rēx**, **mīles**, **corpus**, **flūmen**.

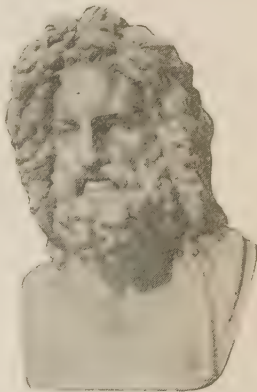


COIN WITH TEMPLE
OF JUPITER CAPI-
TOLINUS

THE GODS OF THE ROMANS

The Romans worshiped a great many gods. In honor of these gods they built splendid temples, the ruins of which are to be seen in Rome and in other parts of the Roman world.

The greatest of the gods was Jupiter, who was sometimes called the father of gods and men. He was represented as ruling the other gods and directing the affairs of heaven and earth. His weapon was the thunderbolt, which he hurled as one might throw a javelin or a dart. The stories of his dealings with mortals do not always represent him as kind or just, though he often punished injustice among men. His most celebrated temple at Rome was on the Capitoline Hill.



JUPITER

Juno was the queen of the gods and the wife of Jupiter. She was believed to give special protection to women. Her statues represent her as tall and stately. A temple in her honor stood on the Aventine Hill.

The god of the sea was Neptune. He is represented as carrying a three-pointed weapon, called a trident. His palace was at the bottom of the sea, but sometimes he came to the surface and rode over the waves in his chariot. He ruled not only the sea but also the rivers, though there were gods of the different rivers, who were under his authority.

Ceres was the goddess of grain. Our word *cereal* is derived from her name. She was said to have taught men how to plow and to cultivate crops. Once when she became angry she forbade the grain to grow in a certain region, and the ground was barren until she gave up her anger.

The goddess who had particular care for the home was Vesta. Both Ceres and Vesta were sisters of Jupiter. At Rome there was a very sacred temple to Vesta, and it was the duty of those in charge to keep a fire always burning in this temple. This duty was assigned to a group of six priestesses, called Vestal Virgins, who had special privileges and who were highly honored in Rome.

The god of war, Mars, was said to have been the father of Romulus, the founder of Rome.



MARS

The Emperor Augustus built a great temple in his honor, part of which is still standing. Mars is represented as taking pleasure in battles and in the cruel scenes of war. From his name we have the word *martial*, meaning "warlike."

Still another important deity was the goddess Minerva. She taught mankind useful arts, such as spinning and weaving. She was regarded as the goddess of wisdom, and she had special care

for heroes who were shrewd and clever-minded. Rather strangely, as it may seem, she was also a warlike goddess, sometimes taking part in battles. Her statues often represent her with a spear and a helmet.

Venus was the goddess of love and of beauty. She was especially honored by the family to which Caesar belonged, because, according to legend, the founder of that family was a son of Venus. Her most famous statues were made by Greek sculptors or were copies of those originally made by the Greeks.

There were numerous other gods and goddesses, but these which have been described are among the most important.

LESSON XLV

THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS WITH THE
GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-IUM*

338. The second of the two general classes of nouns of the third declension differs from the first class in that the genitive plural ends in *-ium* instead of *-um*. There are also a few other differences. Masculine and feminine nouns of this class are declined as follows:

<i>collis</i> , M., <i>hill</i>	<i>nūbēs</i> , F., <i>cloud</i>	<i>nox</i> , F., <i>night</i>
<i>Singular</i>		
NOM. <i>col'lis</i>	<i>nū'bēs</i>	<i>nox</i>
GEN. <i>col'lis</i>	<i>nū'bīs</i>	<i>noc'tīs</i>
DAT. <i>col'lī</i>	<i>nū'bī</i>	<i>noc'tī</i>
ACC. <i>col'lem</i>	<i>nū'bem</i>	<i>noc'tem</i>
ABL. <i>col'le</i>	<i>nū'be</i>	<i>noc'te</i>
<i>Plural</i>		
NOM. <i>col'lēs</i>	<i>nū'bēs</i>	<i>noc'tēs</i>
GEN. <i>col'lium</i>	<i>nū'bium</i>	<i>noc'tium</i>
DAT. <i>col'libus</i>	<i>nū'bibus</i>	<i>noc'tibus</i>
ACC. <i>col'lis, -ēs</i>	<i>nū'bīs, -ēs</i>	<i>noc'tīs, -ēs</i>
ABL. <i>col'libus</i>	<i>nū'bibus</i>	<i>noc'tibus</i>

a. The Romans sometimes used *-īs* and sometimes *-ēs* as the ending of the accusative plural of these nouns. The form in *-ēs* is regularly used in this book.

CLASSES OF MASCULINE AND FEMININE NOUNS WITH
THE GENITIVE IN *-IUM*

339. The following two classes include practically all masculine and feminine nouns which have the genitive plural in *-ium*:

(1) Nouns ending in **-is** or **-ēs**, and having the same number of syllables in the nominative and in the genitive singular: **avis**, *gen. avis*¹; **nūbēs**, *gen. nūbis*.

(2) Nouns with two consonants immediately preceding the ending of the genitive singular and with one more syllable in the genitive than in the nominative singular: **nox**, *gen. noctis*.

Other masculine and feminine nouns of the third declension regularly have the genitive plural in **-um**. In this book the genitive plural ending **-ium** is printed in the vocabulary after nouns which have that ending.

**READING EXERCISE: HOMŌ QUĪ LONGĒ Ā
TĒCTŌ SUŌ EST.**

340. Nox est, et in silvā avēs et bēstiae silent. Lūx obscūra est propter nūbēs, quamquam lūna vidētur. Longē ā tēctō meō sum. Ex summō colle parvum oppidum videō. Appropinquābō et cibum rogābō. Nam dēfessus sum, et nūllam pecūniam habēō. Illī virī nōn barbarī sunt, et cibum mihi dabunt. Pecūniam nōn rogābō.



A WEARY TRAVELER

Cibum eī dabimus, nam dēfessus est. Nōn sumus barbarī. Longē ā tēctō suō est, et nūllam pecūniam habet. Nūllōs amīcōs in hōc locō habet. Sed homō est, et homō hominem juvāre dēbet.

¹Two exceptions are **canis**, *dog*, and **juvenis**, *young man*, both of which have the genitive plural ending in **-um**.

341.

VOCABULARY

appropinquō, -āre, approach
 avis, avis, -ium, F., bird
 cibus, -ī, M., food
 collis, collis, -ium, M., hill
 lūx, lūcis, F., light; *prīma lūx*,
 daybreak

nox, noctis, -ium, F., night
 nūbēs, nūbis, -ium, F., cloud
 sileō, -ēre, be silent
 summus, -a, -um, highest,
 highest part of, top of

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

342. 1. This boy is a friend of the birds. 2. The nights are long in winter. 3. I see the light in the window of the cottage. 4. We are hastening from the street because we see the clouds. 5. This man has no food because he has no money.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

343. 1. What is an *aviator*? 2. What is a *translucent* substance? 3. What are *nocturnal* birds? 4. What is meant by the phrase *summum bonum*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

344. 1. Nox erat, et in silvā avēs et bēstiae silēbant. Lūx obscūra erat propter nūbēs, quamquam paucās stellās vidēbam. Longē ā tēctō meō eram. Dēfessus eram et nūllam pecūniam habēbam. 2. Nūllum cibum habēbāmus. 3. Cūr nūllum cibum habēbātis? 4. Homō appropinquat; hominēs appropinquant. 5. Nox longa erat; hieme noctēs longae sunt; aestāte noctēs nōn sunt longae. 6. In summō colle est parvum oppidum. 7. In summō saxō stō. 8. Hominem juvābimus; hominem juvābāmus. 9. Hominēs in summō colle vidēmus.

345. 1. Of the long night; of many nights; this night. 2. From a high hill; from the top of the hill (*not genitive*); through the cloud; through the clouds. 3. The man sees a light on the hill. 4. We saw many birds in this forest. 5. The men do

not dare to approach. 6. The soldiers have no food. 7. The men were silent on account of the danger.

(a) Conjugate **appropinquō** and **sileō** in the imperfect tense, active voice.

(b) Decline together **avis pulchra**.

(c) Give the genitive singular of all the nouns in the first two lines of section 340.

LESSON XLVI

THIRD DECLENSION (Continued)

NEUTER NOUNS WITH THE GENITIVE PLURAL IN *-IUM*

346. The second class of nouns of the third declension has a number of nouns which are neuter. The nominative of these ends in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**. They are declined as follows:

insigne, N., *badge* **exemplar**, N., *pattern* **animal**, N., *animal*

Singular

NOM.	īnsig'ne	exem'plar	a'nimal
GEN.	īnsig'nīs	exemplā'ris	animā'lis
DAT.	īnsig'nī	exemplā'rī	animā'lī
ACC.	īnsig'ne	exem'plar	a'nimal
ABL.	īnsig'nī	exemplā'rī	animā'lī

Plural

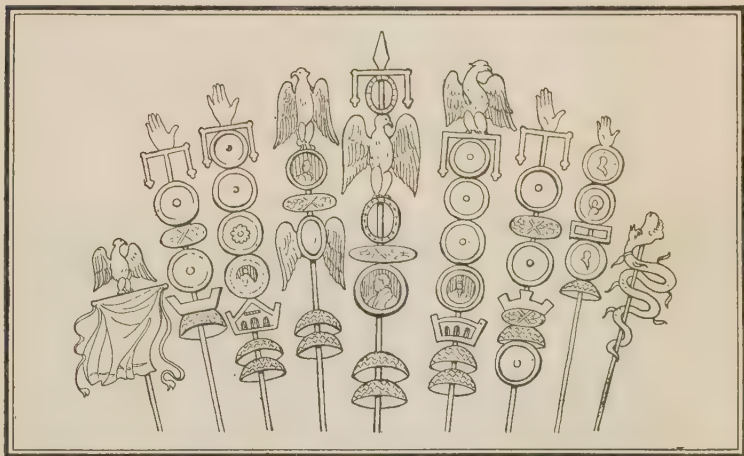
NOM.	īnsig'nia	exemplā'ria	animā'lia
GEN.	īnsig'nium	exemplā'rium	animā'lium
DAT.	īnsig'nibus	exemplā'ribus	animā'libus
ACC.	īnsig'nia	exemplā'ria	animā'lia
ABL.	īnsig'nibus	exemplā'ribus	animā'libus

a. In addition to having the genitive plural ending in **-ium**, these nouns differ from the neuter nouns of the first class in that the ablative singular ends in **-ī** and the nominative and accusative plural in **-ia**.

GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

347. The following rules will help in determining the gender of nouns of the third declension:

- (1) Nouns ending in **-tās** and **-tūs** are feminine.
- (2) Nouns ending in **-tor** are masculine.
- (3) Nouns ending in **-e**, **-al**, **-ar**, **-n**, and **-t** are neuter.



ROMAN STANDARDS

READING EXERCISE: *INSIGNIA MĪLITUM*

348. 1. Ōlim mīlitēs in proeliis insignia habēbant. Sic hostēs et amīcī nōtī erant. Signa quoque habēbant. Interdum haec signa erant figūrae animālium. In pictūrā exemplāria hōrum signōrum vidētis. Nunc mīlitēs in proeliis signa nōn habent, et insignia saepe cēlantur.

2. Hostēs appropinquant. Ex hōc locō insignia eōrum vidēmus. Oppidum nostrum oppugnābunt, sed mīlitēs nostrī parātī sunt, et nōn timēmus. Hostēs superābuntur et oppidum nostrum tūtum erit quod mīlitēs bonōs patria nostra habet.

349.

VOCABULARY

animal, animālis, -ium, N.,	hostis, hostis, -ium, M., enemy
animal	insigne, insignis, -ium, N.,
cēlō, -āre, conceal	decoration, badge
exemplar, -āris, -ium, N., copy,	sic, adv., thus, so
specimen, pattern	signum, -ī, N., sign, stand-
figūra, -ae, F., figure	ard

a. The word **hostis** is applied to an enemy of one's country, while **inimicus** means a personal enemy.

COMPLETION EXERCISE

350. 1. Corpora hōrum animāl— parva sunt. 2. Dux host— (*of the enemies*) gladium habet. 3. Frāter meus insignia pulchr— habet. 4. Militēs nostrī sign— (*standards*) in proeliis nōn portant. 5. Haec pictūra pulchra multis nōt— est.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

351. 1. What is *exemplary* conduct? 2. Find an adjective and a noun derived from **hostis**. 3. What is meant by the *insignia* of office? 4. What other words beside **figūra** can you recall in which final **a** of the Latin is represented by *e* in the English word?

OPTIONAL DRILL

352. 1. Illōrum animālium; illōrum flūminum; hōrum hostium; hōrum militum. 2. Exemplāria nōta sunt; insignia nōta sunt; flūmina nōta sunt. 3. Signum Gallōrum erat figūra animālis. 4. Signum Rōmānōrum in colle vidēmus. 5. Cūr insignia sic cēlātis? 6. Cūr insignia sic cēlābātis? 7. Hujus proeli; hujus bellī; haec proelia; haec bella; in proeliō; in bellō. 8. Hostēs in castris suis silēbant. 9. Haec animālia magna corpora et parva capita habent. 10. Sic semper amīcōs habēbitis.

page 311... animis insignis hostem...
353. 1. Of this animal; of that badge; of our enemies; of our soldiers. 2. The badges of the enemy (*plural*) are concealed. 3. There are many animals on this island. 4. We do not fear the enemies of our native country. 5. There was a great battle in this place. 6. This place is well known on account of that battle. 7. The battles of that war are well known.

(a) Decline together **parvum animal**.

(b) Give the genitive plural of **collis, homō, nox, hostis, figūra, proelium**.

(c) Rewrite paragraph 2, section 348, changing all the verbs to the imperfect.



A ROMAN VICTORY

NINTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XLII-XLVI

animal, animālis <i>animal</i>	mīles, mīlītis <i>soldier</i>	summus, -a, -um <i>high</i>
avis, avis <i>bird</i>	mora, -ae <i>delay</i>	tē <i>you</i>
caput, capitis <i>head</i>	nox, noctis <i>night</i>	
cibus, -ī <i>food</i>	nūbēs, nūbis <i>cloud</i>	appropinquō, -āre <i>approach</i>
collis, collis <i>hill</i>	pater, patris <i>father</i>	cēlō, -āre <i>heaven</i>
corpus, corporis <i>body</i>	pāx, pācis <i>peace</i>	natō, -āre <i>be born</i>
dux, ducis <i>leader</i>	rēx, rēgis <i>king</i>	sedeō, -ēre <i>sit</i>
exemplar, exemplāris <i>example</i>	rīpa, -ae <i>bank</i>	silcō, -ēre <i>be silent</i>
figūra, -ae <i>figure</i>	saxum, -ī <i>rock</i>	etiam <i>also</i>
flūmen, flūmīnis <i>river</i>	signum, -ī <i>sign</i>	facile <i>easily</i>
frāter, frātris <i>brother</i>	soror, sorōris <i>sister</i>	sic <i>thus, so</i>
homō, hominis <i>man</i>	tergum, -ī <i>back</i>	
hostis, hostis <i>enemy</i>		
īnsigne, īnsignis <i>badge</i>	medius, -a, -um <i>middle</i>	
lūx, lūcis <i>light</i>	paucī, -ae, -a <i>few</i>	

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS

- (1) Masculine and feminine nouns with genitive plural in **-um** (section 317).
- (2) Neuter nouns with genitive plural in **-um** (section 331).
- (3) Masculine and feminine nouns with genitive plural in **-ium** (section 338).
- (4) Neuter nouns with genitive plural in **-ium** (section 346).

LESSON XLVII

PERFECT TENSE

MEANING OF THE PERFECT

354. The perfect tense of the Latin verb is sometimes translated by the English present perfect, *I have carried*, *you have carried*, etc., and sometimes by the simple past tense, *I carried*,

you carried, etc. The meaning of the rest of the sentence will usually make it easy to decide which of these two translations should be used.

FORMS OF THE PERFECT

355. The verbs **portō** and **moneō** are conjugated as follows in the perfect active:

Singular

portā'vī, I carried, or I have carried
portāvis'tī, you carried, or you have carried
portā'vit, he carried, or he has carried

Plural

portā'vimus, we carried, or we have carried
portāvis'tis, you carried, or you have carried
portāvē'runt, they carried, or they have carried

Singular

mon'ui, I warned, or I have warned
monuis'tī
mo'nuit

Plural

monu'imus
monuis'tis
monuē'runt

a. The verbs **amō**, **laudō**, **superō**, and most other verbs of the first conjugation form their perfects like **portō**. The perfects of **timeō** and **habeō** are like that of **moneō**. The perfect of **maneō** is **mānsī**, **mānsistī**, etc.

b. The person endings used in the perfect active differ from those used with the other tenses. They are as follows:

Singular

-ī
-istī
-it

Plural

-imus
-istis
-ērunt

THE PERFECT OF SUM

356. The verb **sum** is conjugated as follows in the perfect:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
fuī, <i>I have been</i>	fuimus, <i>we have been</i>
fuistī, <i>you have been</i>	fuistis, <i>you have been</i>
fuit, <i>he has been</i>	fuērunt, <i>they have been</i>

DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE PERFECT AND THE IMPERFECT

357. The distinction between the perfect and the imperfect tenses consists in the fact that the imperfect represents an act as going on in past time or denotes a situation in past time, while the perfect either denotes a single past act without reference to its continuance or is equivalent to the English present perfect.

In the sentence *We crossed the river* a single act in past time is denoted, and hence the perfect will be used in Latin. Similarly, in the sentence *We have crossed the river*, the verb is in the present perfect, and the Latin equivalent will require the perfect. On the other hand, *We were crossing the river* represents an act as going on in past time, and *Everyone feared war* denotes a situation in past time. Hence the imperfect will be used in these two sentences.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

358. 1. Parva puella epistulam meam ad patrem suum portāvit. 2. Sextum monuī, sed nōn bene labōrat; nōn est impiger. 3. Patriam nostram semper amāvimus, saepe laudāvimus. 4. Amīcī tuī hodiē in scholā nōn fuērunt. 5. Cibus rogāvī, pecūniam nōn rogāvī. 6. Dux hostium cum multīs militibus appropinquāvit. 7. Ubi meōs librōs cēlāvistī? 8. I librōs tuōs nōn cēlāvī; Mārcus librōs tuōs habet. 9. Cornēlia

cēnam parāvit, et nunc nōs vocat. 10. Cūr, puerī, hodiē domī mānsistis? 11. Illōs hostēs nōn timuimus neque nunc timēmus. 12. Auxilium tuum nōn rogābāmus.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

359. 1. Why have you not invited my brother and my friends? 2. Where have you been? I have been in the farmhouse. 3. We have warned your son, but he does not fear the danger. 4. We have remained at home today with our brothers. 5. I was helping my father in the fields.

OPTIONAL DRILL

360. 1. Give two translations for each of the following words: imperāvi; servāvistī; clāmāvit; oppugnāvimus; postulāvistis; timuērunt. 2. Monuērunt; mānsērunt; timuimus; timēmus. 3. Probāvistī; vāstāvērunt; occupāvimus; occupābāmus. 4. Habitāvit; habuit; habuistis. 5. Puerōs spectāvimus; puerī nōs spectāvērunt. 6. Haec animālia hominēs nōn timuērunt. 7. Prō patriā Gallī pugnāvērunt; prō patriā hominēs pugnābant.

361. 1. We have called; you (plural) have asked; they have approved. 2. He has warned; he has remained; he was warning. 3. I have been happy in this cottage. 4. We often wandered through the whole island.



THE TOMB OF CECILIA METELLA

This famous tomb was at one time made into a fortress.

LESSON XLVIII

READING EXERCISE: COLLOQUIUM

362. Habitāsne in hāc urbe?

Ita; nunc cīvis hujus urbis sum.

Habitāvistine semper in hōc locō?

Minimē. Ōlim cum patre meō in parvō oppidō habitāvī.

Habēsne frātrēs et sorōrēs?

Frātrēs et sorōrēs habeō.

Habitantne frātrēs et sorōrēs quoque in urbe?

Sorōrēs in urbe habitant. Frātrēs sunt militēs et nunc
ab urbe absunt.

Amatne gēns tua bellum?

Bellum nōn amāmus, sed nōn sumus ignāvī.

Quid vōs ad bellum excitāvit?

Hostēs agrōs cīvium nostrōrum vāstāvērunt.

Properantne hūc illī hostēs?

Minimē. Militēs nostrī eōs in proeliō superāvērunt.

Suntne ignāvī hostēs?

Hostēs nōn sunt ignāvī. Sunt militēs bonī.

Amantne bellum illī hostēs?

Rēx eōrum bellum semper amāvit.

Nōnne agrī hostium vāstābuntur?

Agrōs eōrum nōn vāstābimus. Pācem dēsīderāmus.

363.

VOCABULARY

cīvis, cīvis, -ium, M., citizen

excitō, -āre, arouse, stir up,
exciteexpugnō, -āre, capture, take
by storm

gēns, gentis, -ium, F., nation

hūc, *adv.*, to this place, hither

ignāvus, -a, -um, cowardly

urbs, urbis, -ium, F., city

vōs, you (*plural, nominative
and accusative*)



A BATTLE BETWEEN ROMANS AND BARBARIANS

COMPLETION EXERCISE

364. 1. Militēs hunc ducem semper amāv—. 2. Pater meus saepe frātrem meum monu—. 3. Sociī nostrī auxilium postulāv—. 4. Amīcī nostrī benignī fu—, et eōs amāmus. 5. Hanc gentem timu— (*subject "we"*).

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

365. 1. What is meant by *civic* virtues? 2. What connection in meaning can you see between *civilization* and *cīvis*? 3. Give an English noun which is derived from *excitō*. 4. What is the difference between *urban* and *urbane*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

366. 1. Postulāvī; postulābam; mānsit; manēbat; excitāvimus; excitābāmus. 2. Cīvēs sunt ignāvī; cīvēs fuērunt ignāvī. 3. Amīcī nostrī hūc properāvērunt; amīcī nostrī hūc properābant. 4. Multae gentēs; multārum gentium; in hāc gente; in hīs gentibus. 5. Vōs in urbe vidēbimus. 6. Nōs in urbe vidēbitis. 7. Oppidum expugnāvimus; oppidum expugnābimus. 8. Dux cīvēs excitāvit; dux cīvēs excitābat. 9. Bellum nōn dēsīderāvimus. 10. Haec gēns semper bellum dēsīderāvit.

11. In nostrā urbe diū mānsistī. 12. Vōs saepe monuī. 13. Nōs saepe monuistis. 14. Frāter tuus semper benignus fuit.

367. 1. Hē has feared; hē will fear; hē fears. 2. He has praised; he was praising; he will praise. 3. They have fought; they were fighting; they will fight. 4. We have been safe; we were safe; we shall be safe. 5. The leader has warned the citizens. 6. The citizens have warned the leader. 7. These men have not been cowardly.

(a) Conjugate **moneō** and **maneō** in the perfect tense, active voice, and give the meaning of each form.

(b) Decline together **cīvis bonus**.

(c) Write the third person plural of **portō** and **moneō** in the present, imperfect, future, and perfect of the active voice.

LESSON XLIX

PERFECT PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

USE OF PARTICIPLES

368. There are certain verb forms which not only denote action, but also serve to tell something about a person or thing very much as an adjective does. Thus, in the sentence *The boy, frightened by the noise, called for help*, the word *frightened* is a form of the verb *frighten*, but it serves to tell something about the situation or condition of the boy. It is called a *participle*, and it shares something of the character of a verb and of an adjective. It has the character of a verb in that it denotes action and it has the character of an adjective in that it tells something about a noun or pronoun.

THE FORMS OF THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE

369. The perfect passive participle of **portō** is **portātus, -a, -um**, translated either by the compound participle *having*

been carried, or by the simple participle *carried*. The participle of **moneō** is **monitus, -a, -um**, meaning *having been warned*, or simply *warned*. Thus, **Puer, ā patre monitus, ad scholam properābat** may be translated *The boy, having been warned by his father, was hastening to school*, or *The boy, warned by his father, was hastening to school*.

a. The perfect passive participle is declined throughout like **bonus**. A participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs.

b. The perfect participle of **juvō** is **jūtus, -a, -um**; of **dō** is **datus, -a, -um** (differing from **portātus** in that the **a** is short). All other verbs of the first conjugation which have been given thus far form their perfect participles like **portō**¹; for example, **laudātus, amātus**, etc.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

370. 1. Oppidum, ab hostibus oppugnātum, in periculō est. 2. Pecūnia, ā Sextō postulāta, statim dabitur. 3. Hostēs, ā nostrīs cōpiīs superātī, in patriā suā manēbunt. 4. Puella, ā sorōre suā monita, nōn iterum ā scholā aberit. 5. Puer, saepe vocātus, nōn respondet. 6. Urbs, ā Gallīs expugnāta, dēlēbitur. 7. In eā calamitāte multī civēs necābuntur. 8. Agricolaē, ā barbarīs territī, ad oppidum properābant. 9. Saepe animālia, ab hominibus territa, in silvā latēbant. 10. Dē periculō monitus, in eō locō sōlus nōn manēbam. 11. Sorōrem tuam crās in urbe vidēbō.

371.

VOCABULARY

calamitās, -ātis , f., disaster, misfortune	dē , prep. with ablative, from, concerning, about
crās , adv., tomorrow	lateō, -ēre , lurk, be concealed
terreō, -ēre , frighten	

¹The verb **stō** has no perfect participle.

a. The preposition **dē** when meaning *from* has the sense of *down from*, while **ē**, **ex**, means *out from* and **ā**, **ab**, means *away from*. But **dē** very frequently means *concerning, regarding, about*, as in section 370.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

372. Translate the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. The *towns*, (*having been*) *attacked* by the enemy, are in danger.
2. The *book* *demand*ed by Sextus will be given at once.
3. The *king*, (*having been*) *defeated* by our forces, will remain in his native country.
4. The *girls*, (*having been*) *warned* by their sister concerning the danger, will not again walk in the forest.
5. The *boys*, *having often been called*, do not reply.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

373. 1. What is *latent* heat? 2. What is the original meaning of *adjutant*? What is its derivation? 3. Find a noun and an adjective from **calamitās**.

OPTIONAL DRILL

374. 1. **Necātus**; **servātus**; **occupātus**. 2. **Salūtātus**; **superātus**; **expectātus**. 3. **In urbe nostrā**; **in oppidō nostrō**; **ex urbibus**; **ex oppidīs**. 4. **Animal excitātum** **puerōs** **terrūt**. 5. **Puerī** **territī** **ex silvā** **properābant**. 6. **Cibus rogātus** **huic virō** **dabitur**. 7. **Servī**, **saepe** **laudātī**, **bene** **labōrant**.

375. 1. Write the declension of the perfect participles of **terreō** and **vāstō**.



A PACK MULE

2. Give the gender, number, and case of all the participles in section 370.

WORD STUDY V

FORMS OF THE PREPOSITION *CUM* AS A PREFIX

In the early form of Latin the preposition **cum** was spelled **com**, and it is in this form that it is used as a prefix. But the final **-m** is often changed by assimilation, so that we may have **con-**, **col-**, **cor-**, **co-**, as well as **com-**. The following list of English derivatives will illustrate these different forms:

compose

corrupt

conduct

coefficient

collect

MEANING AND USE OF *COM-*

As a prefix **com-** usually means *together*. Thus **conveniō** is *come together*, **comportāre** is *bring together*, **condūcere** is *lead together*. Our English verb *conduct* has lost the force of the prefix as it was felt in Latin.

Sometimes the force of the prefix has disappeared in Latin compounds and the compound word has come to mean the same or nearly the same as the original word to which the prefix was added. Thus **comparō**, *prepare*, scarcely differs in meaning from the simple verb **parō**.

In some words **com-** serves to emphasize the meaning of the word to which it was added. The adjective **cōnsimilis** means *very like*, serving as an emphatic form of **similis**; **combūrō** is *burn up*; **commūniō** is *fortify thoroughly*.

SUMMARY OF PREPOSITIONS AS PREFIXES

The following list of prepositions, with one compound of each, will illustrate some of the most important prepositional prefixes:

<i>Prefix</i>	<i>Meaning</i>	<i>Compound</i>
ā, ab	(away) from	absum
ad	to, toward	addūcō
circum	around	circumveniō
com-	together, with	condūcō
dē	(down) from	dēsiliō
ē, ex	(out) from	effugiō
in	into, in	immittō
ob	against	oppugnō
prō	forward	prōspectō
sub	under	succēdō
trāns	across	trānsportō

a. Other important prepositional prefixes are **ante**, *before*, **post**, *behind*, **after**, **per**, *through*, *thoroughly*.

b. Other prefixes besides **com-** sometimes serve merely to emphasize or intensify the meaning of the word to which they are joined; in some words their force is almost or entirely lost.

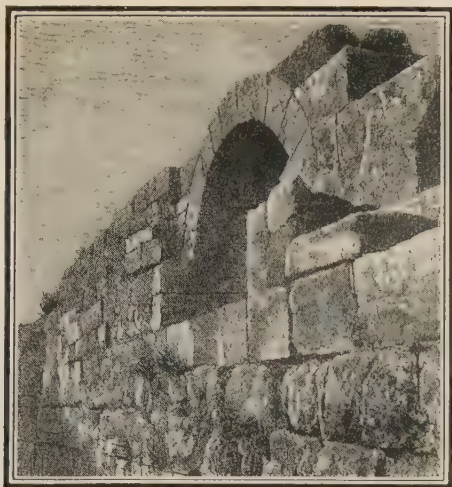
LESSON L

READING EXERCISE: *HOSTĒS URBEM OPPUGNĀRE PARANT*

376. 1. Vigilēs ex moenibus urbis prōspectant et agmen hostium procul vident. Hostēs appropinquant et urbem oppugnāre parant. Sed portae et moenia urbis sunt valida, et ante moenia est vāllum. Militēs ā duce monitī nunc ad moenia properant. Cīvēs auxilium ā sociīs quoque expectant.

2. Ad urbem appropinquāmus et eam oppugnāre parāmus. Militēs nostrī sunt dēfessī, quod iter hodiē longum fuit. Sed statim oppugnābimus, quod cīvēs urbis auxilium expectant.

3. Auxilium ā cīvibus expectātum nōn adest. Cīvēs et militēs in urbe fortiter pugnant, sed mox erit finis proeliī. Urbs expugnāta dēlēbitur. Multī cīvēs erunt servī.



THE SERVIAN WALL

This wall was built in very early times, and the city afterward spread far beyond its limits. Only small portions now remain.

377.

VOCABULARY

agmen, agminis, N., column,
line

fīnis, fīnis, -ium, M., end, limit;
pl., country, territory

iter, itineris, N., road, journey,
march

moenia, -ium, N. pl., walls (*of
a city*)

porta, -ae, F., gate

procul, adv., at a distance

prōspectō, -āre, look forth,
look

vāllum, -ī, N., rampart, wall

vigil, vigilis, M., sentinel

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

378. Translate the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. The *soldier, having been warned*, hastened to the camp.
2. The *enemy, having been defeated*, will be slaves.
3. The *boys, having been praised*, will work well.
4. My brother, *having been invited*, remained in town.
5. The *girl, having often been warned*, fears danger.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

379. 1. Where is *finis* sometimes found in English books? 2. What is an *itinerary*? 3. What is the meaning of the word *portal*? 4. What connection can you see between *vigilant* and *vigil*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

380. 1. Laudātus; datus; vulnerātus; monitus; jūtus. 2. Agmen nōn procul est; agmen appropinquat. 3. Vigilēs agmen vident; vigilēs prōspectant. 4. Ex portā prōspectāmus; ex moenibus prōspectāmus. 5. Iter est longum; itinera sunt longa; finis itineris adest. 6. Vāllum est altum; moenia sunt alta. 7. Tōta urbs est tūta quod moenia sunt alta. 8. Vigilēs prōspectāvērunt. 9. Vāllum fuit altum. 10. Iter fuit longum. 11. Agmen appropinquāvit. 12. Procul lūcem videō. 13. Vigil cēterōs militēs monuit.

381. 1. Give the Latin participles for the following in the nominative case, masculine gender, singular number: having been invited; having been attacked; having been laid waste; having been called; having been approved. 2. The rampart of the camp is high. 3. The sentinel looks from the window. 4. The camp has small gates. 5. We are expecting the end of the war.

(a) Write the complete declension of **portātus** and **monitus**.

(b) Give the form of **amātus** which will agree with **patria** as subject; with **fēmina** as direct object.

(c) Decline **vigil**.



MILESTONE

LESSON LI

PRINCIPAL PARTS: STEMS OF VERBS

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB

382. There are certain forms of a verb which show important facts regarding its conjugation. These are called *principal parts*.

The principal parts of a Latin verb are the present indicative active (first person singular), the present infinitive active, the perfect indicative active (first person singular), and the perfect passive participle.

The principal parts of **portō** and **moneō** are as follows:

portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum

a. The neuter form of the perfect participle is given in the principal parts for the reason that the perfect participles of some verbs have no masculine or feminine forms. But for most verbs, the participle is declined in all three genders. Thus, **portātus, -a, -um; monitus, -a, -um**, etc.

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS

383. All first conjugation verbs given thus far, except **juvō, dō, and stō**, form their principal parts like **portō**. The principal parts of these three are as follows:

dō, dare, dedī, datum
juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtum
stō, stāre, stetī

a. The fourth principal part of **stō** will be explained later; **dō** is irregular in having the **a** short in the infinitive and in the perfect participle, and also in all forms of the indicative except the second person singular of the present active, **dās**, as we have before seen.

THE STEMS OF THE VERB

384. If from the present infinitive **laudāre** we drop **-re** we have left what is known as the *present stem*. The stem of a verb is the body of the verb to which tense signs and endings are added.

A verb regularly has three stems: the present, the perfect, and the participial. The present stem is found by dropping **-re** from the present active infinitive, and the perfect stem by dropping **-ī** from the first person singular of the perfect indicative active. The participial stem is found by dropping **-um** from the perfect participle: **portātum**, stem **portāt-**; **monitum**, stem **monit-**.

IMPORTANCE OF PRINCIPAL PARTS AND STEMS

385. In order to find the stems of a verb, it is necessary to know its principal parts. These facts which have been stated regarding the formation and use of stems are true of all verbs in the Latin language. It is therefore very important that they be remembered.

USE OF THE STEMS

386. The present, the imperfect, and the future indicative, active and passive, are formed on the present stem.

The perfect stem is used only in the active voice. The perfect active indicative, which has already been given, and the past perfect and future perfect indicative, which will be given later, are formed on this stem.

Only a few forms are made on the participial stem.

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF SECOND CONJUGATION VERBS

387. The principal parts of six of the second conjugation verbs which have appeared in the preceding lessons are as follows:

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum
 dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum
 habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum

A STREET SCENE IN IOMI.



pāreō, pārēre, pārui
timeō, timēre, timui
sileō, silēre, silui

a. Some verbs do not have a perfect passive participle. This is true of the last three verbs in the list above.

OPTIONAL DRILL

388. 1. Write the principal parts of **laudō** and indicate the three stems by drawing vertical lines in such a way as to cut off the final **-re** of the infinitive, the person ending **-ī** of the perfect and the case ending **-um** of the participle. In the same way indicate the stems of **habeō**. 2. Write the complete declension of the past participle of **dēbeō**. 3. Conjugate **stō** and **dō** in the perfect active indicative.



RUINS OF THE AMPHITHEATER AT CAPUA

The city of Capua, situated about thirty miles from Naples, had a famous training school for gladiators.

LESSON LII

PRINCIPAL PARTS (Continued)

DIFFERENT ENDINGS OF THE PERFECT STEM

389. All the second conjugation verbs given in the preceding lesson have the perfect ending in *-uī*. But this is not true of all verbs of this conjugation. Other ways of forming the perfect are seen in the following:

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum
 jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussum
 moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum
 sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum
 videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum
 respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsum
 dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum
 audeō, audēre

a. The perfect of *audeō* is omitted at this time because it is not formed like that of the other verbs above.

390. READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM*

MOSAIC PICTURE OF A TIGER

Quid in silvā vīdistī?
 In silvā magnum ani-
 mal vīdī.
 Nōne timuistī id
 animal?
 Ita est. Id timuī.
 Sōlusne in silvā erās?
 Minimē. Comitem
 habēbam.
 Quis erat comes
 tuus?
 Comes meus erat
 Sextus.

Timēbatne etiam Sextus?

Ita. Sextus magnopere timēbat.

Cūr nōn patrem vocāvisti?

Eum vocāvī, sed longē aberat.

Nōne habēbātis arma?

Fundās et parvōs lapidēs habēbāmus.

Cūr nōn animal vulnerāvistis aut necāvistis?

Parvī lapidēs magnum animal nōn necābunt.

Quis vōs servāvit?

Frāter Sextī auxilium dedit.

Habēbatne is (*see section 275*) arma?

Longam hastam habēbat.

Necāvitne illud animal?

Animal necāvit et nōs ex periculō servāvit.

Erisne mox in silvā iterum cum amīcō tuō?

Minimē. Pater mē in oppidō manēre jussit, et pārēbō.

Manēbitne Sextus quoque in oppidō?

Ita erit. Pater ejus eum monuit, et is quoque pārēbit.

391.

VOCABULARY

comes, comitis, M., F., com-
panion

funda, -ae, F., sling

hasta, -ae, F., spear

lapis, lapidis, M., stone

magnopere, *adv.*, greatly

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

392. 1. This man's father has remained in Ireland. 2. We have not seen the cities of Spain. 3. The barbarians (have) moved camp because we were approaching. 4. We have not feared these enemies, nor do we fear them now. 5. I have not replied, nor will I reply.

OPTIONAL DRILL

393. 1. Jussimus; jūvimus; juvāmus. 2. Vīdit; videt; timuit; timet. 3. Mōvimus; movēmus; mōvērunt. 4. Re-

spondimus; respondēmus; respondērunt; respondēbunt. 5. Mānsit; monuit; mōvit. 6. Puer lapidem portāvit. 7. Comitem meum vocāvī. 8. Barbarī fundās et hastās habēbant. 9. Animal magnopere mē timuit.

394. 1. We have seen; we see; we have ordered. 2. They have given; they have stood; they have helped. 3. I warned your companion. 4. The soldiers have seen the spears of the barbarians. 5. The citizens have saved the city.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

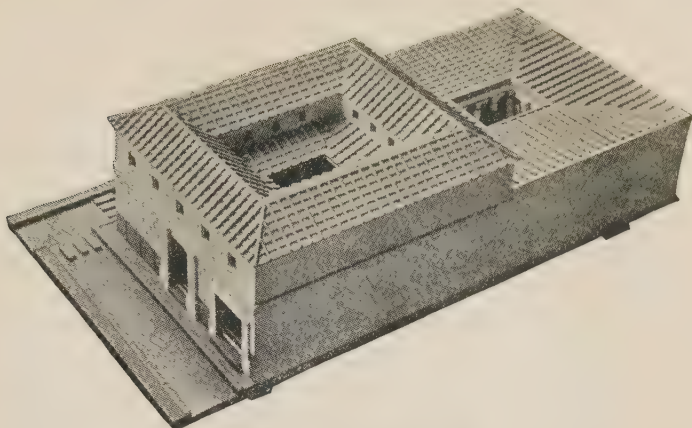
395. The word *count*, as a title of nobility, is derived from *comes*. Originally the count was the *companion* of the king.

THE ROMAN HOUSE

After Rome had come to be a great and wealthy city many of the inhabitants lived in large apartment buildings. But separate houses for families also existed. While these houses were not all alike, they were usually built in accordance with a plan which made them quite different from modern homes.

The main room, which was called the atrium, was high and had an opening in the center of the ceiling like a skylight. This opening was not closed by windows, and the rain which might come in was caught in a basin made in the floor directly below. Instead of sloping toward the outer edges, the roof usually sloped inward toward the opening, so that all the water drained into the basin in the floor. From this it was carried to a cistern or else allowed to flow off through drains into the street.

Around this central room there were usually smaller rooms which might serve as sleeping rooms or for other purposes. Sometimes an upper story was built over the outside rooms, but usually it did not extend over the central part of the house.



MODEL OF A ROMAN HOUSE

At the back of the atrium was a smaller room, called the tablinum, which might serve as a sort of office for the owner in which to keep his business records and his money chest. An open court with rooms all around it was frequently added behind the tablinum. Since this open court afforded more air than the atrium, the rooms about it were sometimes made the chief living rooms of the family. The kitchen and dining room were often located here.

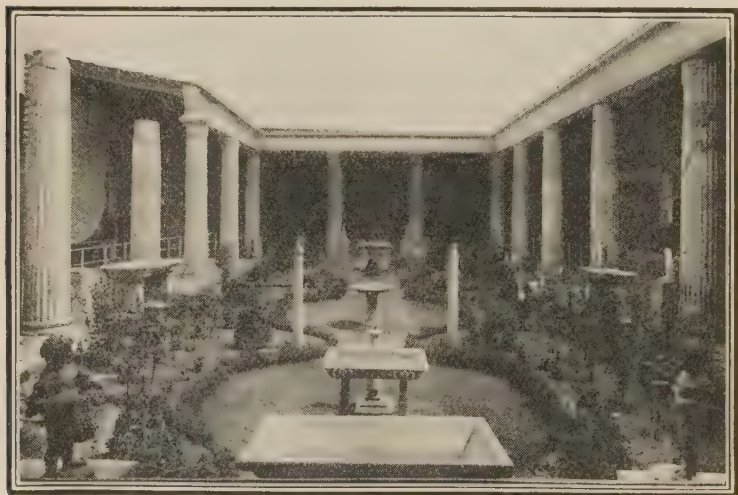
A Roman house had less furniture than most modern houses. There was no piano, and there were fewer comfortable chairs. The living room was not likely to have a bookcase or a library table on which books could be placed. There were no rugs or carpets, but sometimes the floor in a house of the better sort was of marble, ornamented with pictures or decorations made of small pieces of stone or glass or marble.

Frequently there were rooms on either side of the entrance which were used as shops. This might be true even in the houses of wealthy persons. These shops usually had their entrance only from the street and were cut off from the atrium.

They might be used as places for the sale of various kinds of articles. Sometimes, however, one or both of the rooms at the side of the entrance were connected with the atrium and made a part of the family rooms. A small room for the slave who had charge of the door might be located here.

The Roman house would seem to us less comfortable than a modern dwelling, but since the summers in Italy are rather long and hot while the winters are less severe than in our own country, it was probably more satisfactory than we might suppose.

The apartment houses also differed from those of our cities today, but we know less of their arrangement than we do of the separate homes. There were no elevators and no central system of lighting. Probably the general plan was quite different from that of a modern apartment building.



COURT OF A ROMAN HOUSE

LESSON LIII

PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE OF *PORTŌ* AND *MONEŌ*

396. The perfect indicative passive, unlike the other tenses which have been given, is not formed by adding person endings to a stem. Instead, the perfect passive participle is used with the present tense of the verb **sum**. Two separate words are used to represent each person and number. The perfect indicative passive of **portō** and **moneō** is as follows:

Singular

portā'tus sum, *I was carried or I have been carried*

portā'tus es, *you were carried or you have been carried*

portā'tus est, *he was carried or he has been carried*

Plural

portā'tī sumus, *we were carried or we have been carried*

portā'tī estis, *you were carried or you have been carried*

portā'tī sunt, *they were carried or they have been carried*

Singular

mo'nitus sum, *I was warned or I have been warned*

mo'nitus es, *you were warned or you have been warned*

mo'nitus est, *he was warned or he has been warned*

Plural

mo'nitī sumus, *we were warned or we have been warned*

mo'nitī estis, *you were warned or you have been warned*

mo'nitī sunt, *they were warned or they have been warned*

a. These forms are translated more frequently by the English past tense, *I was carried*, etc., than by the present perfect.

b. The participle used in forming this tense agrees with the subject in gender and number. Examples are:

Puer laudātus est, *The boy has been praised*
 Puella laudāta est, *The girl has been praised*
 Puerī laudātī sunt, *The boys have been praised*

READING EXERCISE

397. 1. *our fields have been laid waste by the enemy*
 Agrī nostrī ab hostibus vāstātī sunt, et multa op-
 pida occupāta sunt. Auxilium ā cīvibus nostrīs populō Rō-
 mānō in bellō ōlim datum est, et populus Rōmānus nunc nōs
 juvāre dēbet. Auxilium vestrum postulāmus.

2. Urbs nostra erit in (on) illō parvō monte. Locus idōneus
 est quod flūmen nōn longē abest, et ex eō flūmine aquam ha-
 bēbimus. Urbs Rōma appellābitur. Circum urbem erit
 mūrus. Rīpa ulterior flūminis nunc est in terrā Etruscōrum,
 sed illa terra mox erit Rōmāna. Centuriō noster multōs
 milītēs habet, et Etruscōs superābimus. Nōmen urbis nostrae
 multīs gentibus nōtum erit.

398.

VOCABULARY

appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call, name	idōneus, -a, -um, suitable
centuriō, -ōnis, M., centurion, <i>a subordinate officer in the Roman army.</i>	mōns, montis, -ium, M., moun- tain
circum, <i>prep. with acc., around</i>	nōmen, nōminis, N., name
Etruscī, -ōrum, M. pl., the Etruscans	Rōma, -ae, F., Rome
	ulterior, farther

a. The passive forms of **appellō** and other words of
naming or calling may have a predicate nominative, like
 the forms of **sum**.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

399. 1. Our soldiers have often been praised. 2. The cities
 of our allies have been seized by the enemy (*plural*). 3. Your

son has not been seen. 4. But I have seen your daughter in the street. 5. The money has not been given to this man.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

400. 1. What is an *appellation*? 2. Find two compounds of *circum*. 3. What is the meaning of *nomenclature*? 4. What is an *ulterior* motive? 5. What is a *nominal* price?



VIEW OF THE PALATINE (RESTORATION)

OPTIONAL DRILL

401. 1. Appellātus est; appellātī sunt; monitī sunt; vulnerātī sunt. 2. Aquam portāvimus; aqua portāta est. 3. Puella monita est; nauta monitus est. 4. Nōmen urbis; nōmina urbium; urbs nōmen clārum habet. 5. Circum montem; circum montēs; circum hōs montēs. 6. In locō idōneō; in locīs idōneīs; locum idōneum vidēmus. 7. Pecūnia data est; castra mōta sunt. 8. Puer jūtus est; oppidum dēlētum est. 9. Ulterior īnsula magnam silvam habet. 10. In summō monte est parvum oppidum. 11. Per hōs montēs saepe errāvimus. 12. Jussus sum; jussī; jūtus sum; jūvī.

402. 1. He has been praised; he has praised; he has been warned; he has warned. 2. He has been ordered; he has

ordered; they have been ordered; they have ordered. 3. They have destroyed the city; the city has been destroyed. 4. I have warned; I have remained; they have warned; they have remained. 5. The city has been called Rome. 6. The men will be called Romans. 7. The name of this mountain has always been famous. 8. This place will not be suitable.

(a) Rewrite the first sentence of paragraph 1, section 397, changing the verbs to the active voice and making such other changes as are necessary.

(b) Conjugate **appellō** and **jubeō** in the perfect active and the perfect passive.

TENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS XLVII-LIII

agmen, agminis	<i>mountain</i> mōns, montis	<i>arouse</i> excitō, -āre
calamitās, -ātis	<i>name</i> nōmen, nōminis	<i>attach</i> expugnō, -āre
centuriō, -ōnis	<i>gate</i> porta, -ae	<i>look</i> lateō, -ēre
cīvis, cīvis	<i>city</i> urbs, urbis	<i>watch for</i> prōspectō, -āre
comes, comitis	<i>wall</i> vāllum, -ī	<i>fight</i> terreō, -ēre
finis, finis	<i>sentinel</i> vigil, vigilis	<i>to-morrow</i> crās
funda, -ae	<i>suitable</i> idōneus, -a, -um	<i>to this</i> hūc
gēns, gentis	<i>cowardly</i> ignāvus, -a, -um	<i>greatly</i> magnopere
hasta, -ae	<i>farther</i> ulterior	<i>distant</i> procul
iter, itineris	<i>you</i> vōs	<i>around</i> circum
lapis, lapidis	<i>call</i> appellō, -āre	<i>from</i> dē
moenia, -ium		<i>concern</i>

ENDINGS OF THE PERFECT ACTIVE

Singular	Plural
1. -ī, I	-imus, we
2. -istī, you (singular)	-istis, you (plural)
3. -it, he, she, it	-ērunt, they

FORMATION OF THE PERFECT PASSIVE

(See section 396)

DISTINCTION BETWEEN THE PERFECT AND IMPERFECT

(See section 357)

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE

(See section 369)

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS

(See section 382)

STEMS OF VERBS

(See section 384)

LESSON LIV

THIRD CONJUGATION -Ō VERBS, PRESENT INDICATIVE

403. Verbs of the third conjugation have the ending **-ere** in the present active infinitive. This ending must be distinguished from that of the second conjugation, which is **-ēre** (long **e**). There are two classes of verbs of the third conjugation, one class with the ending **-ō** and the other class with the ending **-iō** in the first person singular of the present active indicative.

Those of the first class are conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

dūcō, I lead

ACTIVE

Singular

dū'cō, *I lead*
 dū'cis, *you lead*
 dū'cit, *he leads*

Plural

dū'cimus, *we lead*
 dū'citis, *you lead*
 dū'cunt, *they lead*

PASSIVE

*Singular*dū'cor, *I am led*dū'ceris, *you are led*dū'citur, *he is led**Plural*dū'cimur, *we are led*dūci'minī, *you are led*dūcun'tur, *they are led*

404. The principal parts of **dūcō** and of five other verbs of this class, one or more forms of which have appeared in the previous lessons, are as follows:

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead*discō, -ere, didici, —, *learn*edō, -ere¹, ēdī, ēsum, *eat*legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, *read*ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentum, *show*scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum, *write*

405.

READING EXERCISE: COLLOQUIUM



A CENTURION

1. Quis illōs militēs dūcit?
Sextus eōs dūcit.
Quis est Sextus?
Sextus est centuriō Rō-
mānus; est dux bonus.
Ā quō Gallī dūcuntur?
Gallī ā rēge suō dūcun-
tur.
Cūr Rōmānī nōn ā rē-
gē dūcuntur?
Rōmānī nunc rēgem nōn
habent.
2. Quid in scholā discitis?
Multa (*see section 179*) in
scholā discimus.
Librōsne in scholā legitis?

¹There is an irregular form of the infinitive of this verb, **ēsse**, which is more frequently used than the regular form. There are also a few irregular forms in the indicative.

Ita. Multōs librōs in scholā legimus.

Habētisne domī quoque librōs?

Domī quoque librōs habēmus et legimus.

Scribitisne saepe in scholā?

Interdum in scholā scribimus.

Scribuntne semper bene puerī et puellae in scholā
vestrā?

Minimē. Multi puerī et puellae male scribunt.

Cūr eī puerī et puellae male scribunt?

Male scribunt quod nōn facile discunt et nōn satis
labōrant.

3. Quid edit ille equus?

Ille equus frūmentum edit.

Quis frūmentum equō dat?

Agricola equō frūmentum dat.

Dantne agricolae hieme equīs multum frūmentum?

Ita. Hieme equī multum frūmentum edunt.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

406. 1. The centurions lead the Roman soldiers bravely.
2. This poet writes many books, but we do not read these
books. 3. Many letters are written by these women. 4. We
often read the letters of your friends. 5. Many books are read
in school by these girls.

OPTIONAL DRILL

407. 1. Legimus; scribimus; dūcimus; edimus. 2. Haec
animālia frūmentum nōn edunt. 3. Cūr epistolam ad patrem
tuum hodiē nōn scribis? 4. Frāter tuus librum dē Galliā et
Hispaniā scribit. 5. Epistolae ex Hiberniā ā filiō Mārci
scribuntur. 6. Vesperī puerī domī manent et librōs legunt.
7. Epistula tua ā sorōre meā legitur. 8. Librōs bonōs legere
dēbētis. 9. Cūr hunc cibum nōn edis? 10. Verba bonī et
magnī virī in hōc librō legō.

408. 1. They write; they read; they eat. 2. We lead; we see; we praise. 3. You have a good book, but you do not read your book. 4. The barbarians are led through the streets of Rome. 5. This man is writing (writes) a book about the wars of the Romans.

LESSON LV

READING EXERCISE: *BONUS DUX*

409. Illa legiō vincit, quod ducem bonum habet. Is bene dūcit, et milītēs hostēs nōn timent. Sed pars cōpiārū nostrārū habet alium ducem, et hī milītēs in periculō sunt. Hostēs castra oppugnābunt et occupābunt. Ille dux nunc nūntium mittit, et hic nūntius auxilium postulābit. Auxilium mittere parāmus. Sine bonō duce milītēs in periculō sunt. Bonus dux semper parātus est, et hostēs eum timent. Castra in locō inīquō nōn pōnit, neque milītēs ejus sine armīs sunt.

410.

VOCABULARY

alius, alia, aliud , another, other	nūntius, -ī, M. , messenger
inīquus, -a, -um , unfavorable, unjust	pars, partis, -ium, F. , part
legiō, -ōnis, F. , legion	pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum , place, pitch
mittō, -ere, misi, missum , send	vincō, -ere, vici, victum , con- quer, defeat

a. The genitive and dative singular of **alius** (like those of **sōlus** and **nūllus**) are irregular. They are not used in the exercises of this book.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

411. 1. We are placing (we place) our camp between the river and the mountain. 2. The citizens send food to (**ad**) the soldiers. 3. Food is sent to the soldiers by the citizens. 4. Who leads that legion? 5. Our legion has a good leader.



ENTRANCE TO A ROMAN FORTIFIED CAMP (RECONSTRUCTION)

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

412. 1. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *alias*¹ as an English word. 2. Give two English words from the present stem of *dūcō* and two from the participial stem. 3. What is the literal meaning of *particle*? 4. What is the difference in meaning between the verbs *convince* and *convict*, both of which are derived from *vincō*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

413. 1. Mittimus; mittimur; dūcit; dūcitur; pōnunt; pōnuntur. 2. Vincō; vincor; vincitis; vincimini; vincis; vinceris. 3. Nūntium mittimus; nūntius mittitur; nūntiī mittuntur. 4. Haec legiō; hae legiōnēs; hujus legiōnis; pars legiōnis; cum parte legiōnis. 5. In aliā parte; ex aliā parte; in locō inīquō;

¹The form *aliās* is really a Latin adverb which is derived from the adjective *alius*.

ad locum inīquum. 6. Illa legiō vincitur quod dux ejus nōn est dux bonus. 7. Haec legiō bene dūcitur, neque hostēs ā militibus timentur. 8. Militēs arma post vāllum pōnunt. 9. Socii nostri hostēs vincunt quod arma bona habent. 10. Legiō per montēs dūcitur.

414. 1. We lead; we are led; we place; we are placed. 2. He sends; he is sent; they conquer; they are conquered. 3. The leader has another legion. 4. The king sends another messenger. 5. We send part of the soldiers from the camp. 6. The soldiers are fighting (*section 108 a*) in an unfavorable place. 7. The boy places his books in the cottage.

(a) Conjugate **pōnō**, **jubeō**, and **postulō** in the present tense, active voice.

(b) Give the third person plural of **vincō**, **habeō**, and **expectō** in the present tense, active and passive.

LESSON LVI

THIRD CONJUGATION -IŌ VERBS, PRESENT INDICATIVE

415. The present indicative of -iō verbs of the third conjugation is as follows:

capiō, *I take*

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>
ca'piō, <i>I take</i>	ca'pior, <i>I am taken</i>
ca'pis, <i>you take</i>	ca'peris, <i>you are taken</i>
ca'pit, <i>he takes</i>	ca'pitur, <i>he is taken</i>
<i>Plural</i>	<i>Plural</i>
ca'pimūs, <i>we take</i>	ca'pimur, <i>we are taken</i>
ca'pitis, <i>you take</i>	capi'minī, <i>you are taken</i>
ca'piunt, <i>they take</i>	capiun'tur, <i>they are taken</i>

a. The only forms in which the verbs of this class differ from those of the first class in the present tense are the first person singular and the third person plural (**-iō** instead of **-ō**, and **-iunt** instead of **-unt** in the active; **-ior** instead of **-or**, and **-iuntur** instead of **-untur** in the passive).

READING EXERCISE: *CENTURIŌ CUM DUCE
BARBARŌRUM PUGNAT*

416. Centuriō Rōmānus gladium et scūtum capit et prō castrīs prōcēdit. Dux barbarōrum quoque prōcēdit. Hī duo pugnant, et centuriō ducem barbarōrum interficit. Tum militēs Rōmānī centuriōnem in castra excipiunt cum magnīs clāmōribus, et imperātor eī praemium dat.

Gladium et scūtum capiō et prō castrīs prōcēdō. Cum duce barbarōrum pugnō, et eum interficiō. Tum militēs et imperātor mē laudant et mihi praemium datur. Comitēs meī laeti sunt quod ita laudor. Pater meus quoque laetus erit quod bonus mīles et bonus centuriō sum.

417.

VOCABULARY

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take,
capture

clāmōr, -ōris, M., shout

duo, duae, duo, two

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -cep-
tum, receive

imperātor, -ōris, M., general
in, *prep. with acc.*, into, in

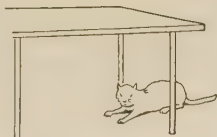
interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-
tum, kill

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -ces-
sum, proceed, advance

a. The ablative with *in* (meaning *in* or *on*) denotes the place where something is or where some act occurs. The accusative with *in* (meaning *into* or *in*) denotes the place to which motion is directed.



ex casā



sub mēnsā



ante jānuam



ad silvā



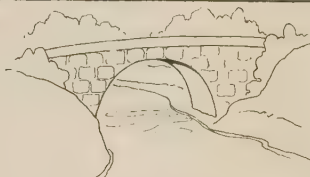
in aquā



in aquā



post patrem



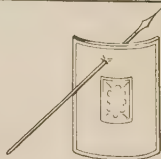
trāns flūmen



cum amīco



inter amīcōs



per scūtum



sine pecūniā



circum mātrem



ā terrā

A PAGE OF PREPOSITIONS

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

militēs gladios et scutula capiunt

418. 1. The soldiers take swords and shields. 2. The Romans kill many barbarians. 3. We receive our leader with loud (great) shouts. 4. The centurion is received by the soldiers with loud shouts. 5. Help is not sent by the Romans.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

419. 1. What is a *clamorous* throng? 2. What is a *dual* empire? 3. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *emperor*. 4. Give one English word from the present stem and one from the participial stem of *prōcēdō*. What special point is to be noted in the spelling of the derivative from the present stem?

OPTIONAL DRILL

420. 1. Capiunt; dūcunt; capiuntur; dūcuntur; capitur; dūcitur. 2. Centuriō capitur; centuriō interficitur. 3. Comes centuriōnis nōn capitur. 4. Militēs cum clāmōribus excipiuntur. 5. Propter clāmōrēs multī timent. 6. In silvā; in silvam; in castra; in castrīs. 7. Ducēs hostium prōcēdunt. 8. Duo militēs capiuntur; duo militēs interficiuntur. 9. In oppidō maneō; in oppidum properō. 10. Centuriō interdum in proeliō legiōnem dūcit. 11. Propter locum inīquum legiō nōn prōcēdit.

421. 1. They kill; they receive; they are killed. 2. They take; they place; they see; they demand. 3. I receive; I conquer; I remain. 4. The centurion fights bravely. 5. The two companions are received. 6. We had good companions.

(a) Conjugate *interficiō* and *mittō* in the present tense, active and passive.

(b) Decline together *imperātor vester*.

↑

LESSON LVII

ABLATIVE OF MEANS

THE ABLATIVE WITHOUT A PREPOSITION

422. In the preceding lessons the ablative has been used as the object of certain Latin prepositions. Sometimes, however, the ablative is used without a preposition. In the sentence **Puer saxō vulnerātus est**, *The boy was wounded by the stone*, the phrase *by the stone* is translated by the ablative **saxō**, without any preposition. In like manner, in the sentence **Gallī gladiīs pugnant**, *The Gauls fight with swords*, the ablative **gladiīs** is used without a preposition.

THE THING BY WHICH, AND THE PERSON BY WHOM
OR WITH WHOM

423. The phrases *by the stone* and *with swords* in the sentences above denote the means by which or with which an act is done. In the sentences *The boy was helped by the man* and *He walks with a friend* the phrases *by the man* and *with a friend* are quite different from the preceding phrases. In the first of these sentences *by the man* denotes the person by whom the act was done, and will be translated **ā virō**; in the second *with a friend* denotes the person in company with whom an act is done and will be translated **cum amīcō**.

MEANS, AGENT, AND ACCOMPANIMENT COMPARED

424. A word used to express the means with which an act is done, as **saxō** and **gladiīs** above, is said to be in the *ablative of means*. A word denoting the person by whom an act is done is said to be in the *ablative of agent*, and a word denoting the person with whom one is associated in doing an act is said to be in the *ablative of accompaniment*. In the Latin phrases in section 423 **virō** is an ablative of agent and **amīcō** is an ablative of accompaniment.

SUMMARY OF DISTINCTIONS BETWEEN MEANS, AGENT,
AND ACCOMPANIMENT

425.

1. The ablative of means never has a preposition.
2. The ablative of agent always has *ā* or *ab*.
3. The ablative of accompaniment usually has *cum*.
4. The ablative of agent is used only with the passive voice.
5. The ablative of means may be used either with the active or the passive.

READING EXERCISE

426. 1. Gladiō mē dēfendō et scūtō mē tegō. Jaculum quoque habēō. Jaculum in (*t*) hostēs jaciō cum hī nōn longē absunt. Hostēs interdum jaculis graviter vulnerantur aut interficiuntur. In capite meō est galea. Hostēs quoque gladiōs et scūta et galeās habent. Gladii eōrum sunt longi, sed gladius meus nōn longus est. Barbari saepe longis hastis pugnant. Rōmāni hastās nōn habent.

2. Barbari nunc agrōs Etruscōrum vāstant et Etruscōs ē patriā expellere cupiunt. Etrusci prō patriā pugnant. Rōma ā terrā Etruscōrum nōn longē abest, sed Etrusci sunt hostēs Rōmānōrum, et saepe cum eis bellum gerunt.

3. Hī hominēs ē patriā suā expulsī sunt. Pecūniam suam amiserunt et nunc miserī sunt.

427.

VOCABULARY

āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -mis-
sum, lose

cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -itum, wish
dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi,
-fensum, defend

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pul-
sum, drive out

gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum, bear,
carry, carry on, wage

graviter, *adv.*, seriously, heav-
ily

jaciō, -ere, jeci, jactum, throw

tegō, -ere, tēxi, tectum, cover,
protect

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

428. 1. The soldier wounds the barbarian with a sword. 2. The leader of the soldiers was killed by a javelin. 3. The Gauls and Germans fought with spears. 4. The centurion protects his friend with a shield. 5. The soldier's head is protected by a helmet.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

429. 1. What is an *indefensible* attitude? 2. What connection in meaning can you see between *reject* and *jaciō*? 3. What is the meaning of *cupidity*? What connection can you see between the meaning of this word and *cupiō*? 4. Find a noun derived from *expellō*.


OPTIONAL DRILL

430. 1. Gladiō vulnerātus sum; ab inimicō vulnerātus sum. 2. Miles frātre gladiō dēfendit; miles cum frātre ambulat. 3. Barbarī hastis pugnant; barbarī cum Rōmānīs pugnant. 4. Cum Etrūscīs bellum gerimus; bonīs armīs pugnāmus. 5. Hōc vāllō dēfendimur; ā militibus dēfendimur. 6. Hostēs expellere cupimus; hostēs nōs expellere cupiunt. 7. Saxa ā puerō jaciuntur. 8. Vir saxīs vulnerātur. 9. Frāter tuus saxō graviter vulnerātus est. 10. Cupiunt; capiunt; cupimus; capimus; cupere; capere. 11. Jacimus; tegimus; dēfendimus; expellimus.

431. 1. He was wounded by a javelin. 2. He was wounded by a soldier. 3. The animal was killed (*necāre*) by my companion. 4. The animal was killed with a spear. 5. The general advances with the soldier. 6. The leader is protected by a large shield. 7. These barbarians carry long swords.

(a) Write two English sentences containing phrases with *by* which if translated into Latin would require prepositions.

(b) Write two English sentences containing phrases with *by* or *with* which would be translated into Latin without prepositions.



ROMAN BOOKS

Roman books were made in a very different way from modern books and did not look at all like them. Instead of having leaves which were fastened together so that they could be turned one after the other, the Roman book was a long roll. If we should take loose sheets of paper and paste them together side by side we should have the sort of book the Romans had.

The Latin word meaning "to roll" is *volvere*, and a book of the kind which has just been described was called a *volūmen*. Our word "volume" is from *volūmen*. While our books no longer have the form of rolls, we still keep the word which originally meant a book of that kind. When one read a Roman book he held it with both hands and kept unrolling one side as he went on reading, while he rolled up with the other hand the part he had read.

Since there were no printing presses in ancient times, all books were written by hand. When a new book was to be prepared for sale a large number of writers were set to work making the copies which were to be sold. We should expect books made in this way to be very expensive, but since the copyists were slaves the price usually was not very high. These copyists were trained to write rapidly, and they could prepare a large number of pages in a day.

The material on which Roman books were written was called *papyrus*, a word from which we have derived "paper." This was like a heavy, coarse sort of paper, made from the inside of the stem of a plant which grew in Egypt and also in some parts of Italy. Later a kind of very thin leather called parchment came into use instead of papyrus. After the introduction of parchment the roll form of books was largely given up and a form adopted which was much like that of our modern books.

LESSON LVIII

FOURTH CONJUGATION

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF *audiō*

432. The present active infinitive of the fourth conjugation ends in **-ire**: **audiō**, *I hear*, **audire**, *to hear*. The present indicative is as follows:

audiō, *I hear*

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

*Singular*au'diō, *I hear*au'dior, *I am heard*au'dīs, *you hear*audī'ris, *you are heard*au'dit, *he hears*audī'tur, *he is heard**Plural*audī'mus, *we hear*audī'mur, *we are heard*audī'tis, *you hear*audī'minī, *you are heard*au'diunt, *they hear*audiun'tur, *they are heard*

a. In the present indicative of the fourth conjugation, as seen above, the characteristic vowel (*ī*) is long, except in the first person singular, active and passive, the third person singular, active, and the third person plural, active and passive. The third conjugation has the corresponding vowel short.

READING EXERCISE

433. 1. Sonum multōrum pedum audiō. Hostēs appropinquant. Scūta et galeās eōrum per tenebrās videō. Castra nostra expugnāre cupiunt, sed arma parāta habēmus. Nōn solum prō patriā sed etiam prō vitā pugnābimus, et nōn facile superābimur. Dux noster cum multis militibus mox aderit.

et hī nōs juvābunt. Aliī militēs nunc castra ā tergō mūniunt, et ea pars mox tūta erit.

2. Sonus multōrum pedum auditur. Sed castra mūniuntur, et militēs Rōmānī parātī sunt. Militēs sciunt cōpiās hostium esse magnās.

3. Hostēs sonum pedum nostrōrum audiunt. Scūta et galeās nostrās per tenebrās vident. Castra eōrum expugnāre cupimus, sed arma parāta habent, et aliī militēs cum lēgātō veniunt.

434.

VOCABULARY

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, hear

lēgātus, -ī, M., lieutenant

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, fortify

nōn solum . . sed etiam, not

only . . but also

pēs, pedis, M., foot

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, know

sonus, -ī, M., sound

tenebrae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, darkness

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, come

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

435. 1. We fortify the camp, and we prepare arms. 2. Loud (great) shouts are heard in the forest. 3. The sound of battle is heard in the streets. 4. Your brother comes alone from the house. 5. We come from a city of your allies.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

436. 1. What is an *auditorium*? 2. Give an adjective which is derived from *audiō*. 3. What are *munitions*? 4. What is a *pedestal*? Give another word from *pēs*. 5. What is the original meaning of *science*? 6. What is a *sonorous* voice?

OPTIONAL DRILL

437. 1. Mūnīmus; monēmus; amāmus; mittimus. 2. Sonum audīmus; sonus auditur. 3. Sciunt; silent; stant; scribunt. 4. In tenebrīs; ex tenebrīs; propter tenebrās. 5. Nōn solum

audimus sed etiam vidēmus. 6. Quis venit? Quī veniunt? 7. Militēs sonum audiunt. 8. Cūr nōn statim venītis? 9. Sciō hunc hominem esse perfidum. 10. Per tenebrās lūcem in casā videō. 11. Imperātor legiōnem oppidum mūnīre jubet.

438. 1. We hear; we know; we stand. 2. We wish to know; we wish to come. 3. This animal has small feet. 4. We invited not only your friend but also his son. 5. We are fortifying the camp with a rampart. 6. The general comes with the legion.

(a) Conjugate **mūniō** and **cupiō** in the present tense, active voice.

(b) Decline **pēs**.

(c) Decline **sonus**.



GIRLS PLAYING "JACKS"

LESSON LIX

THE PERFECT TENSE (Completed)

THE FORMATION OF THE PERFECT ACTIVE

439. In the perfect active tense of **portō** and **moneō**, section **355**, we saw that the forms were made up of the perfect stem with special endings which were used in no other tense. The formation of this tense is the same for all verbs of the Latin language, in all conjugations, and for irregular as well as regular verbs.

There is, therefore, nothing new to learn for the perfect active of the third and fourth conjugations. We simply add the perfect endings to the perfect stem as shown in the principal parts: **dūxī**, *I led (I have led)*, **dūxistī**, *you led (you have led)*, etc.; **cēpī**, *I took (I have taken)*, **cēpistī**, *you took (you have taken)*, etc.; **audīvī**, *I heard (I have heard)*, **audivistī**, *you heard (you have heard)*, etc.

THE FORMATION OF THE PERFECT PASSIVE

440. The perfect passive, like the perfect active, is the same in its method of formation for all Latin verbs. As has been seen in section **396**, it consists of the perfect passive participle with the present tense forms of **sum**. It must be remembered that the participle agrees with the subject in gender and number.

The perfect passive of third and fourth conjugation verbs, therefore, is formed like that of first and second conjugation verbs: **ductus sum**, *I was led (I have been led)*, **ductus es**, *you were led (you have been led)*, etc.; **captus sum**, *I was taken (I have been taken)*, **captus es**, *you were taken (you have been taken)*, etc.; **auditus sum**, *I was heard (I have been heard)*, **auditus es**, *you were heard (you have been heard)*, etc.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

441. 1. Officium tuum neglēxistī, et praemium tibi nōn dabitur. 2. Nōmen hujus urbis clārae saepe audīvistī. 3. Ille homō ē suā patriā expulsus est, et nunc est exul. 4. Cīvēs eum in urbe manēre nōn sinunt. 5. Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī; haec erant verba clārī imperātōris Rōmānī. 6. Dux noster cōpiās usque ad mūrum urbis dūxit. 7. Ōlim haec gēns magnam potentiam inter gentēs Galliae habēbat, sed nunc potentia ejus est parva. 8. Hae nāvēs ā sociīs nostrīs missae sunt. 9. Hic annus longus vidētur quod ā patriā meā absum.

442.

VOCABULARY

annus, -ī, M., year

exul, exulis, M., exile

nāvis, nāvis, F., ship

neglegō, -ere, neglēxī, neglēc-
tum, neglect

officium, -ī, N., duty

potentia, -ae, F., power

sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm, allow

usque, adv., all the way, as
far as

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

443. 1. I have not neglected my friends, but they sometimes neglect me. 2. You will remain because this is your duty. 3. The exiles have sent letters to (ad) their friends. 4. The general has come, and the city has been fortified. 5. The legion was led to the mountains.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

444. We say that a meeting which is held every year is an *annual* meeting. In early times the writing of history was merely the recording of the events of each year and so the word *annals* was given to such records. Later the word came to mean historical accounts of any sort. An *annuity* is a sum of money which is paid each year. The abbreviation *A.D.* which is used with dates is for *annō Domini*, *in the year of our Lord*.

OPTIONAL DRILL

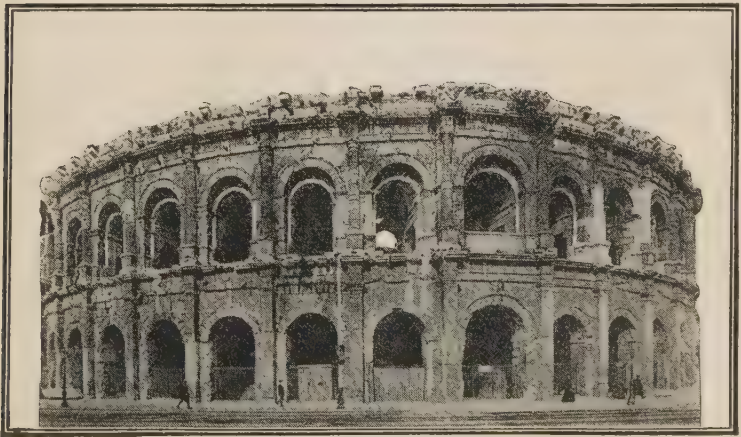
445. 1. Hujus annī; illius annī; illōrum annōrum. 2. Cēpit; captus est; captī sunt. 3. Bellum gessimus; bellum gestum est; bella gesta sunt. 4. Vēnimus; venīmus; vēnit; venit. 5. Rōmānī sociōs nōn neglēxērunt. 6. Rōmānī ā sociīs nōn neglēctī sunt. 7. Sonum audīvimus; sonus audītus est. 8. Imperātor epistulam mīsit. 9. Nōn solum audītis, sed etiam audīvistis. 10. Oppidum mūnītum est; castra mūnīta sunt.

446. 1. The ships of the enemy have been captured. 2. We have captured the ships of the enemy. 3. The citizens have defended the city. 4. The city has been defended by the citizens. 5. The shouts of the soldiers have been heard.

(a) Conjugate **neglegō** in the perfect active.

(b) Conjugate **mittō** in the perfect passive.

(c) Give the third person singular of **vincō** in the present and the perfect, active and passive.



A ROMAN AMPHITHEATER IN FRANCE

ELEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS LIV - LIX

annus, -ī	alius, -a, -ud	jaciō, -ere
centuriō, -ōnis	iniquus, -a, -um	mittō, -ere
clāmor, clāmōris	duo	mūniō, -īre
exul, exulis		neglegō, -ere
imperātor, -ōris		pōnō, -ere
lēgātus, -ī	āmittō, -mittere	prōcēdō, -ere
legiō, -ōnis	audiō, -īre	sciō, scire
nāvis, nāvis	capiō, -ere	sinō, -ere
nūntius, -ī	cupiō, -ere	tegō, -ere
officium, -ī	dēfendō, -ere	veniō, -īre
pars, partis	dūcō, -ere	vincō, -ere
pēs, pedis	excipiō, -ere	
potentia, -ae	expellō, -ere	graviter
sonus, -ī	gerō, -ere	usque
tenebrae, -ārum	interficiō, -ere	

THIRD CONJUGATION

Present active infinitive termination, **-ere**
 (Present indicative, **-ō** verbs, see section 403)
 (Present indicative, **-iō** verbs, see section 415)

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Present active infinitive termination, **-īre**
 (Present indicative, see section 432)

PERFECT TENSE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

(See sections 439, 440)

ABLATIVE OF MEANS

(See section 424)

LESSON LX

IMPERFECT OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH
CONJUGATIONS

447. The tense sign of the imperfect indicative in the third and fourth conjugations is **-bā-**, as in the first and second conjugations. The imperfect indicative of **dūcō** is formed exactly like the same tense of **moneō**, with (long) **ē** before **-bā**. Verbs of the fourth conjugation have **-iē-** before the tense sign.

dūcēbam, *I was leading*
dūcēbar, *I was being led*

audiēbam, *I was hearing*
audiēbar, *I was being heard*

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

Singular

dūcē'bam
dūcē'bās
dūcē'bat

dūcē'bar
dūcēbā'ris
dūcēbā'tur

audiē'bam
audiē'bās
audiē'bat

audiē'bar
audiēbā'ris
audiēbā'tur

Plural

dūcēbā'mus
dūcēbā'tis
dūcē'bant

dūcēbā'mur
dūcēbā'minī
dūcēban'tur

audiēbā'mus
audiēbā'tis
audiē'bant

audiēbā'mur
audiēbā'minī
audiēban'tur

a. The imperfect of **capiō** and other **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation is formed exactly like the imperfect of the fourth conjugation: **capiēbam**, **capiēbās**, etc.

READING EXERCISE

448. 1. In rīpā flūminis jacēbam et aquam spectābam. Flūmen celeriter fluēbat. Parvus frāter meus nōn longē ā rīpā in grāmine dormiēbat. Māter mea et sorōrēs sub arbore cēnam parābant.

2. In rīpā flūminis jaceō et aquam spectō. Flūmen celeriter fluit. Parvus frāter meus nōn longē ā rīpā in grāmine dormit.



Māter mea et sorōrēs sub arbore cēnam parant. Cēna mox parāta erit, et māter mea mē vocābit. Tum frātre[m] ex somnō excitābō, et ad cēnam properābimus.

3. Frāter meus in rīpā flūminis jacēbat et aquam spectābat. Aqua celeriter fluēbat. Nōn longē ā rīpā in grāmine dormiēbam. Cēna ā māt[er]e nostrā et sorōribus nostrīs sub arbore parābātur.

449.

VOCABULARY

arbor, arboris, F., tree
 celeriter, *adv.*, swiftly
 dormiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, sleep
 fluō, -ere, flūxī, flow
 grāmen, grāminis, N., grass

jaceō, -ēre, -uī, lie
 māter, mātris, F., mother
 somnus, -ī, M., sleep
 sub, *prep. with acc. or abl.*,
 under

a. When used in expressions which denote motion **sub** takes the accusative; when used in expressions which denote rest or existence it takes the ablative.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

450 1. The boy was sleeping on the bank of the river. 2. Sounds were (being) heard from the forest. 3. The Romans were fortifying their camp with a wall. 4. We were defending our country by arms. 5. The centurion was leading the legion in battle. 6. The Etruscans were waging war with the Germans.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

451. 1. What is meant by *arboreal* animals? 2. What is a *dormant* condition? 3. Give a noun which is derived from *dormiō*. 4. What is the relation in meaning between *fluid* and *fluō*? 5. What is the literal meaning of *subscribe*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

452. 1. *Dūcēbat; audiēbat; veniēbat; dēfendēbat; mittēbat.* 2. *Dormiunt; dormiēbant; mittunt; mittēbant; cupiunt; cupiēbant.* 3. *Cōpiae mittēbantur.* 4. *Arma ex eō locō celeriter movēbantur.* 5. *Parvum animal in grāmine jacēbat.* 6. *Sub arbore stābam.* 7. *Hoc flūmen per magnam silvam fluit.* 8. *Legiō ex castrīs prōcēdēbat.* 9. *Barbarī oppida Rōmānōrum capiēbant.* 10. *Militēs nostrī in Eurōpā bellum gerēbant.* 11. *Hostēs tum incolās ejus terrae expellēbant.* 12. *Multa tēla jaciēbantur.*

453 1. We were leading; we were being led; we were hearing; we were being heard. 2. The town was being defended bravely. 3. The centurion was coming swiftly. 4. The sentinel arouses the soldiers from sleep. 5. The weapons were lying in the grass. 6. Your brothers are sleeping under the trees. 7. The river flows from that mountain.

(a) Conjugate *vocō*, *jubeō*, *capiō*, and *mūniō* in the imperfect tense, passive voice.

(b) Decline *arbor*.

(c) Decline *grāmen*.



THE COLOSSEUM

LESSON LXI

READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM*

454. Quod aedificium hīc vidētis?

Colossēum Rōmānum vidēmus.

Quō nōmine Rōmānī ferē hoc aedificium appellābant?

Rōmānī ferē hoc aedificium amphitheātrum Flāvium appellābant.

Cūr id nōmen huic aedificiō est datum?

Ab imperātore (*emperor*) Rōmānō, Flaviō Vespāsiānō, et filiis ejus aedificātum est.

Eratne Vespāsiānus imperātor clārus?

Ita erat. Multa bella gessit et hostēs Rōmānōrum superāvit. Etiam in Britanniā bellum gessit.

Quid in Colossēo factum est?

Ibi hominēs cum hominibus aut cum animālibus pug-
nābant.

Suntne interfectī hominēs in hīs pugnis?

Multī hominēs in hīs pugnīs vulnerātī sunt, multi interfectī sunt.

Sed cūr hominēs ita pugnābant?

Multī Rōmānī hās pugnās spectāre cupiēbant.

Erantne in aliīs urbibus quoque amphitheātra?

Ita. Amphitheātra in urbibus Italiae et Galliae et aliārum terrārum aedificāta sunt.

Pugnābantne hominēs cum hominibus etiam in hīs amphitheātrīs?

Etiam in hīs amphitheātrīs hominēs pugnābant cum hominibus.

Quō nōmine illī hominēs appellātī sunt?

Illī hominēs erant *gladiātōrēs*.

Erantne gladiātōrēs cīvēs Rōmānī?

Minimē. Erant barbarī aut servī. Interdum in bellō captī erant.

455.

VOCABULARY

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
build

amphitheātrum, -ī, N., amphi-
theater

Colossēum, -ī, N., the Colos-
seum

faciō,¹ -ere, fēcī, factum, do,
make

ferē, *adv.*, generally; almost

Flāvius, -a, -um, Flavian

Flāvius Vespāsiānus, *the name*
of a Roman emperor com-

monly known as Vespasian

gladiātor, -ōris, M., a gladiator

pugna, -ae, F., fight, combat

OPTIONAL DRILL

456. Write Latin sentences in answer to the following:

1. Quis Colossēum aedificāvit?
2. In quā insulā Vespāsiānus bellum gessit?
3. Quī in Colossēo cum animālibus pugnābant?
4. In quā terrā est Colossēum?
5. Statne etiam hodiē Colossēum?

¹The passive of *faciō* is wanting in the present, imperfect, and future. These missing tenses are replaced by an irregular verb, the forms of which are not used in this book. The other tenses of *faciō* are regularly formed in the passive.

LESSON LXII

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

USE OF THE REFLEXIVE

457. In the sentence *He defends himself*, the object, *himself*, denotes the same person as the subject of the sentence. A pronoun which is thus used is called a *reflexive pronoun*. The reflexive pronoun is used in the genitive, dative, accusative, or ablative case to denote the same person as the subject of the sentence in which it stands.

REFLEXIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON

458. The reflexive pronoun meaning *himself, herself, itself, or themselves* is as follows:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
GEN.	suī	suī
DAT.	sibi	sibi
ACC.	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē
ABL.	sē or sēsē	sē or sēsē

a. The reflexives for *myself, yourself (yourselves), ourselves*, are the same as the words meaning *me, you, us*, in the different cases given above. **Mē nōn laudō**, *I do not praise myself*; **Tē nōn laudās**, *You do not praise yourself*. The accusative forms of these words have been given in previous vocabularies, and the other forms will be seen later.

READING EXERCISE

459. 1. Militēs Rōmānī fortiter sē dēfendunt, sed hostēs eōs premunt. Nisi auxilium dabitur, mox hostēs eōs superābunt. Militēs putant sē in magnō periculō esse. Sed cōsul periculum videt et duās¹ aliās legiōnēs mittit. Cōsul dux bonus est, neque officium suum umquam negligit.

¹Duās is the feminine accusative of *duo*.

2. Militēs Rōmānī fortiter sē dēfendēbant sed hostēs eōs premēbant. Cōsul dux bonus erat, neque officium neglegēbat. Militēs perīculum vidēbant, sed putābant sē tūtōs esse quod duae aliae legiōnēs veniēbant.

3. Numerus noster nōn est magnus, sed fortiter pugnābimus. Tūtī sumus quod ducem bonum habēmus. Aliae legiōnēs jam appropinquant, et hostēs superābimus.

460.

VOCABULARY

cōsul, cōsulis, M., consul

jam, *adv.*, now, already

nisi, *conj.*, unless

numerus, -ī, M., number

premō, -ere, pressī, pressum,

press, press hard

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think

suī, of himself, herself, itself,

themselves

umquam, *adv.*, ever

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

461. 1. Our allies were defending themselves, but they were demanding our aid. 2. My friend thinks himself to be in danger. 3. The leader of the enemy kills himself. 4. The boy wounds himself with a sword. 5. The boy defends himself bravely, but he is in great danger.

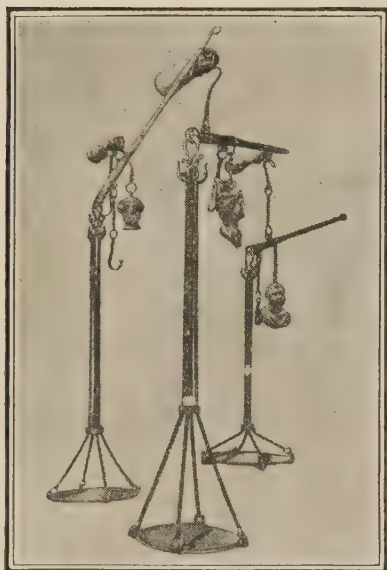
ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

462. 1. What is a *consul*, as a modern government official? What was the nature of the duties of a Roman consul? 2. From which stem of *premō* do we have English derivatives? 3. What is a *numeral*? 4. What is the meaning of the phrase *ex officio*¹?

OPTIONAL DRILL

463. 1. Sē laudat; sē laudant; mē laudō. 2. Sē cēlābant; sē cēlābat; tē cēlābās. 3. Quid putās? Quid putant? 4.

¹This phrase when used in English is pronounced *ex officio*.



ROMAN SCALES

Putant sē tūtōs esse. 5. Putat sē tūtum esse. 6. Officium meum nōn neglegō; officium nostrum nōn neglegimus. 7. Neque cōsul officium suum (*section 307*) umquam neglegit. 8. Cōsul magnum numerum militum habet. 9. Nisi auxilium dabis, superābimur. 10. Amīcōs tuōs neglegēbās. 11. Militēs Rōmānī ab hostibus premēbantur. 12. Comitēs meī sē dēfendēbant. 13. Multae epistolae mittēbantur. 14. Castra tum mūniēbantur.

464. 1. He wounds himself; they wound themselves; you (*singular*) wound your-

self. 2. He wishes to defend himself. 3. We do not wish to defend him. 4. He saves himself; they save themselves. 5. This man loves himself. 6. He conceals himself; you conceal yourselves. 7. We conceal ourselves. 8. We saw a large number of small animals. 9. This man neglects his son. 10. Rome then had brave consuls.

(a) Conjugate **premō** in the imperfect and the perfect tenses, active voice.

(b) Decline together the words for *this duty*.

(c) Write the third person singular of **neglegō** in the present, imperfect, and perfect of the active voice.

LESSON LXIII

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS (Continued)

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

465. Verbs of the third and fourth conjugations are conjugated as follows in the future:

ACTIVE

Singular

dū'cam, *I shall lead*
 dū'cēs, *you will lead*
 dū'cet, *he will lead*

Plural

dūcē'mus, *we shall lead*
 dūcē'tis, *you will lead*
 dū'cent, *they will lead*

PASSIVE

Singular

dū'car, *I shall be led*
 dūcē'ris, *you will be led*
 dūcē'tur, *he will be led*

Plural

dūcē'mur, *we shall be led*
 dūcē'minī, *you will be led*
 dūcen'tur, *they will be led*

ACTIVE

*Singular**Plural*

ca'piam capiē'mus
 ca'piēs capiē'tis
 ca'piet ca'pient

PASSIVE

*Singular**Plural*

ca'piar capiē'mur
 capiē'ris capiē'minī
 capiē'tur capien'tur

ACTIVE

*Singular**Plural*

au'diam audiē'mus
 au'diēs audiē'tis
 au'diet au'dient

PASSIVE

*Singular**Plural*

au'diar audiē'mur
 audiē'ris audiē'minī
 audiē'tur audien'tur

TENSE SIGN OF THE FUTURE

466. We have seen that in the first and second conjugations the tense sign of the future is **-bi-**. In the third and fourth conjugations the future tense sign is **-ē-**, which is replaced by **-a-** in the first person singular. The **ē** becomes short before the person endings **-t**, **-nt**, and **-ntur**.

READING EXERCISE: *LOCUS CASTRORUM*

467. Castra nostra nōn longē ab illō monte pōnēmus. Castra vāllō mūniēmus, quod hostēs nōn longē absunt. Castella erunt, et vigilēs ex castellīs spectābunt. Arma parāta habēbimus, et sī hostēs ad castra venient, eōs repellēmus. Rēx hostium cōpiās suās dūcit et magnum numerum sociōrum habet. Hī sociī sunt barbarī.

Explōrātōrēs nostrī in silvā latent et iter hostium spectant. Inter castra nostra et hostēs est flūmen altum, et hostēs nullās nāvēs habent. Sed nōn longē ab hōc locō est pōns in flūmine. Militēs nostrī hunc pontem fēcērunt, sed postea ex eō locō repulsi sunt, et hostēs nunc ad ripam nostram appropinquant.

463.

VOCABULARY

castellum, -ī, N., fort, redoubt	repellō, -ere, reppulī, repul-
explōrātor, -ōris, M., scout	sum, drive back, repel
pōns, pontis, -ium, M., bridge	sī, conj., if
postea, adv., afterwards	

COMPLETION EXERCISE

469. 1. Explōrātōrēs cōpiās nostrās per silvam dūc— (*will lead*). 2. Multī militēs in proeliō interfici— (*will be killed*). 3. Sonum proeliū ex hōc locō audi— (*we shall hear*). 4. Nūntius ad oppidum statim mittē—. 5. Cōsul periculum vidē— (*will see*), sed officium suum nōn negleg— (*will not neglect*).



FORTIFYING A ROMAN CAMP

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

470. 1. What is a *castle*? What do you suppose was originally the chief characteristic of such a building? 2. What is the difference between the meaning of *repellent* and *repulsive*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

471. 1. Dūcēmus; audiēmus; capiēmus; faciēmus; repellēmus. 2. Putābit; vidēbit; dūcet; capiet; audiet. 3. Facit; faciet; fēcit; faciunt; facient; fēcērunt. 4. Explōrātōrēs veniunt; explōrātōrēs venient. 5. Hostēs repelluntur; hostēs repellentur. 6. Castellum mūniēmus; castellum dēfendēmus. 7. Postea nāvēs faciēmus. 8. Postea pontem faciēmus. 9. Explōrātōrēs inter arborēs sē cēlant. 10. Hostēs in silvā latent. 11. Barbarī repellēbantur; barbarī repulsī sunt. 12. Legiō per hōs montēs dūcētur. 13. Explōrātōrēs missī sunt; explōrātōrēs mittentur. 14. Hic pōns ā mīlitibus nostrīs factus est.

472. 1. They will lead; they will take; he will hear. 2. He will be led; he will be taken; they will be heard. 3. You (*singular*) make; you will make; you hear; you will hear. 4. The fort is defended; the fort will be defended. 5. We send scouts; we shall send scouts. 6. They will make ships; they are making ships. 7. They were making large ships.

(a) Give the third person singular of **habeō**, **faciō**, and **audiō** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the active voice.

(b) Give the present active infinitives of **laudō**, **moveō**, **mittō**, **mūniō**, with their meanings.

WORD STUDY VI

USE OF SUFFIXES

A suffix is a word element standing at the end of the word or at the end of the original element of the word. Thus in *conqueror* the syllable *-or* is a suffix.

It is not always easy to give definite meanings to suffixes. Usually they are not found as separate words but are only employed to give special meaning to the words of which they are a part.

THE SUFFIX *-tās*

From **cīvis**, *citizen*, there was formed another noun, **cīvitās**. This derived noun denoted the condition of a citizen, that is, *citizenship*. It was also used to denote the group of persons possessing citizenship and so came to mean *state*. In changed form it has come down to us as *city*. Similarly from **liber**, *free*, the noun **libertās**, *freedom*, was formed. The suffix **-tās** usually denoted *quality* or *condition*. The condition of being *free* (**liber**) was *freedom* (**libertās**). This suffix appears in English as *-ty*. It is to be seen in such words as *liberty*,

nobility, calamity, facility, opportunity, stability, humility, and many others.

THE SUFFIX -ĀLIS

The suffix **-ālis**, which usually gave the meaning *belonging to* or *connected with*, was often employed to form adjectives, and sometimes to form nouns. In English derivatives it appears as *-al*. Examples of English words with this suffix are *annual, national, equal, liberal, mortal*. The noun *animal* also has this suffix.

THE SUFFIX -BILIS

We have many words ending in *-able, -ible, or -ble* in which the suffix has the general sense of *able to be, or that may be or fit to be*. These come from Latin **-bilis**. Since this was often used in Latin words which had **a** or **i** before the suffix it developed in later use the forms *-able* and *-ible* as well as *-ble*. The Latin adjective **amābilis**, which has been seen in Word Study I, page 56, was formed from **amō** with this prefix. Other examples of English words are *culpable*, deserving to be blamed (**culpāre, to blame**), *credible*, that may be believed (**crēdere, to believe**), *tangible*, that can be touched (**tangere, to touch**).

THE SUFFIX -ŌSUS

The adjective **periculōsus**, *dangerous, abounding in danger*, belongs to a rather important group. The suffix **-ōsus**, denoting fullness, is seen as *-ous* or *-ose* in many English words. Such are *copious, bellicose, seditious, sumptuous*.

THE SUFFIX -TOR

Words ending in **-tor** denote a person who does an act. Thus *victor*, one who conquers, *captor*, one who captures.

Often these words appear in the same form in Latin and in English. Examples are *orator* and *dictator*.

There are numerous other suffixes used in the formation of

Latin words, many of which appear in English. Some of these English suffixes have changed greatly from their Latin form because they have come through French, and in careless pronunciation they had been greatly changed from their earlier form.

LESSON LXIV

REVIEW OF PRESENT INFINITIVES

PRESENT INFINITIVES OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

473. The present infinitives of the four conjugations of the regular verbs are formed as follows:

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
I. portāre, <i>to carry</i>	portārī, <i>to be carried</i>
II. monēre, <i>to warn</i>	monērī, <i>to be warned</i>
III. { dūcere, <i>to lead</i> capere, <i>to take</i>	{ dūcī, <i>to be led</i> capī, <i>to be taken</i>
IV. audīre, <i>to hear</i>	audirī, <i>to be heard</i>

a. In the first, second, and fourth conjugations the final **-e** of the active endings (**-āre**, **-ēre**, **-īre**) is replaced by **-ī** in the passive; in the third conjugation the entire ending (**-ere**) is replaced by **-ī**.

READING EXERCISE: POMPEII

474. In hāc pictūrā viam parvae urbis Italiae vidēs. Ea urbs est Pompeiī. Ōlim ea urbs flōrēbat et multōs incolās habēbat, sed nunc dēserta est. Aedificia urbis in magnā calamitāte dirūta sunt. Tēcta et templa concidērunt, et multī ex incolīs vītā amīsērunt. Nunc hominēs ex nostrā terrā et ex aliis terrīs ad hunc locum veniunt quod ruīnās ejus urbis vidēre cupiunt. Ex hīs ruīnīs multa (*see section 179*) dē vītā Rōmānōrum discimus.

Dē hāc urbe multī librī in nostrā linguā scrīptī sunt. Ūnus

ex hīs librīs fābulam fictam habet dē hominibus et fēminīs hujus urbis. Quis nōmen ejus librī dabit? Quis eum librum scripsit?



A STREET OF POMPEII

475.

VOCABULARY

concidō, -ere, concidī, col-
lapse, fall in ruins

dēsertus, -a, -um, deserted

dīruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rūtum,
destroy

fictus, -a, -um, fictitious

flōreō, -ēre, -uī, flourish, be
prosperous

Pompeii, -ōrum, m. pl., Pom-
peii, a city of ancient Italy

**ruīna, -ae, f. (often in the plu-
ral),** ruins

ūnus, -a, -um, one

a. The genitive and dative of **ūnus**, like the same cases of **sōlus**, are irregular and are not used in the exercises of this book.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

476. 1. To move; to be moved; I have moved. 2. To lose; to be lost; I have lost. 3. To be called; to be ordered; to be thrown. 4. The men will lose money. 5. The soldiers will place the camp between the forest and the river.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

477. From *ūnus* we have *unify*, *unite*, *unity*, *union*, and a few other words. The motto of the United States, *Ē plūribus ūnum*, means literally *One from many*—that is, one (nation) made up of many parts. The American colonies were originally independent of one another, and when they combined to form the United States they adopted this motto as indicating the manner in which the new nation had been formed.

OPTIONAL DRILL

478. 1. *Capiēnt*; *capiunt*; *capiēntur*; *capiuntur*. 2. *Laudārī*; *timērī*; *mūnīrī*. 3. *Mitti*; *mīsī*; *mittere*. 4. *Gerere*; *gerī*; *gessī*. 5. *Neglegī*; *neglēxī*; *neglegere*. 6. *Vincere*; *vincī*; *vīcī*. 7. *Expellere*; *expulī*; *expellī*. 8. *Dux noster ex castrīs prōcēdet*. 9. *Bellum cum hāc gente gerētur*. 10. *Gallī Rōmānōs ex hāc terrā nōn expellent*.



A ROMAN TOMB IN FRANCE

479. 1. I shall send this book to you at once. 2. We shall often hear about (*dē*) this city. 3. The danger will be great, and many citizens will lose their lives (*singular*). 4. You will learn much (*multa*) about the life of the Romans in this book. 5. The enemy will destroy the wall of the city.

TWELFTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS LX-LXIV

amphitheātrum, -ī	sui	premō, -ere <i>press</i>
arbor, arboris <i>tree</i>	dēsertus, -a, -um	putō, -āre <i>think</i>
castellum, -ī <i>fort</i>	fictus, -a, -um	repellō, -ere
cōsul, cōsulis <i>Cons</i>	ūnus, -a, -um <i>one</i>	celeriter <i>soon</i>
explōrātor, -ōris <i>scout</i>	aedificō, -āre	ferē <i>almost</i>
gladiātor, -ōris	concidō, -ere	jam <i>already</i>
grāmen, grāminis <i>grass</i>	dīruō, -ere <i>I</i>	umquam <i>ever</i>
māter, mātris	dormiō, -īre <i>sleep</i>	postea <i>after</i>
numerus, -ī	faciō, -ere <i>make</i>	sub <i>under</i>
pōns, pontis	flōreō, -ēre <i>flourish</i>	nisi <i>unless</i>
pugna, -ae	fluō, -ere <i>flow</i>	sī
ruīna, -ae	jaceō, -ēre <i>lie</i>	
somnus, -ī <i>sleep</i>		

INFINITIVES OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

(See section 473)

IMPERFECT TENSE, THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

(See section 447)

FUTURE TENSE, THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

(See section 465)

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

(See section 458)

LESSON LXV

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

MEANING AND USE OF THE RELATIVE

480. In the sentence *The man who lives in that house is a lawyer*, there are two clauses, *The man is a lawyer* and *who lives in that house*. The clause with *who* is not a question, but is almost equivalent to the statement *He lives in that house*. The word *who* serves to connect the two clauses and it is also a pronoun with *man* as its antecedent. A pronoun thus used is a relative pronoun.

THE ENGLISH RELATIVE

481. The English relative pronouns are *who*, *which*, and *that*. We use *who* to refer to persons, as in the sentence given in the preceding paragraph, and *which* to refer to things. Thus, *The building which you see is a theater*. We may use *that* for either persons or things. Thus, *The man that lives there is a lawyer*; *The building that you see is a theater*. We have previously seen *that* used as a pronoun of a different kind, but it is a relative when it can be replaced by *who* or *which*.

482. The forms of the Latin relative pronoun are as follows:

	Singular			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	<i>who, which</i>
GEN.	cujus	cujus	cujus	<i>whose, of whom, of which</i>
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	<i>to whom, to which, whom (as indir. obj.)</i>
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	<i>whom, which</i>
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	<i>(from, by, in, with) whom, which, etc.</i>

	Plural			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
NOM.	quī	quae	quae	who, which
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	whose, of whom, of which
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus	to whom, to which, whom (as indir. obj.)
ACC.	quōs	quās	quae	whom, which
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus	(from, by, in, with) whom, which

a. As explained in section 481, *that* will frequently be used in translation instead of *who*, *whom*, or *which*.

AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

483. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

Homō quem vidēs amīcus meus est, *The man whom you see is my friend.*

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

484. 1. Dux quī nunc est in castrīs est dux bonus; ducēs quī nunc sunt in castrīs sunt ducēs bonī. 2. Puer cujus patrem vidēs est amīcus meus; puerī quōrum patrem vidēs sunt amīcī meī. 3. Oppidum in quō habitō est parvum; urbs in quā habitās est magna. 4. Legiō quae missa est urbem dēfendet; legiō quam dux mīsit urbem dēfendet. 5. Explōrātōr ā quō sonus audītus est militēs monuit; explōrātōrēs ā quibus sonus audītus est militēs monuērunt. 6. Nūntius cui epistula data est appropinquat; nūntiī quibus epistulae datae sunt appropinquant.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

485. Write the Latin for the italicized words in the following sentences: 1. The *boy who* has the letter is your brother. 2. The *boy whom* I saw is your brother. 3. The *boy by whom* the

stone was thrown stands in the street. 4. The *woman who* warned the boy is your mother. 5. The *woman by whom* the boy was warned is your mother. 6. The *woman whom* you see is the girl's mother. 7. The *fort which* we took was on a hill. 8. The *fort which* was taken was on a hill.

OPTIONAL DRILL

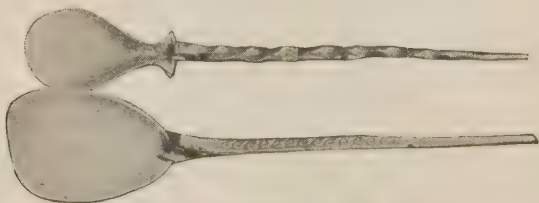
486. 1. *Īnsula* quam vidēs est Sicilia. 2. Is vir cujus pictūram habeo erat magnus imperātor. 3. Montēs per quōs iter fēcimus sunt altī. 4. Eae puellae quārum frātrēs sunt militēs in castra venient. 5. Militēs quī bellum in Galliā gessērunt eam terram iterum vidēre cupiunt. 6. Flūmen in quō natāmus est lātum sed nōn altum. 7. Hominēs ā quibus haec nāvis aedificāta est sunt servī. 8. Urbēs ex quibus patrēs nostrī vērunt sunt in Eurōpā.

487. In the following sentences give the gender and number in which the relative pronouns would stand in Latin: 1. The consul who has been elected is an honest man. 2. The tree which stands by the river is very old. 3. The spear with which I was wounded is sharp. 4. The legion which was sent to Africa is composed of veterans. 5. The ship in which we crossed the ocean is new. 6. The bird which was caught is an eagle.

(a) Decline the interrogative pronoun in the singular.

(b) Give the genitive singular of *is* and *quī*.

(c) Explain the case of the relative pronouns in the first four sentences of section 484.



ROMAN SPOONS OF SILVER

LESSON LXVI

READING EXERCISE: *URBS RŌMA*

488. Rōma est magna urbs Italiae. Flūmen Tiberis urbem in duās partēs dīvidit. Antīquitus tōta urbs erat in ūnā rīpā flūminis, et trāns flūmen erant agrī et tēcta agricolārum. Sed nunc aedificia in utrāque parte vidēmus. Intrā mūrōs sunt septem collēs. Ōlim Rōma erat parvum oppidum, et ūnum collem habēbat. Is collis, in quō prīma urbs erat, nōmen Palātium habet. In Palātiō erant tēcta in quibus rēgēs et multī virī clārī habitābant.

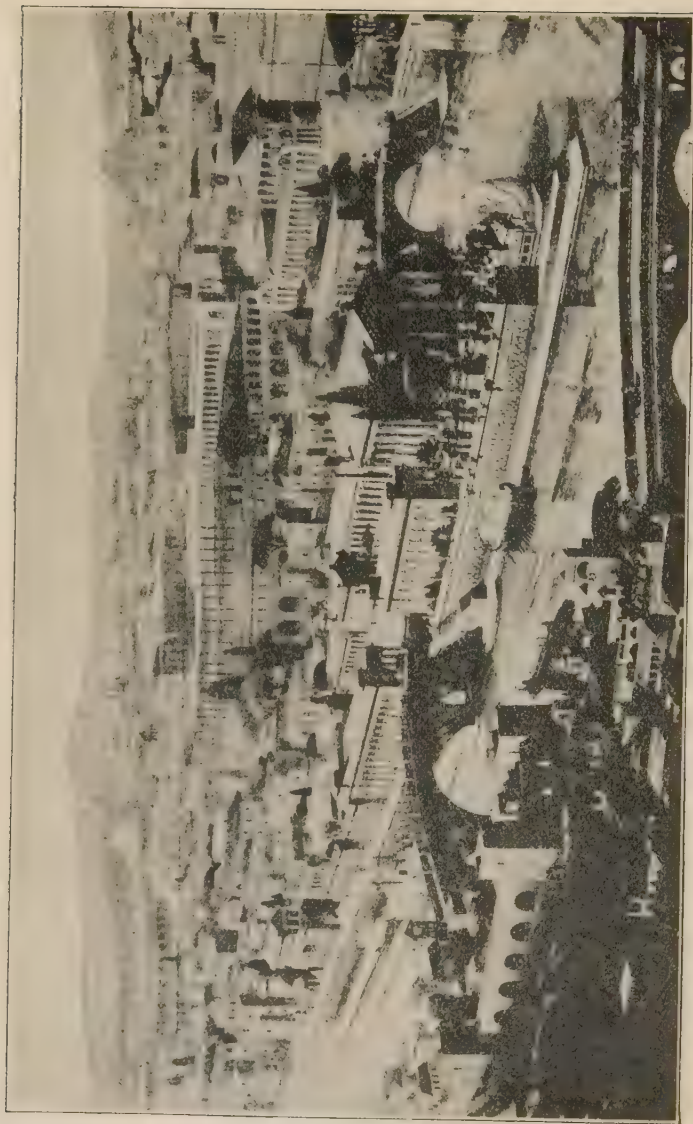
Magna urbs quam vidēs est Rōma. Eī quī in eā urbe habitant sunt Rōmānī. Flūmen quod urbem in duās partēs dīvidit est Tiberis. Collis in quō rēgēs et virī clārī tēcta habēbant est Palātium. Hominēs quōrum agrī et casae antīquitus trāns flūmen erant interdum cum Rōmānīs bellum gerēbant. Ille rēx cuius militēs primī Rōmam cēpērunt erat barbarus. Sed posteā barbarī superātī sunt ā Rōmānīs.

489.

VOCABULARY

antīquitus, <i>adv.</i> , long ago, in former times	prīmus, -a, -um, first
dīvidō, -ere, dīvisī, dīvisum, divide	septem, seven
intrā, <i>prep. with acc.</i> , within	Tiberis, Tiberis, <i>m.</i> , the Tiber (<i>river</i>)
Palātium, -ī, <i>n.</i> , the Palatine Hill	uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (<i>of two</i>), both

a. The genitive and dative of **uterque**, like the corresponding forms of **ūnus**, are not formed in accordance with the regular declension of adjectives. They do not appear in the exercises of this book.



VIEW OF ANCIENT ROME (RESTORATION)

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

490. Give the form of the Latin relative pronoun for the italicized words in the following exercise, then translate the sentences into Latin: 1. That city *which* you see is Rome. 2. The river *which* divides Rome into two parts is the Tiber. 3. The town *to which* Romulus gave a name was small. 4. The man *whose* house you see is my brother. 5. The messengers *whom* the general sent have been captured.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

491. 1. What is meant by *antiquity*? 2. Give three English derivatives from the participial stem of *dīvidō*. 3. What are *intramural* athletics? 4. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *palace*.

OPTIONAL DRILL


492. 1. Is quī (*he who*) prīmus ex nāve venit est frāter Sextī. 2. Flūmen in quō Rōmānī saepe natābant est Tiberis. 3. Ille imperātor quī hoc templum aedificāvit bellum in Britannīā gessit. 4. Vigilēs ā quibus hostēs vīsī sunt statim aliōs militēs excitāvērunt. 5. Locus in quō castra posuistis nōn est idōneus. 6. Oppida ex quibus vēnimus longē absunt. 7. Hominēs quōrum clāmōrēs audīvimus magnopere territī sunt. 8. Urbs in quā habitō multōs cīvēs bonōs habet.

493. 1. We shall place the camp on the hill which you see. 2. My sister has the book which you gave me. 3. The soldiers whom you saw on the hill are not Gauls. 4. The legions which are now in Gaul will be sent into Italy.

(a) Point out the relative pronouns in the second paragraph of section 488.

(b) Write the present and future of *dīvidō* in the active voice.

(c) Give the present passive infinitives of *dīvidō*, *terreō*, and *appellō*.



LESSON LXVII

READING EXERCISE: *COLLOQUIUM*

494. 1. Ubi est urbs Rōma?
Urbs Rōma est in Italiā.
2. Quod flūmen per Rōmam fluit?
Flūmen Tiberis per Rōmam fluit.
3. Quāle flūmen est Tiberis?
Tiberis est flūmen altum et lātum.
4. Quot collēs sunt intrā mūrōs?
Sunt septem collēs intrā mūrōs.
5. In quō colle erat urbs antīquitus?
Antīquitus urbs erat in Palātiō.
6. Quī posteā in Palātiō habitābant?
Multī virī clārī in Palātiō habitābant.



VIEW OF MODERN ROME FROM THE CAPITOLINE HILL

7. In quot partēs urbs dīvīsa est?
Urbs in duās partēs dīvīsa est.
8. Quī antīquitus agrōs et casās trāns flūmen habēbant?
Etrūscī agrōs et casās trāns flūmen habēbant.
9. Erantne (*see section 118*) Etrūscī amīcī et sociī populi Rōmānī?
Minimē; Etrūscī erant hostēs populi Rōmānī.
10. Quālis pōns antīquitus in flūmine Tibere erat?
Antīquitus erat pōns sublicius in flūmine Tibere.
11. Quī ōlim Rōmam cēpērunt?
Barbarī ōlim Rōmam cēpērunt et magnam partem urbis dēlēvērunt.
12. Quī erant eī barbarī quī urbem cēpērunt?
Barbarī quī urbem cēpērunt erant Galli.
13. Cūr Rōmānī urbem nōn dēfendērunt?
Rōmānī tum nōn satis magnum numerum militum habēbant.
14. Quī postea Gallōs superāvērunt?
Rōmānī Gallōs postea superāvērunt et multa oppida eōrum occupāvērunt.
15. Quālis urbs hodiē est Rōma?
Hodiē Rōma est urbs magna et pulchra.

495.

VOCABULARY

quālis, *neuter* quāle, what kind sublicius, -a, -um, resting on
of piles; pōns sublicius, a pile
quot, how many? bridge

a. Quot has the same form for all genders and all cases.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

496. 1. The cities which we saw were beautiful. 2. The towns which the Gauls captured were small. 3. The soldiers to whom we gave money are now in the fort. 4. These kings, whose names you have heard, were famous. 5. The scout

whom the general sent was captured. 6. To whom did you give money? 7. Whom did the general send?

OPTIONAL DRILL

497. 1. Miles cui arma dedimus sē dēfendet; mīlītēs quibus arma dedimus sē dēfendent. 2. Silva ex quā vōnistī est magna. 3. Oppidum ex quō vēnī est in montibus. 4. Hominēs cum quibus centuriō ambulābat sunt explōrātōrēs. 5. Oppida ex quibus hī servī vērunt in Galliā sunt. 6. Hōrum uterque est vir clārus. 7. Duo Gallī vērunt, quōrum uterque erat vir clārus. 8. Miles cujus scūtum vidēs captus est. 9. Barbarī, quōrum dux interfectus est, superābuntur. 10. Intrā eum locum; intrā vāllum castrōrum; intrā illās silvās. 11. Dīvidunt; dīvident; dīvisērunt.

498. 1. The hill on which we stand is the Palatine. 2. I saw many animals in the forest in which I was walking. 3. The mountains on which the barbarians live are high. 4. The messenger that (whom) I sent is a Gaul. 5. The messengers that (whom) I sent are Gauls. 6. The boy that (who) was lying in the grass was not sleeping.

(a) Write the principal parts of **capiō**, **cupiō**, **neglegō**, **gerō**, **pōnō**.

(b) Write the present active and passive infinitives, with their meanings, of **mittō**, **capiō**, and **mūniō**.

LESSON LXVIII

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

499. We have previously seen that many adjectives are declined like nouns of the first and second declensions. There is also a large group of adjectives which are declined like

nouns of the third declension. It is, of course, to be understood that an adjective is not necessarily of the same declension as the noun that it modifies.

500. There are three classes of third declension adjectives. Those with two endings in the nominative singular are declined as follows:

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. om'nis	om'ne	om'nēs	om'nia
GEN. om'nis	om'nis	om'nium	om'nium
DAT. om'nī	om'nī	om'nibus	om'nibus
ACC. om'nem	om'ne	om'nīs, -ēs	om'nia
ABL. om'nī	om'nī	om'nibus	om'nibus

a. In the masculine and feminine these adjectives are declined like **collis** (see section 338), except that the ablative singular ends in **-ī**. The neuter is declined like **insigne** (see section 346).

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES WITH THREE ENDINGS

There are a few third declension adjectives which have separate forms for the three genders in the nominative singular. In all the other forms the masculine and feminine are alike. They are declined as follows:

501.	<i>Singular</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ā'cre
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		
GEN.	ā'cris		ā'cris
DAT.	ā'crī		ā'crī
ACC.	ā'crem		ā'cre
ABL.	ā'crī		ā'crī

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ā'crēs		ā'cria
GEN.	ā'crium		ā'crium
DAT.	ā'cribus		ā'cribus
ACC.	ā'crīs, -ēs		ā'cria
ABL.	ā'cribus		ā'cribus

READING EXERCISE

502. 1. Illi militēs Rōmānī sunt virī fortēs. Arma eōrum sunt gravia et iter nōn est facile, sed celeriter prōcēdunt. Hostēs repellent et oppidum eōrum oppugnābunt. Omnēs hostēs fugient, sed multī in fugā capientur.

2. Oppidum nostrum ā fortibus Rōmānīs expugnābitur. Arma gravia habent sed celeriter veniunt, et mox aderunt. Fuga nōn erit facilis, sed cum omnibus cōpiīs nostrīs fugere dēbēmus. Illōs ācrēs Rōmānōs timēmus, quī saepe nōs in proeliō vicērunt. Auxilium ab (*from*) aliīs gentibus postulāre dēbēmus, quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēmus. Oppida nostra et omnis patria nostra in periculō sunt.

503.

VOCABULARY

ācer, ācris, ācre, fierce, eager	fugiō, -ere, fūgī, flee
facilis, -e, easy	gravis, -e, heavy
fortis, -e, brave	omnis, -e, all
fuga, -ae, F., flight	

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

504. 1. We saw an easy road through the mountains. 2. The spears of the barbarians were heavy. 3. All the enemy (*plural*) who remained in the town were captured. 4. These fierce barbarians will soon flee. 5. The leader of the brave Gauls was killed in battle.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

505. 1. Find a noun derived from **facilis**. 2. What is meant by *fortitude*? 3. Give the meanings of *omnipotent*, *omniscient*, and *omnipresent*. 4. Find from a dictionary what case of **omnis** is represented by the English word *omnibus*.

OPTIONAL DRILL

506. 1. In omnibus periculis; ex omni periculō; omnium periculōrum. 2. Gravēs gladii; gravia scūta; gravēs hastae. 3. Facilis fuga; facile iter; facilia itinera. 4. Ducēs Gallōrum et Germānōrum erant viri fortēs. 5. Haec saxa quae portāmus sunt gravia. 6. Acrēs barbari castra nostra oppugnābunt. 7. Militēs nostri ācrem ducem hostium cēpērunt. 8. In omni periculō fortēs esse dēbēmus.

507. 1. I gave all the money to my brother. 2. These boys are the sons of brave soldiers. 3. The slave was carrying a heavy book. 4. We saw the fierce barbarians who were attacking the city. 5. These men are brave, but they are not strong.

LESSON LXIX

READING EXERCISE

508. 1. Hī barbari sunt acrēs, sed nōn militēs boni sunt, quod imperāta non faciunt. Miles bonus nōn solum fortis est, sed etiam imperāta facit. Victōria facilis erit, quod militēs nostri ducem bonum habent, cujus imperāta facient.

2. Omnēs qui bene labōrant praemia accipient. Pecūnia eis dabitur, et laudābuntur. Ei qui male labōrant nulla praemia accipient, neque laudābuntur.

3. Hostēs portās urbis frangere cupiunt. Secūrēs habent et dura verbera dant. Sed portae sunt validae et cīvēs fortiter urbem dēfendunt. Cōpiae sociōrum appropinquant, et mox in urbem pervenient. Hostēs fugient.

509.

VOCABULARY

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, accept, receive	perveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, arrive
dūrus, -a, -um, hard	secūris, -is, -ium, F., ax
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, break, break down	verbera, -um, N. pl., blows (found also in a few singular forms)
imperātum, -ī, N., command; imperāta facere, obey commands, carry out orders	victōria, -ae, F., victory

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

510. 1. The brave lieutenant will lead the legion to the enemy's camp. 2. All the boys are working in the fields today. 3. Those victories were not easy. 4. My brother, who came from Europe, gave me a reward. 5. The book which you have is mine.



ARCH OVER A ROMAN ROAD

OPTIONAL DRILL

511. 1. Victōria facilis; victōriae facilēs. 2. Vir fortis; virī fortēs; virōrum fortium. 3. Militēs fortēs sunt; militēs ācrēs sunt. 4. Praemium jam accēpimus; praemia mox accipiēmus. 5. Omnēs amīcī nostrī in urbem pervēnērunt. 6. Hī virī clārī mox in Italiam pervenient. 7. Imperāta tua audīvimus. 8. Haec imperāta nōn facilia sunt. 9. Cūr in nostram urbem vēnistī? 10. Centuriō quī militēs dūcit vir fortis est. 11. Puer cuius librum habēs frāter meus est. 12. Vir cui praemium dedī prīmus in castra pervēnit.

512. 1. With the fierce soldier; with the fierce soldiers; of the fierce soldiers. 2. Of an easy flight; of an easy road; of a brave friend. 3. With all the citizens; of all the citizens; by all the citizens. 4. You will receive all the rewards. 5. The mountain on which I was standing was high. 6. The city from which I come does not fear your legions. 7. The companions with whom I arrived in the town (*accusative*) were tired. 8. All the tents are in the forest.

(a) Decline together **lēgātus fortis**.

(b) Decline together **victōria facilis**.

(c) Give the Latin for the italicized words in the following sentences: (1) This is the boy *whose* sister is ill. (2) I live on the island *which* you see. (3) The men *by whom* the work was done are skillful.

LESSON LXX

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

513. Some adjectives of the third declension have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders.

*fēlix, fortunate**potēns, powerful**Singular*

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	fē'lix	fē'lix	po'tēns	po'tēns
GEN.	fēli'cis	fēli'cis	poten'tis	poten'tis
DAT.	fēli'cī	fēli'cī	poten'tī	poten'tī
ACC.	fēli'cem	fē'lix	poten'tem	po'tēns
ABL.	fēli'cī	fēli'cī	poten'tī, -e	poten'tī, -e

Plural

NOM.	fēli'cēs	fēli'cia	poten'tēs	poten'tia
GEN.	fēli'cium	fēli'cium	poten'tium	poten'tium
DAT.	fēli'cibus	fēli'cibus	poten'tibus	poten'tibus
ACC.	fēli'cīs, -ēs	fēli'cia	poten'tīs, -ēs	poten'tia
ABL.	fēli'cibus	fēli'cibus	poten'tibus	poten'tibus

a. The neuter is given separately because it differs from the masculine and feminine in the accusative singular and in the nominative and accusative plural.

b. The adjective **vetus**, *old*, genitive **veteris**, has the ending **-e** in the ablative singular, **-um** in the genitive plural, and **-a** (not **-ia**) in the nominative and accusative plural.

READING EXERCISE

514. Is homō erat rēx potēns. Nunc exul est, et paucōs amīcōs habet. Longē ā patriā suā habitat. Cīvēs eum in patriā esse nōn sinunt, et filiū ejus in vincula coniectī sunt. Rēx nōn erat sapiēns, et cīvēs sunt fēlicēs quod exul est. Comitēs ejus eum rēgem appellant, sed rēx sine potentiā est.

Multī eōrum quī ōlim rēgēs in Eurōpā erant nunc sunt exulēs. At in patriā nostrā fuit nūllus rēx. In hāc terrā populus regit. Gentēs Americae fēlicēs sunt quod rēgēs neque habent neque dēsiderant.

515.

VOCABULARY

at, *conj.*, but

conjiō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum,
throw

fēlix, *gen.* fēlicis, happy

potēns, *gen.* potentis, powerful

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, rule

sapiēns, *gen.* sapientis, wise

vinculum, -ī, *N.*, chain

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

516. 1. Your friend is wise, and he gives you good advice (*cōnsilium*). 2. We have powerful allies, who will soon give help. 3. We are happy because we have many friends. 4. Wise men did not expect an easy victory. 5. The consul is the friend of all the citizens who love their (native) country. 6. The boy was brave, but he was not strong.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

517. 1. Find from a dictionary the source of *conjecture*. 2. What is meant by *felicity*? 3. What is a *potent* argument? 4. What is a *regent*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

518. 1. Ducis sapientis; virī sapientis; virī sapientēs; virōrum sapientium. 2. Amīcus potēns; amīcī potentis; amīcī potentēs; amīcōrum potentium. 3. Terra fēlix; terrae fēlicis; terrae fēlicēs. 4. Exulēs nōn saepe fēlicēs sunt. 5. In vincula eum conjiēcimus. 6. Amīcī ejus in vincula nōn coniectī sunt. 7. Populus eum in patriā manēre nōn sinit. 8. Populus eum regere nōn sinit. 9. Comes meus est fortis, sed



THE YOUNG AUGUSTUS

nōn est potēns. 10. Hic rēx quī nunc exul est ōlim erat potēns. 11. Potentia quam habēs nōn est magna. 12. Militēs ā quibus urbs capta est fortēs virī sunt.

519. 1. Of a powerful king; of a happy people; of a wise citizen. 2. Of wise citizens; of an unhappy exile; with an unhappy exile. 3. He will be thrown into chains; he has been thrown into chains. 4. They rule; they will rule; they have ruled. 5. He will be powerful in the city which they have taken. 6. Not all leaders are wise.

(a) Rewrite the first two sentences of section 514, changing the subjects to the plural.

(b) Give all the forms of the ablative singular of the following adjectives: **bonus**, **miser**, **fortis**, **omnis**.

(c) Decline together **terra fēlix**.

PATRIOTISM AND HONOR AMONG THE ROMANS

Many stories are told of Romans of early times who were famous for their patriotism, their honesty, and their bravery. Even at a time when selfishness and neglect of duty had become common, these heroes of a better time were still remembered. Perhaps some of these stories were only partly true, but at any rate they showed what sort of actions and character the Romans thought worth honoring.

One of those who were thus remembered was Cincinnatus the Dictator. A Roman army had been surrounded by the enemy, and the general in command seemed unable to find a way of escape. Cincinnatus was selected by the Roman senate to take charge and try to save the army. When the messengers came to tell him he had been chosen for this duty they found him plowing on his little farm. He at once left his work and took up the duty assigned to him. Within



THE ROMAN FORUM (RESTORATION)

sixteen days he had relieved the army, and then instead of continuing to hold his position as general, he went back to his farm and to his work.

At the end of the Revolutionary War in America the officers formed an organization which took its name from Cincinnatus, and from this organization the city of Cincinnati derived its name.

Another celebrated Roman of early times was Fabricius. Once when he had been sent on public business to a certain king, this king tried to bribe him to become his associate. Fabricius rejected the offer, saying, "If you think I am an honorable man, why do you try to corrupt me? If you think I am a scoundrel, why do you desire my friendship?"

At another time the physician of this same king, who was then at war with the Romans, came secretly to Fabricius and offered to poison the king if Fabricius would give him money for having done so. Fabricius arrested the physician and sent him back to the king with a report of what he had offered to do.

On still another occasion envoys from a foreign country came to his house and offered him money with the expectation of winning his favor. They found him dining on the plainest sort of food, such as a very poor man might have. Fabricius refused their offer, saying "As long as I can control my desire for pleasure I shall not be in need. Give your money to those who need it."

When Fabricius died he did not leave enough money to provide for the needs of his family, but the senate in appreciation of his character furnished enough to make up for what was lacking.

Many other stories might be told to show that the Romans recognized the dignity of honest work and that they set a high value on honor and patriotism.

LESSON LXXI

FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS

520. In the fourth declension the genitive singular ends in **-ūs**. The nominative singular ends in **-us** for the masculine and feminine and in **-ū** for the neuter. Most nouns ending in **-us** are masculine.

exercitus, M., army			cornū, N., horn		
<i>Singular</i>			<i>Singular</i>		
		<i>Endings</i>			<i>Endings</i>
NOM.	exer'citus	-us	cor'nū		-ū
GEN.	exer'citūs	-ūs	cor'nūs		-ūs
DAT.	exerci'tuī, -ū	-uī, -ū	cor'nū		-ū
ACC.	exer'citum	-um	cor'nū		-ū
ABL.	exer'citū	-ū	cor'nū		-ū
<i>Plural</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
NOM.	exer'citūs	-ūs	cor'nua		-ua
GEN.	exerci'tuum	-uum	cor'nuum		-uum
DAT.	exerci'tibus	-ibus	cor'nibus		-ibus
ACC.	exer'citūs	-ūs	cor'nua		-ua
ABL.	exerci'tibus	-ibus	cor'nibus		-ibus

a. The dative and ablative plurals of a few masculine and feminine nouns end in **-ubus**.

READING EXERCISE: RŌMA DĒFENDITUR

521. Rēx quī ex urbe expulsus est cum exercitū hostium hūc venit (*is coming*). Urbem capere et multōs occidere cupit. Multōs in vincula conicere etiam cupit. Impetum facere nunc parat. Nōbilēs quī eum ex urbe expulērunt perīculum suum magnum esse sciunt, sed nōn ignāvī sunt, et sē dēfendere parant. Nūntiī in omnēs partēs missī sunt, et

vigilēs in mūrō sunt. Rēx cum sociis suis nunc in cōspectū est. Hī mox usque ad rīpam ulteriōrem flūminis venient. Omnēs cīvēs cum armīs convenīre incipiunt. Cōsulēs adsunt, et omnēs prō patriā pugnāre parātī sunt. Fortis Horātius inter cīvēs pugnat. Postea dē fortī Horātiō audiēmus.



A ROMAN TEMPLE IN FRANCE

522.

VOCABULARY

cōspectus, -ūs, M., sight
 conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī,
 -ventum, assemble
 exercitus, -ūs, M., army
 Horātius, -ī, M., Horatius
 impetus, -ūs, M., attack

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -cep-
 tum, begin
 nōbilis, -e, noble; M. *pl.*, the
 nobles
 occidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsum,
 kill

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

523. Translate the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. The consul was the leader *of the army* which captured the city.
2. The centurion was killed *in sight* of the legion.
3. The

barbarians made many *attacks* on our camp, but they were repulsed. 4. Our (native) country has always been safe without large *armies*. 5. The fort was taken by the first *attack*.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

524. 1. What is a *convention*? 2. What is the meaning of *impetus* as an English word? 3. What is the *incipient* stage of a fever? 4. What is the meaning of *inception*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

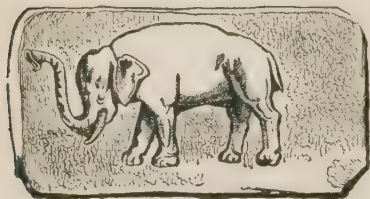
525. 1. In cōspectū meō; in cōspectū exercitūs; in exercitū. 2. Cum exercitū nostrō; cum exercitū Rōmānō; cum exercitibus Rōmānīs. 3. Impetus factus est; impetūs factī sunt; impetum faciēmus. 4. Cīvēs convenient; cīvēs convenīre incipiunt; cīvēs convenīre incipient. 5. Nōbilēs rēgem expulērunt; rēx ā nōbilibus expulsus est; rēgēs expulsī sunt. 6. Multōs occīdet; multī occīdentur; multī occīsī sunt. 7. Usque ad mūrōs vērērunt; usque ad urbem venient. 8. Patria vestra exercitum potentem habet.

526. 1. Of the army; from (ex) the army; from my sight. 2. They will make an attack; they will begin to make an attack; they are beginning (*see section 108 a*) to make an attack. 3. The army assembles; the army has assembled; the army was assembling. 4. The nobles have killed the king; the king has been killed by the nobles. 5. Many nobles have been killed.

(a) Decline together **exercitus noster**.

(b) Decline together **cornū longum**.

(c) Give the ablative singular of **mūrus**, **cōspectus**, **flūmen**, **insigne**.



ANCIENT ROMAN MONEY

THIRTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS LXV-LXXI

cōspectus, -ūs	fēlix, <i>gen. fēlicis</i>	accipiō, -ere
exercitus, -ūs	fortis, -e	conjiō, -ere
fuga, -ae	gravis, -e	conveniō, -īre
imperātum, -ī	nōbilis, -e	dīvidō, -ere
impētus, -ūs	omnis, -e	frangō, -ere
secūris, secūris	potēns, <i>gen. potentis</i>	fugiō, -ere
verbera, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	incipiō, -ere
victōria, -ae	quālis, -e	occīdō, -ere
vinculum, -ī	sublicius, -a, -um	perveniō, -īre
quī, quae, quod	quot	regō, -ere
ācer, ācris, ācre	sapiēns, <i>gen. sapientis</i>	antīquitus
dūrus, -a, -um	uterque, -traque, -trumque	intrā
facilis, -e	septem	at

ENDINGS OF THE FOURTH DECLENSION

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		<i>Neuter</i>	
-us	-ūs	-ū	-ua
-ūs	-uum	-ūs	-uum
-uī, -ū	-ibus	-ū	-ibus
-um	-ūs	-ū	-ua
-ū	-ibus	-ū	-ibus

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

(Declension of the Relative, see section 482)

(Agreement of the Relative, see section 483)

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

- (1) Of Two Endings, see section 500
- (2) Of Three Endings, see section 501
- (3) Of One Ending, see section 513

LESSON LXXII

CONJUGATION OF *EŌ* AND ITS COMPOUNDSPRESENT SYSTEM OF *EŌ*

527. The irregular verb *eō*, *go*, is conjugated in the present system in the indicative as follows:

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>
<i>e'ō</i>	<i>ī'bam</i>	<i>ī'bō</i>
<i>īs</i>	<i>ī'bās</i>	<i>ī'bis</i>
<i>it</i>	<i>ī'bat</i>	<i>ī'bit</i>
<i>Plural</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>ī'mus</i>	<i>ībā'mus</i>	<i>ī'bimus</i>
<i>ī'tis</i>	<i>ībā'tis</i>	<i>ī'bitis</i>
<i>e'unt</i>	<i>ī'bant</i>	<i>ī'bunt</i>

a. The principal parts are *eō*, *īre*, *īī*¹ or *īvī*, *itum*. The perfect is formed as in regular verbs: *īī* (*īvī*), etc. The second person of the perfect, however, is *īstī* in the singular and *īstis* in the plural. The third person singular is *īit*.

b. Compounds of *eō* (*redeō*, etc.) regularly form their perfects with *īī*, not *īvī*.

COMPOUNDS OF *EŌ*

528. There are many compounds of *eō*, such as *exeō*, *go out*, *redeō*, *go back*, *trānseō*, *go across*. They are conjugated like *eō*, with the syllable *ex-*, *red-*, *trāns-*, etc., prefixed. Thus, *exeō*, *exīs*, *exit*, etc.

¹Pronounced in two syllables, *ī'ī*.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

529. 1. Hī virī mare trānseunt et per multās terrās eunt.
 2. Nōs (*we*) quoque mare trānsībimus. 3. Aestāte ad montēs
 īmus, ubi casam habēmus. 4. Frāter meus aestāte saepe ad
 mare it. 5. Mox in urbem redībimus et in scholā erimus.
 6. Multī ex patriā suā exeunt quod aliās terrās vidēre cupiunt.
 7. Ille exul per multās urbēs ibat et auxilium postulābat.
 8. Impetus in (*on*) hostēs factus est quī flūmen trānsībant.
 9. In Americam nōn redibitis sed cum frātre vestrō in
 Britanniā manēbitis. 10. Per illōs montēs ire cupimus quod
 nūllam viam aliam habēmus.

530.

VOCABULARY

eō, ire, iī (īvī), itum, go

exeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go

forth, go out

mare, maris, N., sea

redeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, return

trānseō, -ire, -iī, -itum, cross

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

531. 1. The army is now returning from Gaul into Italy.
 2. The boys were going through the streets of the city with
 their fathers. 3. Our friends have returned from Spain and
 are now in the city. 4. The soldiers have gone out from the
 camp without weapons. 5. The citizens go out from the town
 because the enemy are approaching.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

532. 1. What is the meaning of *exit* as an English noun?
 2. What is meant by goods in *transit*? 3. What are *marine*
 animals?

OPTIONAL DRILL

533. 1. Ībit; ibat; ibis; ibās. 2. Īs; ire; ire cupit. 3. Redi-
 bant; trānsībant; conveniēbant. 4. Redībunt; trānsībunt;
 convenient. 5. Nostri militēs per multa perīcula iērunt.

6. Centuriō cum militibus ex castris exit. 7. Centuriō nōn sōlus exiit. 8. Illōs collēs trānsibimus et ad flūmen veniēmus.

534. 1. They go; they will go; they were going. 2. I go; I shall go; I was going. 3. He was crossing; he was returning; we were returning. 4. We crossed those mountains in winter. 5. Many returned with the messenger.



ROMAN MILLS

In such mills as these the grain was ground to make flour for bread.

LESSON LXXIII

READING EXERCISE

535. 1. Puer sērō ad tēctum redibat, et sōlus per silvam ibat. In omnēs partēs spectābat, quod periculum timēbat. Erat nūllum periculum in silvā, sed puer erat parvus, et nōn

saepe longē ā tēctō ibat sine patre aut mātrem aut frātribus. Tandem lūcem vidit, et currere coepit. Lūx in fenestrā erat, et māter puerum expectābat. Māter laeta erat quod puer tūtus redibat.

2. Cōpiae Rōmānōrum iter vertērunt, et nunc flūmen transeunt quod inter agrōs sociōrum et hostēs fluit. Sed tamen paucī militēs in hōc locō relictī sunt, quī oppida sociōrum dēfendunt. Post proelium tōtus exercitus hūc redibit.

536.

VOCABULARY

coepī, coepisse, began	sērō, <i>adv.</i> , late, too late
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, run	tamen, <i>adv.</i> , still, nevertheless
	tandem, <i>adv.</i> , at length
relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, leave	vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn

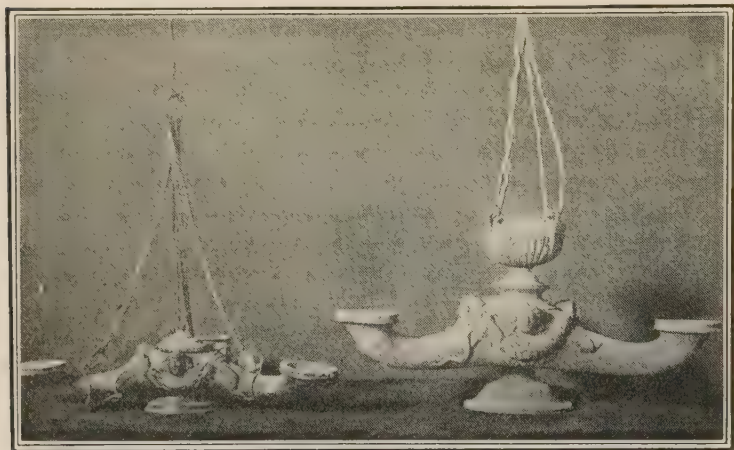
a. The verb **coepī** is commonly used instead of the perfect of **incipiō**.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

537. 1. I go because my (native) country calls me. 2. We have turned our course (march), and we shall cross the river. 3. All the soldiers who have returned are now in camp. 4. We were going through the forest in the evening with your father. 5. The small boy began to run, because he was afraid (he feared). 6. A few will cross the river which is behind the camp.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

538. 1. What connection in meaning can you see between **currō** and the noun *current* (i.e. the *current* of the river)? 2. What is the meaning of *relinquish*? 3. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *relic*. 4. What is a *tandem* team? 5. What is a new *version* of a story?



ROMAN LAMPS

OPTIONAL DRILL

539. 1. Currere coepī; trānsīre coepī; redīre coepī. 2. Tandem trānsīre coepērunt; tamen trānsiērunt; tandem tamen trānsiērunt. 3. Iter nostrum vertēmus; iter vestrum vertētis? 4. Relinquit; reliquit; relinquimus; reliquimus; relinquunt; reliquērunt. 5. Sērō redīre coepī.

540. 1. He runs; he will run; he has run; he began to run. 2. He will return late; he will return at length; nevertheless he will return. 3. I have left; I have been left; I leave; I shall leave. 4. They turn their course (**īter**); they have turned their course.

(a) Conjugate **veniō** and **redeō** in the future tense.

(b) Name the tense of each verb found in paragraph 2, section **535**.

(c) Rewrite the last two sentences of paragraph 1, section **535**, changing the verbs to the future.

LESSON LXXIV

EXPRESSIONS OF TIME

THE ABLATIVE OF TIME AT WHICH

541. The time at which or within which an act takes place is regularly expressed in Latin by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition.

Eō annō pater meus tēctum novum aedificāvit, My father built a new house that year.

a. Commonly these expressions of time have the preposition *in* or *on* or *at* in English: *in that year*; *on the same day*; *at the appointed hour*.

THE ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

542. In English we sometimes use a noun without a preposition to tell how long an act or a situation continues. Thus, *We stayed in the country three days*. We may also say *We stayed in the country for three days*. The expressions *three days* in the first sentence and *for three days* in the second mean exactly the same thing. In Latin a word which is thus used to denote duration of time is put in the accusative without a preposition. *Multās hōrās in insulā mānsī, I remained on the island many hours (or for many hours)*.

a. The ablative of time answers the question *When?*
The accusative of duration answers the question *How long?*

READING EXERCISE: VIGILIAE CASTRŌRUM

543. Apud Rōmānōs in bellō nox in quattuor vigiliās dividēbātur. Duae vigiliae ante mediam noctem erant et duae post mediam noctem. Primā vigiliā mīlitēs, quī vigilēs appellābantur, circum vāllum castrōrum dispōnēbantur. Hī in suis locīs usque ad finem primae vigiliae manēbant, tum

ad tabernacula discēdēbant, et aliī vigilēs veniēbant. Ita castra tōtam noctem ā vigilibus custōdiēbantur. Primā lūce militēs ē somnō excitābantur. Hostēs nōn facile castra Rōmāna nocte expugnābant, quae nullō tempore erant sine vigilibus. Barbari castra sua ita nōn custōdiēbant, et castra eōrum interdum ab hostibus noctū oppugnāta sunt et capta (sunt).

544.

VOCABULARY

apud, <i>prep. with acc.</i> , among, with	dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -po- situm, arrange, station
custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, guard	quattuor, four
discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -ces- sum, withdraw, go away	tempus, temporis, N., time
	vigilia, -ae, F., watch (<i>one fourth of the night</i>)

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

545. 1. In the first watch the enemy made an attack on the fort. 2. Your sister remained in Europe four years. 3. At daybreak we returned to the town with the army. 4. We walked all night, and we are tired.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

546. 1. What is a *temporary* appointment? 2. What is a *custodian*? Find another noun which is derived from **custōdiō**. 3. What is the meaning of the English word *vigil*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

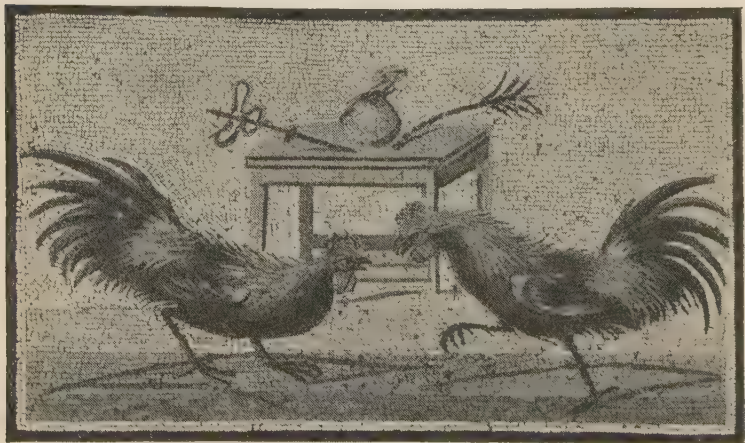
547. 1. Ūnam hōram dormīvit; multās hōrās dormīvērunt. 2. Multōs annōs patriam dēfendērunt; tōtam noctem castra dēfendērunt. 3. Eō annō hostēs vērērunt; eīs annīs perīculum erat magnum. 4. Militēs multās hōrās pugnāvērunt. 5. Eā

hōrā ex castrīs discessī. 6. Urbem tōtam noctem custōdiēmus; urbs tōtam noctem custōdiētur. 7. Vigilēs dispōnentur; vigilēs dispositi sunt. 8. Eō tempore apud exercitum eram; eīs temporibus exercitus erat parvus. 9. Quattuor vigiliae erant; vigiliae longae erant. 10. Alii vigilēs venient; alii vigilēs vērunt.

548. 1. At daybreak; in the first watch; in the first hour; in the first year. 2. They guarded the cottage the whole night. 3. The enemy did not come that night. 4. We waited many hours. 5. He lived in Italy four years. 6. At no time was the town without soldiers.

(a) Point out the ablatives and the accusatives in section **543** which express ideas of time.

(b) Write an English sentence containing an expression of time at which, and a sentence containing an expression of duration of time.



A FIERCE COMBAT

This mosaic picture is from Pompeii

LESSON LXXV

THE IMPERATIVE

USE OF THE IMPERATIVE

549. The imperative mood is used to express commands. Thus, *Close the door; Wait till I come.* The verbs *close* and *wait* are in the imperative mood.

THE IMPERATIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

550. The present active imperative of regular verbs of the four conjugations in Latin is as follows:

	I	II
SING.	portā, <i>carry</i> (said to one person)	monē
PLUR.	portāte, <i>carry</i> (said to more than one)	monēte
	III	IV
SING.	mitte cape	audī
PLUR.	mittite capite	audīte

a. The verbs **dīcō**, **dūcō**, and **faciō** have the irregular forms **dīc**, **dūc**, and **fac** in the singular of the present active imperative. In the plural they are regular.

b. The verb **dō** differs from other first conjugation verbs in that the **a** is short in the plural imperative, **date**. The singular, **dā**, is regular.

NEGATIVE COMMANDS

551. A command not to do an act is expressed by **nōlī** for the singular and **nōlīte** for the plural, followed by the infinitive of the act forbidden: **Nōlī** (**nōlīte**) **redīre**, *Do not return.*

THE IMPERATIVES OF **EŌ** AND **SUM**

552. The imperatives of **eō** are **ī** (*singular*), and **īte** (*plural*).

Compounds of **eō** form their imperatives like the simple verb. Thus **trānsī**, **trānsīte**, etc.

The imperatives of **sum** are **es** (*singular*) and **este** (*plural*): **Es fortis** (**este fortēs**), *Be brave*.

READING EXERCISE: **ETRŪSCĪ RŌMAM CAPERE TEMPTANT**

553. "Gladiōs, militēs, sūmite, et in (*on*) Rōmānōs impetum facite. Nam pontem sublicium frangere temptant, quī est inter nōs et urbem eōrum. Secūrēs habent et hīs secūribus lignum caedunt. Dux eōrum est fortis Horātius, quī inter primōs verbera dūra dat. Eum et comitēs ejus ex ponte pellite. Nōlite sinere Rōmānōs pontem ita frangere." Ita dux Etrūscōrum dixit, quī Rōmam capere et rēgem Rōmānum restituere cupiēbat. Is rēx Rōmānus erat exul. Rōmānī tum cōsulēs habēbant, quī exercitum dūcēbant et urbem regēbant. Ūnus ex hīs cōsulibus tum erat ignāvus, neque auxilium dabat. Sed omnēs civēs fortiter urbem dēfendērunt. Pōns frāctus est, et urbs ita servāta est.

554.

VOCABULARY

caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum, cut	restituō, -ere, restitui, resti- tūtum, restore
dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum, say	sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take, assume
nōli, nōlite, be unwilling, do not	temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, try
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, drive, rout	

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

555. 1. Give your book to the boy. 2. Send money at once. 3. Soldiers, break down the bridge with axes. 4. Citizens, defend your houses bravely. 5. Warn those men. 6. Boys, come at once to the river.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

556. 1. What connection in meaning can you see between *dīcō* and *dictionary*? 2. What is meant by *diction*? 3. What is the difference between *repel* and *propel*? 4. What Latin preposition is combined with *sūmō* to form the word from which *assume* is derived? 5. What is meant by the expression "to make *restitution*"?

OPTIONAL DRILL

557. 1. *Laudā*; *vidē*; *sūme*; *venī*; *appropinquāte*; *dēlēte*; *frangite*; *dormīte*. 2. *Urbem dēfendite*; *nōlite urbem dēfendere*. 3. *Gladium sūme*; *nōli gladium sūmere*. 4. *Statim redite*; *nōlite statim redire*. 5. *Lignum caede*; *nōli lignum caedere*. 6. *Incipe*; *properā*; *silē*; *mūnī*; *nōli incipere*; *nōli properāre*; *nōli silēre*; *nōli mūnīre*. 7. *Secūrēs sūmite et verbera date*. 8. *Verbera dūra nōlite dare*. 9. *Dicite*; *dicitis*; *dicētis*; *nōlite dicere*. 10. *Pelle*; *pellere*; *pellēs*; *pellēris*.

558. 1. Soldiers, guard the camp. 2. Soldier, guard the bridge. 3. Citizens, take weapons. 4. Citizen, take a sword. 5. Boys, do not neglect your brother. 6. Boy, do not neglect your brothers. 7. Slaves, obey. 8. Slave (*see section 162*), obey. 9. Approach, friends. 10. Approach, friend.

(a) Give the present active imperatives, singular and plural, of *ambulō*, *jubeō*, *frangō*, *cupiō*, *veniō*.

(b) Conjugate *sūmō* in the present and future indicative, active and passive.



ROMAN ROAD NEAR VEII

Veii was an important town of the Etruscans.

LESSON LXXVI

CONJUGATION OF *POSSUM*

559. The verb **possum**, *I am able* or *I can*, is irregular. It is a compound of **sum** and the adjective **potis**, *able*. The present system in the indicative mood is as follows:

PRESENT	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
pos'sum, <i>I am able, or I can</i>	pos'sumus, <i>we are able, etc.</i>
po'tes, <i>you are able, you can</i>	potes'tis, <i>you are able, etc.</i>
po'test, <i>he is able, he can</i>	pos'sunt, <i>they are able, etc.</i>
IMPERFECT	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
po'teram, <i>I was able, I could</i>	poterā'mus, <i>we were able, etc.</i>
po'terās, <i>you were able, etc.</i>	poterā'tis, <i>you were able, etc.</i>
po'terat, <i>he was able, etc.</i>	po'terant, <i>they were able, etc.</i>
FUTURE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
po'terō, <i>I shall be able</i>	pote'rimus, <i>we shall be able</i>
po'teris, <i>you will be able</i>	pote'ritis, <i>you will be able</i>
po'terit, <i>he will be able</i>	po'terunt, <i>they will be able</i>

a. The principal parts are **possum**, **posse**, **potuī**. The perfect is formed like that of regular verbs: **potuī**, *I have been able*, **potuisti**, *you have been able, etc.*

b. It must be remembered that *can* is equivalent to *am able (is able, are able)* and *could* is equivalent to *was able (were able)*:

<i>The men are able to see</i>	}	Hominēs vidēre possunt.
<i>The men can see</i>		
<i>The men were able to see</i>	}	Hominēs vidēre poterant.
<i>The men could see</i>		

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

560. 1. Pecūniam quam postulās ad tē mittere nōn possum. 2. Epistulam tuam legere nōn poteram, quod male scripta est. 3. Cum frātribus tuis redire nōn poteris. 4. Pōns ab hostibus frangī nōn potest. 5. Ex illō colle parvum oppidum vidēre poterimus. 6. Omnēs cōpiās hostium ex vāllō pepulimus, sed vāllum trānsire nōn potuimus. 7. Haec castra dēfendī nōn possunt, et statim discēdēmus. 8. Etrūscī flūmen trānsire nōn potuerunt quod nūllae nāvēs in eō locō sunt.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

561. 1. We cannot carry these heavy books. 2. Our companions have not been able to return today. 3. Horatius could not defend the bridge without help. 4. This river cannot be crossed without boats. 5. The general will not be able to leave soldiers in the town.

OPTIONAL DRILL

562. 1. Potest; possunt; potuit. 2. Poterō; potuī; possum. 3. Poterant; poterunt; potuerunt. 4. Labōrāre nōn potes. 5. Audire nōn poterat. 6. Juvārī nōn potest. 7. Magnae cōpiae mittī nōn possunt. 8. Parva puella epistulās scribere nōn poterat. 9. Potestis; poterātis; poteritis; potuistis.

563. 1. I cannot remain; I could not remain. 2. He will be able to reply; he has been able to reply. 3. They cannot have friends in this place. 4. The camp cannot be placed here. 5. We cannot see the river.



ROMAN RINGS

LESSON LXXVII

READING EXERCISE: CASTRA RŌMĀNA OPPUGNANTUR

564. Hostēs castra Rōmāna paene circumvērunt. Rōmānī ex castrīs effugere nōn possunt, sed fortiter sē dēfendunt. Herī duo centuriōnēs ex portā exiērunt et in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. Ūnus vulnerātus in castra sine auxiliō sē recipere nōn poterat. Sed alter hostēs reppulit et comitem suum servāvit. Signifer, vir fortis, quī erat in vāllō, interceptus est. Sociī auxilium mīsērunt, et Rōmānī eās cōpiās expectant. Sī mox venient, hostēs castra nōn capient. Rōmānī enim ex castrīs impetum in hostēs facient, et sociī ā tergō eōs oppugnābunt. Hostēs pellentur, et castra servābuntur.

565.

VOCABULARY

alter, altera, alterum, the
other

circumveniō, -venīre, -vērī,
-ventum, surround

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, escape

enim, conj., for (*never stands
first in its clause*)

paene, *adv.*, almost

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -cep-
tum, take back; sē recipere,
withdraw, retreat

signifer, signiferī, m., stand-
ard-bearer

a. The genitive and dative of **alter** are not formed in accordance with the declension of regular adjectives of the first and second declensions. They are not used in the exercises of this book.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

566. 1. I cannot hear you from this place. 2. We were able to cross the river, but we were not able to capture the camp. 3. The army of the enemy could not escape. 4. The citizens who have arms will be able to defend themselves. 5. Why do

you not go? Answer me (*indirect object*) at once. 6. The sound of the horses' feet in the street can be heard from (**ex**) this place.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

567. 1. What is an *alternative* route? 2. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *circumvent*. 3. What is the meaning of the statement "He was the *recipient* of much praise"?

OPTIONAL DRILL

568. 1. Effugere possum; effugere poteram; effugere poterō. 2. Exīre potest; exīre poterat; exīre poterit. 3. Circumvenīre possunt; circumvenīre poterant; circumvenīre poterunt. 4. Signifer sē recipit; signiferī sē recipiunt; signifer sē recipere potest. 5. Paene circumventī sumus; paene circumventī sunt. 6. Alter exit; alter exīre potest. 7. Quis effugit? Quis effūgit? 8. Discēdere potuī; discēdere potuistī. 9. Trānsire potes; trānsire possunt; trānsire poterās.



A STANDARD BEARER

569. 1. They can see; they could see; they will be able to see. 2. He can escape; he could escape; he will be able to escape. 3. He was withdrawing; they were withdrawing; they will be able to withdraw. 4. We can capture the camp; we shall capture the camp. 5. They can break down the bridge; they will be able

to break down the bridge. 6. They have been able to cross.

(a) Conjugate **possum** in the perfect, giving the meanings.

(b) Give the third person singular and plural of **possum** in all the tenses which have been studied.

(c) Conjugate **exeō** in the future tense.

FOURTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS LXXII-LXXVII

mare, maris <i>s</i>	dīcō, -ere <i>say</i>	restituō, -ere <i>rest</i>
signifer, -ī	discēdō, -ere	sūmō, -ere
tempus, temporis <i>time</i>	dispōnō, -ere	temptō, -āre <i>try</i>
vigilia, -ae	effugiō, -ere	trānseō, -īre
alter, altera, alterum <i>the</i>	eō, īre	vertō, -ere
quattuor <i>four</i>	exeō, exīre	paene
caedō, -ere <i>cut</i>	nōlī, nōlīter	sērō
circumveniō, -īre <i>surround</i>	pellō, -ere <i>drive</i>	tamen <i>nevertheless</i>
coepī, coepisse	possum, posse	tandem
currō, -ere <i>run</i>	recipiō, -ere <i>receive</i>	apud
custōdiō, -īre <i>guard</i>	redeō, redīre	enim
	relinquō, -ere <i>leave</i>	

CONJUGATION OF EŌ

(See section 527)

CONJUGATION OF POSSUM

(See section 559)

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD

(See sections 549, 550)

EXPRESSIONS OF TIME WITH THE ABLATIVE AND THE ACCUSATIVE

(See sections 541, 542)

LESSON LXXVIII

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

THE USE OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS

570. Thus far the personal pronouns *I, you, he, etc.*, as subjects of the verb, have been indicated in Latin by the

person endings of the verb, **-ō, -s, -t**, etc. But when the importance of the subject is emphasized or a contrast is brought out between subjects which are not in the same person, a personal pronoun in the nominative is used in Latin as in English.

571. The other cases than the nominative are used as we should expect, except that the genitive of the pronouns of the first and second persons is not used to denote possession. The possessive adjectives **meus, tuus, noster, vester**, take the place of the genitive in expressions of possession. The forms of the genitive are not employed in the exercises of this book.¹

572.

DECLENSION OF *EGO* AND *TŪ*

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
NOM.	<i>ego, I</i>	<i>nōs, we</i>
GEN.	<i>meī, of me</i>	<i>nostrum or nostrī, of us</i>
DAT.	<i>mihi, to me, me (as indirect object)</i>	<i>nōbīs, to us, us (as indirect object)</i>
ACC.	<i>mē, me</i>	<i>nōs, us</i>
ABL.	<i>mē, (from, by, with) me</i>	<i>nōbīs, (from, by, with) us</i>
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
NOM.	<i>tū, you</i>	<i>vōs, you</i>
GEN.	<i>tuī, of you</i>	<i>vestrum or vestrī, of you</i>
DAT.	<i>tibi, to you, you (as indirect object)</i>	<i>vōbīs, to you, you (as indirect object)</i>
ACC.	<i>tē, you (as direct object)</i>	<i>vōs, you (as direct object)</i>
ABL.	<i>tē, (from, by, with) you</i>	<i>vōbīs, (from, by, with) you</i>

¹The use of these genitives and the distinction between **nostrum** and **nostrī** and between **vestrum** and **vestrī** will be seen at a later point in the Latin course.



GATE IN THE WALL OF MODERN ROME

ENCLITIC FORMS

573. When the ablative forms **mē**, **tē**, **nōbīs**, **vōbīs**, and also **sē** (section 458), are used as objects of the preposition **cum**, they have **cum** attached as a final syllable: thus, **mēcum**, *with me*, **tēcum**, *with you*, **nōbīscum**, *with us*, etc.

PERSONAL PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON

574. As has been previously seen, the demonstrative **is**, **ea**, **id**, serves as a personal pronoun of the third person, meaning *he*, *she*, *it*, *they*, etc. The nominative may be used for emphasis or when it is needed to make the meaning clear. Sometimes the forms of **hic** and **ille** are used instead of **is** as the pronoun of the third person.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

575. 1. Ego in urbe habitō, tū in parvō oppidō habitās. 2. Ego miles fui, frāter meus domī mānsit. 3. Pater tuus multōs librōs habet, sed tū nōn saepe librōs legis. 4. Comitēs tuōs vīdī quī tēcum ex Eurōpā rediērunt. 5. Homō quī nōbiscum in rīpā flūminis stābat avunculus meus est. 6. Amīcus tuus mēcum in scholā erat. 7. Mē nōn laudō, sed tū mē laudās. 8. Ex illō locō tēctum nostrum tibi mōnstrāre poterō. 9. Saepe ā tē invītātus sum, et venīre cupiō. 10. Nōli librum tuum in hōc locō relinquere.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

576. 1. I am alone today; you are with friends in the city. 2. Your father will remain in town with you. 3. My sister has the letter which was sent by you. 4. Come with us and you will be safe. 5. Many of your friends have not seen these mountains.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

577. An *egotist* is one who thinks and talks much about himself. A person of this sort is said to have an *egotistical* manner. The quality which he displays is *egotism*.

OPTIONAL DRILL

578. 1. Ego et tū semper amīcī erimus. 2. Tū pecūniam habēs, soror tua nūllam pecūniam habet. 3. Ego in Eurōpā fui, sed frāter meus Eurōpam nōn vīdit. 4. Illī barbarī bellum nōbiscum gerere nōn audēbunt. 5. Auxilium ā tē nōn datum est, et nunc auxilium tibi nōn dabitur. 6. Vōs in patriā nostrā habitāre nōn sinimus quod cīvēs bonī nōn eritis. 7. Urbs ā vōbīs fortiter dēfēnsa est.

579. 1. I am a citizen; you cannot be a citizen. 2. We cannot return to (in) Ireland with you. 3. These books

were given to your son by me. 4. The town cannot (is not able to) be captured by us.

(a) Decline the reflexive pronoun, **suī**.

(b) Conjugate **possum** in the present tense.

(c) Conjugate **eō** in the future tense.

LESSON LXXIX

READING EXERCISE: RŌMĀNUS ET GALLUS

580. 1. (*The Roman speaks.*) Ego Rŏmānus sum, tū Gallus es. Rŏmānī cum Gallis bellum gerunt, et exercitus noster agrŏs Galliae vāstat. Sed ego numquam ā tē injūriam accēpī, et nunc mēcum in urbe nostrā tūtō manēre potes. Post bellum in patriam tuam redīre poteris, et tēcum ibō.

2. (*The Gaul speaks.*) Sed uter patriam suam magis amat, is quī in terrā hostium tūtus manet, an is quī in bellō pugnat et tēcta et agrŏs cīvium suŏrum dēfendit? Ego tēcum tūtus esse possum, sed amīcī meī in periculō sunt, et in terrā hostium cum honōre manēre nŏn possum. Statim redīre et prŏ patriā pugnāre cupiō. Amīcī meī mē ignāvum esse putābunt sī in urbe tuā manēbō. Cum pāx inter Galliam et Rŏmam erit, iterum ego et tū amīcī erimus.

581.

VOCABULARY

an, *conj.*, or

honor, -ŏris, *m.*, honor

injūria, -ae, *f.*, injury,
injustice

magis, *adv.*, more

numquam, *adv.*, never

tūtō, *adv.*, safely

uter, -tra, -trum, which (*of two*)?

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

582. 1. I shall go to (in) Europe; you will remain in America.

2. We are good citizens; you are enemies of the country (*not*

terra). 3. Come with me, and I will show you a beautiful picture. 4. Many go to the mountains in summer. 5. We have not been helped by you (*plural*), and we shall not help you. 6. Who can carry these books?

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

583. 1. Find some other words besides *honor* which have the same spelling in Latin and in English. 2. Give an adjective which is connected in derivation with **honor**. 3. Give an adjective which is connected in derivation with **injūria**.

OPTIONAL DRILL

584. 1. Ego exhibō, frāter meus manēbit. 2. Tū labōrās, amīcus tuus nōn labōrat. 3. Mēcum manē; tēcum manēbō; nōbīscum manēbit; vōbīscum manēbimus. 4. Ego et tū pācem amāmus. Amīcī nostrī pācem nōn amant. 5. Injūriās timeō; injūriās timēmus; injūriās timētis. 6. Uter est amīcus meus?

7. Honor nōbīs (*see section 68*) cārus est. 8. Honor vōbīs quoque cārus est. 9. Pācem amāmus; patriam magis amāmus. 10. Tūtō trānsire potes. 11. Numquam tūtō redire poteris.

585. 1. I shall remain, you will go forth. 2. My brother walks with me. 3. My brothers walk with you (*singular*). 4. Your brother walks with us. 5. We shall cross safely. 6. They were crossing safely. 7. They will never be able to cross safely.



DRAWING ON THE OUTER WALL OF
A HOUSE IN POMPEII

ROME'S GREAT NAMES

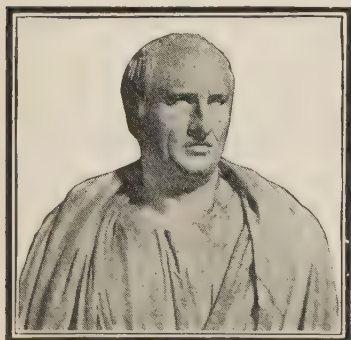
From the great number of famous Romans we may select the names of four who are of especial importance. They are Caesar, Cicero, Vergil, and Augustus. These are not only famous men of Rome, but they are among the great men of the world.

Caesar first won fame as a general. He conquered for Rome the country which is now occupied by France, Belgium, Holland, and Switzerland. As a result of his conquest the Latin language was established in this region, and it has continued ever since to be the language of the greater part of the inhabitants of these countries.



CAESAR

We have already learned that French is merely a modern form of Latin. In Holland and parts of Switzerland and Belgium, Latin was replaced by other languages.



CICERO

But Caesar was not merely a great general. He was also a statesman, and his plans for the improvement of Rome were of great importance. He was assassinated, however, before he had succeeded in carrying out all these plans. The month

of July has its name from Julius, a part of Caesar's name.


Cicero was one of the most celebrated orators of the world.

His speeches have been read through all the centuries since the time when he lived, and they have had an influence on the oratory of modern nations. He wrote works on philosophy which have been important. We have also a great number of letters which Cicero wrote to his friends, and from these we learn much of the life and history of his times. The Romans long considered that the best form of Latin was that which was most like the writings of Cicero.

Among the famous poets of the world Vergil has a prominent place. His great poem, the *Aeneid*, has been translated into many languages and has served as a model for poets of other countries. The *Aeneid* tells the story of a hero who, according to legend, was the ancestor of Caesar and also of the founder of Rome. Besides the *Aeneid* Vergil wrote a group of poems describing country life and farm work.

The fame of Augustus has come from what he did as a ruler of Rome. He put an end to the civil wars which had been going on in Italy for many years, and he established peace with foreign nations. He improved the appearance of the city by the erection of many temples and other fine buildings. We are told that he declared he had found Rome a city of brick and had left it a city of marble.

Important changes in the government were made as a result of the work of Augustus. We have a record of the honor paid to him by the Romans in the name of the month of August, which was named for Augustus, just as July had been named in honor of Julius Caesar.



LESSON LXXX

PAST PERFECT

MEANING OF THE PAST PERFECT

586. The past perfect tense represents an act as completed at some specified or suggested time in the past. The English past perfect has the English auxiliary verb *had*. Thus, *I had carried, you had carried, etc.*

FORMATION OF THE PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

587. The past perfect indicative active of the Latin verb has the tense sign **-erā-**, which is added to the perfect stem. The endings are used as in the imperfect. The **ā** of the tense sign is short before the endings **-m, -t, and -nt.**

Singular

portā'veram, <i>I had carried</i>	monu'eram, <i>I had warned</i>
portā'verās, <i>you had carried</i>	monu'erās, <i>you had warned</i>
portā'verat, <i>he had carried</i>	monu'erat, <i>he had warned</i>

Plural

portāverā'mus, <i>we had carried</i>	monuerā'mus, <i>we had warned</i>
portāverā'tis, <i>you had carried</i>	monuerā'tis, <i>you had warned</i>
portā'verant, <i>they had carried</i>	monu'erant, <i>they had warned</i>

THE PAST PERFECT PASSIVE

588. The past perfect in the passive voice is formed by combining the perfect participle with the imperfect tense of *sum*.

Singular

portā'tus eram, <i>I had been carried</i>
portā'tus erās, <i>you had been carried</i>
portā'tus erat, <i>he had been carried</i>

Singular

mo'nitus eram
mo'nitus erās
mo'nitus erat

Plural

portā'tī erāmus, *we had been carried*
 portā'tī erātis, *you had been carried*
 portā'tī erant, *they had been carried*

Plural

mo'nitī erāmus
 mo'nitī erātis
 mo'nitī erant

READING EXERCISE: *HOSTĒS REPELLUNTUR*

589. Ipse imperātor hostium illum locum cum multīs mīlitibus tenēbat. Parvum agmen circum montem miserat, et hoc agmen ad castra nostra appropinquābat. Sōl surgere incipiēbat, sed vigilēs loca sua nōndum reliquerant. Militēs nostrī, quī excitātī erant, signa et arma hostium vīdērunt, et multī celeriter ad vāllum cucurrērunt. Aliī portās aperuērunt et in hostēs impetum fēcērunt. Hostēs nōn diū restitērunt, quod satis magnās cōpiās nōn habēbant. Castra sua petiērunt, sed multī in fugā interfectī sunt.

590.

VOCABULARY

aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tum, open

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self

nōndum, *adv.*, not yet

petō, -ere, petivī or petiī,

petitum, seek, ask for

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, resist

sōl, sōlis, *m.*, sun

surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēc-

tum, rise

teneō, -ēre, -uī, hold

a. Ipse is declined exactly like *ille* (see section 236) except that the neuter singular ends in **-um** in the nominative and accusative.

COMPLETION EXERCISE

591. Make the uncompleted verbs in the following sentences past perfects by supplying the tense sign and the person endings required by the sense of the sentence: 1. Saepe in eō locō sine periculō ambulāv—(*subject "we"*). 2. Cūr puerōs nōn monu—(*subject "you"*) quī tēcum erant? 3. Legiō diū restit—, et multī interfectī erant. 4. Quis librum vīdit quem

in hōc locō reliqu—(*subject "I"*)? 5. Imperātor cum exercitū vēm—, et urbs tūta erat.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

592. 1. What is a *petition*? What is a *partition*? 2. What is a *solar* eclipse? 3. What are *surging* waves? 4. What is a *tenacious* memory?

OPTIONAL DRILL

593. 1. Petīveram; surrēxerās; tenuerat; aperuerant; restiterātis; petīverāmus. 2. Monitus erat; audītus erat; relictus erat; monitī erant; audītī erant; relictī erant. 3. Portam nōndum aperuerant; porta nōndum aperta erat; porta nōndum aperta est. 4. Resistit; restitit; restiterat; resistunt; restitērunt; restiterant. 5. Sōlem vīdimus; sōlem vīderāmus; in fugā interfectī sunt; in fugā interfectī erant. 6. Ipse rēx in fugā interfectus est. 7. Frāter ipsius rēgis interfectus erat. 8. Fuī, fueram, fuit, fuerat.

594. 1. We resist; we have resisted; we had resisted; he has risen; he had risen. 2. They have held; they had held; they had sought the camp; they had not yet sought the camp. 3. The sun had risen; the sun had not yet risen. 4. The soldiers had been killed in flight. 5. The consul himself had opened the gate. 6. The gate had been opened by the consul himself.

(a) Conjugate **possum** in the past perfect indicative.

(b) Decline together **ipse dux**.

(c) Conjugate **mittō** in the past perfect indicative passive.



ROMAN BUCKET

LESSON LXXXI

DECLENSION OF *ĪDEM*

595. The declension of *īdem*, *same*, is as follows:

	<i>Masculine</i>	<i>Singular</i> <i>Feminine</i>	<i>Neuter</i>
NOM.	ī'dem	e'adem	i'dem
GEN.	ejus'dem	ejus'dem	ejus'dem
DAT.	eī'dem	eī'dem	eī'dem
ACC.	eun'dem	ean'dem	i'dem
ABL.	eō'dem	eā'dem	eō'dem
<i>Plural</i>			
NOM.	ī'dem or eī'dem	ae'dem	e'adem
GEN.	eōrun'dem	eārun'dem	eōrun'dem
DAT.	eīs'dem or is'dem	eīs'dem or is'dem	eīs'dem or is'dem
ACC.	eōs'dem	eās'dem	e'adem
ABL.	eīs'dem or is'dem	eīs'dem or is'dem	eīs'dem or is'dem

a. The forms of *īdem* are seen to be for the most part identical with those of *is* with the syllable **-dem** added. Before **d** the final **-m** is changed to **-n**.

b. Occasionally *īdem* is used as a pronoun meaning *the same person* (neuter, *īdem*, *the same thing*). But it is commonly used as an adjective in agreement with a noun.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

596. 1. *Īdem amīcus; ejusdem amīcī; ejusdem exercitūs.*
 2. *Cum eōdem milite; cum eīsdem militibus; cum eīsdem nūntiīs.* 3. *Eundem ducem habēmus; eōsdem ducēs habēmus.*
 4. *In eādem urbe; in eīsdem urbibus; in eīsdem oppidīs.* 5. *In eō colle est oppidum; in eōdem colle est oppidum.* 6. *Frātre ejus puerī videō; frātre ejusdem puerī videō.* 7. *Eam legiō-*



A ROMAN HARBOR

nem mittēmus; eandem legiōnem mīttēmus. 8. Amīcī eōrum hominum sumus; amīcī eōrundem hominum sumus. 9. Patrēs nostrī ex eādem terrā vērunt. 10. Eās epistulās eīdem servō dedī.

eīdem duci.
597. 1. Of the same leader; by the same leader; by the same leaders. 2. From the same place; from the same places. 3. I told the story to the same messenger. 4. I told the story to the same messengers.

OPTIONAL DRILL

598. 1. Frātrēs tuī nōn eōdem librōs amant. 2. Titus et Sextus in eādem urbe habitant. 3. Vigilēs eundem sonum iterum audīvērunt. 4. Epistulam et librum eīdem puerō dedimus. 5. Nōn diū in eōdem locō manēs. 6. Patrēs nostrī ex eādem parte Eurōpae vērunt. 7. Rōmānī et Gallī ad idem oppidum properābant. 8. Librōs eōrundem poētārum legimus. 9. Hae legiōnēs ab eōdem imperātōre dūcentur.

599. 1. The Gauls and Romans did not have the same weapons. 2. We often walk with the same friends. 3. This is the same country to which we have sent soldiers. 4. We now fear the same dangers. 5. These boys are inhabitants of the same country.

(a) Decline together **īdem lēgātus**.

(b) Decline together **eadem urbs**.

(c) Give the accusative singular of **is** and **īdem** in all genders.

LESSON LXXXII

READING EXERCISE: RŌMULUS ET REMUS

600. 1. Animum attendite, puerī et puellae; fābulam vōbīs nārrābō. Ōlīm duo frātrēs urbem condere incipiēbant. Ūnus ex hīs frātribus erat Rōmulus. Frāter ejus erat Remus. Uterque nōmen suum urbī dare cupiēbat, et inter eōs erat

contrōversia, quod duo nōmina eidem urbī darī nōn poterant. Dēnique nōmen Rōma ex Rōmulō urbī datum est. Sed Remus erat irātus et mūrōs urbis irrīsīt, quod parvī erant. Tum ūnus ex comitibus Rōmulī Remum interfēcīt.

2. Dux meus est Rōmulus, et nōmen ejus huic urbī dabitur. Nunc urbs est parva, sed postea magna et clāra erit, et omnēs nōmen ejus audient. Cum urbs magna erit, magnōs mūrōs habēbit; hominēs tum eōs mūrōs nōn irrīdēbunt.

601.

VOCABULARY

animus, -ī, M., mind, spirit	dēnique, adv., finally
attendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, turn toward; animum	irātus, -a, -um, angry
attendere, give attention	irrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, laugh at, ridicule
condō, -ere, condidī, conditum, found, establish	Remus, -ī, M., Remus
contrōversia, -ae, F., controversy	Rōmulus, -ī, M., Romulus

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

602. 1. We are citizens of the same town, but we are not friends. 2. These two boys were running to the same place. 3. Letters were given to the same messenger by the lieutenant and the centurion. 4. The fields of Gaul were often laid waste by the same enemies. 5. We shall send the same soldiers again to the enemy's camp.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

603. 1. What is an *animated* manner? 2. What is a *controversial* manner? 3. What is meant by an *irate* parent?

OPTIONAL DRILL

604. 1. Hae urbēs ab eōdem duce conditae sunt. 2. Rōmulus et Remus nōn eundem numerum avium vidērunt.



THE WALL OF AURELIAN

3. Animum attendēmus et audiēmus ea quae dicis. 4. Inter eōs frātrēs erat magna contrōversia. 5. Comitēs Remī irātī sunt quod nōmen suī ducis urbī nōn datum est. 6. Nōn iterum meōs mūrōs irrīdēbis. 7. Dēnique locum idōneum vidērunt et in eō locō urbem condidērunt. 8. Hodiē magnam urbem vidēmus in eōdem locō in quō tum erat silva.

605. 1. I shall not send the same messenger again. 2. Wars were waged in Spain and in Italy by the same general. 3. There have been many controversies between these nations. 4. Finally peace was made and the army returned to (in) Italy. 5. These towns were captured by the same soldiers.

(a) Decline together **idem flūmen**.

(b) Decline together **idem impetus**.

(c) Give the genitive plural of **is** and **idem** in all genders.

LESSON LXXXIII

FUTURE PERFECT: THE PERFECT SYSTEM

MEANING OF THE FUTURE PERFECT

606. The future perfect tense represents an act as to be completed at some specified or suggested time in the future. Thus, *I shall have finished the work in two weeks.* In English the future perfect is used less frequently than the other tenses. In Latin it is used somewhat more frequently than in English.

FORMATION OF THE FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

607. The future perfect indicative active of the Latin verb has the tense sign **-eri-**, which is added to the perfect stem. The person endings are used as in the present tense. The **i** of the tense sign disappears before **-ō** in the first person singular.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>
portā'verō, <i>I shall have carried</i>	monu'erō
portā'veris, <i>you will have carried</i>	monu'eris
portā'verit, <i>he will have carried</i>	monu'erit
<i>Plural</i>	<i>Plural</i>
portā'verimus, <i>we shall have carried</i>	monue'rimus
portā'veritis, <i>you will have carried</i>	monue'ritis
portā'verint, <i>they will have carried</i>	monu'erint

THE FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

608. The future perfect in the passive voice is formed by combining the perfect participle of a verb with the future indicative of **sum**.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Singular</i>
portā'tus erō, <i>I shall have been carried</i>	mo'nitus erō
portā'tus eris, <i>you will have been carried</i>	mo'nitus eris
portā'tus erit, <i>he will have been carried</i>	mo'nitus erit

<i>Plural</i>	<i>Plural</i>
portā'tī erimus, <i>we shall have been carried</i>	mo'nitī erimus
portā'tī eritis, <i>you will have been carried</i>	mo'nitī eritis
portā'tī erunt, <i>they will have been carried</i>	mo'nitī erunt

THE PERFECT SYSTEM

609. The perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses make up the perfect system in the indicative mood. In the active these tenses have the following elements:

Perfect = perfect stem + special person endings (**-ī, -istī**, etc.)

Past perfect = perfect stem + **erā** + regular person endings.

Future perfect = perfect stem + **eri** + regular person endings.

In the passive they are as follows:

Perfect = perfect passive participle used with present tense of **sum**.

Past perfect = perfect passive participle used with imperfect tense of **sum**.

Future perfect = perfect passive participle used with future tense of **sum**.

READING EXERCISE: *VERBA MĪLITUM ANTE PROELIUM*

610. Ab omnibus partibus est silentium. Nox est obscura, quod lūna nōn fulget. Hostēs adventum nostrum nōn vidēbunt, et in castra eōrum perveniēmus antequam arma parāverint. Deinde impetum faciēmus et multōs capiēmus. Hostēs fugere nōn poterunt, quod castra circumveniēmus. Cum captivīs quōs cēperimus, urbem nostram in triumphō intrābimus, et omnēs cīvēs nōs propter victōriam nostram salūtābunt et laudābunt. Laetī urbem et amīcōs iterum vidēbimus. Longē ā patriā absumus et paene exulēs sumus.

Haec ante proelium erant verba mīlitum.

611.

VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, M., approach,
arrival

antequam, conj., before

captivus, -ī, M., prisoner

deinde, adv., next

fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, shine

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, enter

silentium, -ī, N., silence

triumphus, -ī, M., triumph

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

612. 1. We shall be happy, because we shall have seen our native country again. 2. I shall have walked for a long time, and I shall be tired out. 3. When you (shall) have returned, you will be unhappy. 4. The legion will have driven back the enemy, but the danger will remain.



A BARBARIAN

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

613. 1. Give a noun which is derived from **adventus**. 2. Complete the following outline of derivation by replacing the dash with a Latin verb: *captive*, **captivus**, —. 3. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *refulgent*. 4. What is a *triumphal* procession?

OPTIONAL DRILL

614. 1. *Fūgerō; intrāverō; fūgerit; intrāverit.* 2. *Lūna surget; lūna surrēxerit.* 3. *Sōl fulget; sōl fulgēre incipit.* 4. *Verba tua audīvimus; verba tua audiverimus.* 5. *Deinde explōrātor captus est.* 6. *Dēni-*

que militēs captī sunt. 7. Impetum fēcerimus; impetus factus erit. 8. Mox stellae fulgēre coeperint (*see section 536 a*). 9. Castra circumveniēmus; castra circumvenerimus.

615. 1. They will have fled; they will have arrived; they will have entered. 2. They will have taken; they had taken; they have taken. 3. We have been; we had been; we shall have been. 4. They will have founded a city; a city will have been founded. 5. They expect our arrival; our arrival is expected. 6. We shall make an attack before they arrive (shall have arrived). 7. There is silence in the city. 8. We hear the words of the leader. 9. We entered the city in triumph.

(a) Give the third person plural of **laudō** in the active voice in the six tenses which have been studied.

(b) Give the third person singular of **mittō** in the passive voice of the six tenses which have been studied.

(c) Conjugate **maneō** in the past perfect and future perfect, active voice.

FIFTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS LXXVIII-LXXXIII

adventus, -ūs <i>approach</i>	ego <i>i</i>	resistō, -ere <i>resist</i>
animus, -ī <i>mind</i>	tū <i>you</i>	surgō, -ere <i>rise</i>
captivus, -ī <i>captain</i>	idem, eadem, idem <i>same</i>	teneō, -ēre <i>hold</i>
contrōversia, -ae <i>contro</i>	ipse, ipsa, ipsum <i>self</i>	deinde <i>next</i>
honor, -ōris <i>honor</i>	aperiō, -ire <i>open</i>	dēnique <i>finally</i>
injūria, -ae <i>injury</i>	attendō, -ere <i>attend</i>	magis <i>more</i>
silentium, -ī <i>silence</i>	condō, -ere <i>condemn</i>	nōndum <i>not yet</i>
sōl, sōlis	fulgeō, -ēre <i>shine</i>	numquam <i>never</i>
triumphus, -ī <i>triumph</i>	intrō, -āre	tūtō <i>safely</i>
irātus, -a, -um <i>angry</i>	irrideō, -ēre <i>ridicule</i>	an
uter, -tra, -trum <i>which</i>	petō, -ere <i>seek</i>	antequam

DECLENSION OF *EGO* AND *TŪ*

(See sections 572, 573)

DECLENSION OF *IDEM*

(See section 595)

THE PAST PERFECT TENSE

(See sections 587, 588)

THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

(See sections 607, 608)

THE PERFECT SYSTEM OF VERBS

(See section 609)

LESSON LXXXIV

SYNOPSIS OF VERBS

FORMATION OF SYNOPSIS

616. A group of verb forms made up by taking any one person of a verb in all the tenses of one voice and number is called a *synopsis*. A synopsis may be in any person, in either number, and in either voice.

SYNOPSIS OF *PORTŌ* AND *DŪCŌ*

617. The synopsis of *portō* in the first person singular, active voice, and the synopsis of *dūcō* in the third person plural, passive voice are as follows:

*portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum*

PRES.

*portō**dūcuntur*

IMPF.

*portābam**dūcēbantur*

FUT.

*portābō**dūcentur*

PERF.	portāvi	ductī sunt
P. PERF.	portāveram	ductī erant
F. PERF.	portāverō	ductī erunt

READING EXERCISE

618. Gallia antiqua erat divisa in partes tres. Hae tres partes neque eandem linguam neque easdem leges habebant. Nullum commune imperium erat, sed multae gentes erant, quae reges aut duces habebant. Interdum hae gentes inter se bellum gerabant. Olim una gens quae ab hostibus victa erat socios accessit. Hi socii erant Germani, quorum fines erant trans flumen Rhenum. Germani auxilium dederunt, sed agros Gallorum occupaverunt a quibus accessiti erant. Denique ex Gallia a Romanis expulsi sunt, sed Romani in Gallia manserunt et Gallos superaverunt. De his bellis in libris Latinis legimus.



MAP OF GAUL

619.

VOCABULARY

antiquus, -a, -um, ancient

arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum,

summon, call in

commūnis, -e, common

imperium, -ī, N., power, gov-
ernment

lēx, lēgis, F., law

Rhēnus, -ī, M., the Rhine

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

620. 1. What are *antiques*? 2. What relation in meaning do you see between *lēx* and *legislature*? 3. What is an *imperious* manner? 4. Find in a dictionary the derivation of *empire*. 5. What relation in meaning do you see between *commūnis* and *community*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

621. 1. In Italiā antīquā; propter multās lēgēs; dē hāc lēge. 2. Vita commūnis; magnum imperium; lēx et rēx et pāx. 3. Expulī; expelli; arcessivī; arcessī. 4. Bellum gestum est. 5. Saepe dē hōc templō fāmam audīvī. 6. Imperium vestrum nōn probātur. 7. Imperium nostrum nōn probābātur.

622. 1. Give a synopsis of *laudō* in the third person singular, active voice. 2. Give a synopsis of *terreō* in the third person plural, passive voice. 3. Give a synopsis of *pōnō* in the third person singular, passive voice. 4. Give a synopsis of *veniō* in the first person plural, active voice.

LESSON LXXXV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON

623. Of the three adjective forms, *brave*, *braver*, *bravest*, we say *brave* is in the positive degree, *braver* in the comparative degree, and *bravest* in the superlative degree.

Most English adjectives end in *-er* for the comparative and

-est for the superlative, as in the comparison of *brave* just given. But some adjectives prefix *more* for the comparative and *most* for the superlative, instead of adding -er and -est. Thus, *powerful*, *more powerful*, *most powerful*.

LATIN ADJECTIVES IN THE THREE DEGREES OF COMPARISON

624. The forms of the Latin adjectives **altus**, **fortis**, and **fēlix** in the three degrees of comparison are as follows:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus, -a, -um <i>high</i>	altior, altius <i>higher</i>	altissimus, -a, -um <i>highest</i>
fortis, -e <i>brave</i>	fortior, fortius <i>-braver</i>	fortissimus, -a, um <i>bravest</i>
fēlix (gen. fēlicis) <i>happy</i>	fēlicior, fēlicius <i>happier</i>	fēlicissimus, -a, -um <i>happiest</i>

FORMATION OF THE COMPARATIVE

625. The comparative of Latin adjectives regularly ends in -ior for the masculine and feminine and -ius for the neuter. These endings are added to the base. Thus of **fēlix**, genitive **fēlicis**, the base is **fēlic-**, and to it the comparative endings are joined. Comparatives are third declension adjectives. Their declension will be explained in the next lesson. Only positive and superlative forms are used in the translation exercises of this lesson.

FORMATION OF THE SUPERLATIVE

626. The superlative is formed regularly by adding -issimus, -issima, -issimum to the base. Thus we have seen that from **fēlix**, base **fēlic-**, the superlative is **fēlicissimus**, -a, -um. In like manner the superlative of **potēns** (genitive **potentis**, base **potent-**) is **potentissimus**, -a, -um.

The superlative of any adjective is declined like **bonus** (see section 170).

READING EXERCISE

627. Sociis nostris grātiās agimus quod auxilium nobis dedērunt. Ex magnō bellō servātī sumus, et iterum in terrā nostrā est pāx. Nūper patria nostra in periculō erat, sed nunc tūtī sumus. Ab omnibus partibus vōcēs eōrum audimus quī propter finem bellī sunt laetī. Nunc ipsum nōmen bellī ōdimus. Ea terra est fēlicissima quae pācem habet.

628.

VOCABULARY

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, do,
drive

grātia, -ae, F., favor; grātiās
agere, to thank, to give
thanks to

nūper, *adv.*, recently

ōdī, ōdisse, hate

vōx, vōcis, F., voice, word

a. The verb **ōdī** has only the forms of the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses. But the perfect is translated as a present, the past perfect as an imperfect, and the future perfect as a future.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

629. 1. This plan is safest. 2. This centurion is the bravest, but he is not the wisest leader. 3. We saw the highest mountains of Europe. 4. The longest route (**iter**) is not the safest. 5. Who has the longest sword? 6. We have crossed the widest river of America.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

630. 1. What connection in meaning can you see between **agō** and *action*? 2. What is the meaning of *odium*? 3. What is *vocal* music?

OPTIONAL DRILL

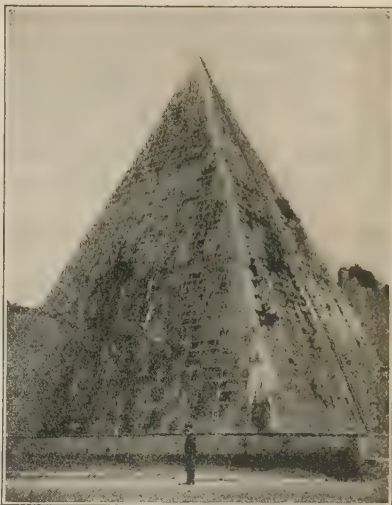
631. 1. Vir benignissimus; bellum longissimum; collēs altissimī. 2. Arbor altissima; rēx potentissimus. 3. Hic puer est amicus meus cārissimus. 4. Fortissimī militēs castra dēfendēbant. 5. Vir sapientissimus erit dux. 6. Grātiās tibi agō. 7. Grātiās mihi agis.

632. 1. We have seen the most famous cities of Europe. 2. The town is on the highest hill. 3. We have sent our bravest soldiers. 4. This man was formerly the most powerful king in that land. 5. Our friends thanked us.

(a) Write the comparison of *cārus*, *lātus*, *longus*, *potēns*, *sapiēns*.

(b) Decline *altus* in the positive and in the superlative.

(c) Decline *gravis* in the positive and in the superlative



THE PYRAMID OF CESTIUS

LESSON LXXXVI

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES: TRANSLATION OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

THE DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

633. Adjectives in the comparative degree are declined as follows:

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>lā'tior</i>	<i>lā'tius</i>	<i>lātiō'rēs</i>	<i>lātiō'ra</i>
GEN.	<i>lātiō'ris</i>	<i>lātiō'ris</i>	<i>lātiō'rum</i>	<i>lātiō'rum</i>
DAT.	<i>lātiō'rī</i>	<i>lātiō'rī</i>	<i>lātiō'ribus</i>	<i>lātiō'ribus</i>
ACC.	<i>lātiō'rem</i>	<i>lā'tius</i>	<i>lātiō'rēs</i>	<i>lātiō'ra</i>
ABL.	<i>lātiō're</i>	<i>lātiō're</i>	<i>lātiō'ribus</i>	<i>lātiō'ribus</i>

TRANSLATION OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

634. Sometimes a comparative is translated with *too* or *rather* instead of an English comparative, and a superlative with *very* instead of an English superlative:

flūmen lātius, a rather wide river.

mōns altissimus, a very high mountain.

READING EXERCISE: *PUER IN FLŪMEN CADIT*

635. 1. Parvus puer in flūmen cecidit. In periculō est quod flūmen est altissimum.

Potestne natāre puer?

Nōn potest. Fūnem dēmittite.

Ego in flūmen dēsiliam et eum iuvābō.

Potesne tū natāre?

Ita. Saepe in flūmine et lacū natō. Dā mihi fūnem et puerum servābō.

Hic fūnis est brevis. Dēmittite fūnem longiōrem.

Nunc puer fūnemprehendit. Trahite, amīcī, puerum iuvāte.

2. Omnēs natāre scīre dēbent. Sīc aut vītam suam servā-

bunt aut aliōs juvāre poterunt. Is quī bene natat nōn timet cum in flūmen cadit.

Sciuntne amīcī tuī natāre?

Ita. Nōnne nōs vīdistis in flūmine quod nōn longē ab oppidō nostrō abest? Ibi saepe natāmus.

636.

VOCABULARY

brevis, -e, short

fūnis, fūnis, -ium, M., rope

cadō, -ere, cecidī, fall

lacus, -ūs, M., lake

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-

prehendō, -hendere, -hendī,

sum, let down

-hēsum, seize, take hold of

dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, dēsultum,

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum,

jump down

drag, draw, pull

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

637. 1. This lake is very wide, but it is not deep. 2. This consul is wiser, but he is not braver. 3. This route is longer and safer. 4. You are happier now because you have friends. 5. We shall seek a safer place.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

638. 1. What is *brevity*? 2. What does a *tractor* do? 3. What is the meaning of *distract*? 4. What is a *prehensile*-tailed monkey?

OPTIONAL DRILL

639. 1. Hasta est longior quam gladius. 2. Nunc tūtiōrēs sumus quod sociōs habēmus. 3. Numquam collēs altiōrēs vīdī. 4. Aestāte noctēs sunt breviōrēs quam hieme. 5. Cum fortiōribus militibus; in colle altissimō; rēgēs potentiōrēs.

640. 1. I am now safer because I have more powerful friends. 2. My brother is happier in America than in Europe. 3. This rope is too short. 4. Your city is very famous.

(a) Write the declension of the comparatives of **longus** and **sapiēns**.

(b) Compare **benignus**, **brevis**, and **clārus**.

ROMAN DRESS

There are in existence many statues which show us the general appearance of the clothing worn by the Romans. We have also references in Roman books from which we can learn much of the manner of Roman dress.

The most important outer garment worn by men was not at all like a coat or any other article of dress ordinarily seen in modern times. It was called a toga and was a kind of wrap with no sleeves. Its shape and size varied somewhat at different periods, but in general it was rounded at the lower edge, while the upper edge was straight, and somewhat shorter than the lower. The sides sloped, and were rounded off at the bottom.

For a tall man the toga was perhaps about twelve feet long, possibly more. This made a rather bulky wrap when it was worn, and its arrangement was somewhat difficult. A slave who knew just how the folds were arranged would help the master in putting the toga on. The picture given here shows the Emperor Augustus wearing a toga which was probably a little larger than the one described above.



AUGUSTUS WEARING THE TOGA

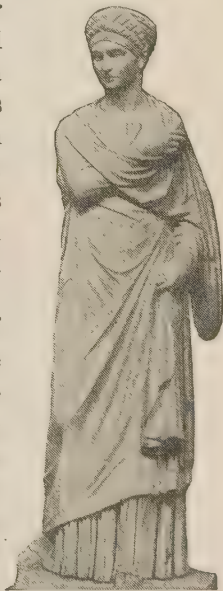
Under the toga was worn the tunic, a garment which had some resemblance to a very long, loose-fitting sweater. It was made of woolen cloth, however, and hence was not so heavy as a sweater. Usually the tunic had short sleeves. It was worn

with a belt through which it was pulled up at the waist so that it came about to the knees. Occasionally long-sleeved tunics which came down to the feet were worn, but these were not regarded as a dignified form of dress.

The toga was a formal article of dress and was not worn about the house on ordinary occasions or by those engaged in work. Probably a workingman of the poorer class would not own a toga. In the house the tunic alone was worn, and this was the dress of a man engaged in work.

Both the tunic and the toga were usually of wool and their color was the natural color of the wool. But the toga worn by the high officials of the government had a purple border, and the tunic worn by the senators and by a class of wealthy citizens known as knights had a stripe or perhaps two stripes down the front and back. Young boys also wore the toga with a border until they were about fifteen years old, when they laid this aside for the plain toga worn by men who were not officials. Generals who had won important victories and were given the honor of a special celebration at Rome wore on the occasion of this celebration a bright-colored toga.

The dress of women resembled that of modern times more nearly than did the garments worn by men. There were two tunics, the outer of which, the stola, resembled a dress with a long skirt coming to the feet. Either the inner or the outer tunic had long sleeves. A wrap called a palla was often worn, but it was smaller than the toga and may be compared to a large shawl of light weight draped about the upper part of the body. The material of the gar-



A ROMAN WOMAN
WEARING THE
STOLA AND THE
PALLA

ments worn by women was lighter and finer than for men's clothing. Sometimes they were of silk.

When in the city Roman men who were not engaged in outdoor work did not ordinarily wear hats. Part of the toga could be pulled up over the head as a protection when necessary. A broad-brimmed felt hat was worn when traveling, and the workman wore a woolen cap.

Shoes were of two classes. The first were merely a protection for the sole of the foot held in place by straps or thongs across the foot and about the ankle. These were ordinarily worn in the house and to some extent in the street. Shoes of the other class furnished protection for the entire foot and had the general character of a modern shoe, but they came up on the foot higher than an oxford.

LESSON LXXXVII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

ADJECTIVES IN -ER

641. Adjectives ending in **-er** form their superlative by adding **-rimus** (**-a**, **-um**) to the nominative singular of the masculine. Their comparative is formed like that of other adjectives.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
miser, -era, -erum	miserior, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
pulcher, -chra, -chrum	pulchrior, -ius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um

SPECIAL ADJECTIVES IN -LIS

642. The following adjectives ending in **-lis** form their superlative by adding **-limus** to the base:

facilis, <i>easy</i>	similis, <i>like</i>	humilis, <i>low</i>
difficilis, <i>difficult</i>	dissimilis, <i>unlike</i>	

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis, -e	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
humilis, -e	humilior, -ius	humillimus, -a, -um

Other adjectives ending in **-lis** form the superlative regularly with **-issimus**.

READING EXERCISE: *ULTIMUS RĒX RŌMĀNUS*

643. Ōlim Rōma rēgēs habēbat, sed ultimus hōrum rēgum, Tarquinius nōmine, propter superbiam suam et propter scelus filiī ex urbe expulsus est. Tum cōsulēs creātī sunt, neque postea Rōmānī rēgem habēbant. Sed alius rēx, quī erat amīcus et socius Tarquiniī, exercitum contrā Rōmānōs dūxit et urbem capere cupīvit. Tarquinius et filiī ejus cum hōc exercitū ad urbem vērunt. Hī hostēs ā Rōmānīs victī sunt, sed victōria nōn erat facilis. Postea Tarquinius cum filiīs et uxōre erat exul et in parvā urbe habitābat quae longē aberat. Itaque miserrimī (see section 634) erant quod in patriam redire nōn poterant. Ea parva urbs Rōmae (see section 68) erat dissimilima. Propter scelera Tarquiniī et filiōrum ejus Rōmānī semper nōmen rēgis ōdērunt.

644.

VOCABULARY

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, elect, choose; make	superbia, -ae, F., pride, haughtiness
contrā, prep. w. acc., against	Tarquinius, -ī, M., Tarquin, a king of Rome
dissimilis, -e, unlike	ultimus, -a, -um, last
itaque, conj., and so, therefore	uxor, -ōris, F., wife
scelus, sceleris, N., crime	

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

645. 1. Rome is the most beautiful city of Italy. 2. This king is very unhappy because he is an exile. 3. We live in a very beautiful town. 4. Victory will be very easy, and the enemy will be driven out. 5. These boys are very unlike.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

646. 1. What is an *ultimatum*? 2. Find from a dictionary the meaning of the phrase *pro and con*. 3. What English adjective is derived from *dissimilis*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

647. 1. Terra pulcherrima; iter facillimum; hostēs ācerrimī. 2. Patria tua et patria mea sunt dissimillimae. 3. Ducem fortissimum et ācerrimum barbarōrum cēpimus. 4. Haec via est brevissima sed nōn est facillima. 5. Rōmānī uxōrem Tarquinii ōderant. 6. Propter superbiam vestram expulsī estis.

648. 1. These soldiers are very unlike. 2. Your brother is the unhappiest of these boys. 3. The longest roads are often the easiest. 4. These islands are very beautiful.

- (a) Write the comparison of *similis*, *difficilis*, and *dissimilis*.
(b) Decline the comparative of *similis*.



ALTAR OF JUPITER

WORD STUDY VII

WORDS WITH MANY DERIVATIVES

Certain Latin words are of especial importance in English because of the great number of derivatives they yield. This is true of some Latin verbs which have been seen in the preceding lessons. The following lists of derivatives are not complete, but they serve to show the manner in which English has made use of some Latin words.

capiō, take

captive
captor
capture
captive
captivity
anticipate
accept
acceptance
acceptable
unacceptable
incipient
intercept
receive
recipe
reception

dīcō, say

diction
dictionary
dictum
predict
prediction
contradict
contradiction
edict
verdict
valedictory

dūcō, lead

duke
duchess
ductile
conduct
conductor
aqueduct
viaduct
conduce
reduction
abduction
introduce
introduction
induce
induction
produce

faciō, make, do

fact
faction
factor
faculty
benefactor
manufacture
confectionery

efficient
deficient
proficient
sufficient
beneficent

jaciō, throw

eject
reject
inject
dejected
object
subject
project

moveō, move

movement	locomotive	remove
movable	locomotion	immovable
mobile	demote	automobile
motor	promote	automotive
motive	emotion	
motion	commotion	

Exercise: Make similar lists for dō, veniō, and mittō.

LESSON LXXXVIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

ADJECTIVES COMPARED IRREGULARLY

649. There are a few adjectives which are compared irregularly. The most important are the following:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um <i>good</i>	melior, melius <i>better</i>	optimus, -a, -um <i>best</i>
malus, -a, -um <i>bad</i>	pejor, pejus <i>worse</i>	pessimus, -a, -um <i>worst</i>
magnus, -a, -um <i>large</i>	major, majus <i>larger</i>	maximus, -a, -um <i>largest</i>
multus, -a, -um <i>much</i>	—, plūs <i>more</i>	plūrimus, -a, -um <i>most</i>
parvus, -a, -um <i>small</i>	minor, minus <i>smaller</i>	minimus, -a, -um <i>smallest</i>

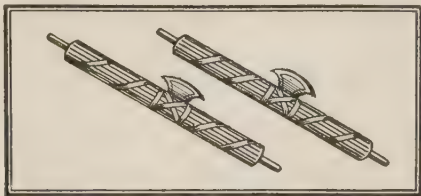
a. In the singular **plūs** is a neuter noun, with the genitive **plūris**. In the plural it is declined as an adjective with the forms **plūrēs, plūra**, etc. See Appendix, section 16.

READING EXERCISE

650. Prīmus cōsul Rōmānus erat vir fortis quī patriam amābat. Contrā hostēs in bellō fortiter pugnābat. Filiōs suōs interfēcit quod rēgem restituere cupiēbant. Patria eī erat cārīor quam filiī. Dēnique in proeliō interfectus est, sed in eōdem proeliō ipse filium Tarquiniī occīdit. Nōmen ejus semper apud Rōmānōs erat in honōre et poētae eum laudābant.

Rōma multōs cōsulēs habuit quī virī clārī erant. Prīmīs temporibus cōsulēs saepe exercitūs in bellō dūxērunt et cum hostibus pugnābant. Sed postea in urbe manēbant et aliī ducēs militēs in bellō dūxērunt.

Rōma nōmen clārum habēbat quod Rōmānī patriam amābant et quod multī ducēs eōrum erant virī fortēs et sapientēs.



FASCES

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

651. 1. Your plan is the wisest and the best. 2. Sicily is the largest of these islands. 3. I will give you a better book. 4. This man's reputation is very bad. 5. Our ships are larger than the Roman ships.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

652. 1. What is a *pessimist*? An *optimist*? 2. What is meant by *minor* faults? 3. What is *maximum* efficiency? 4. What connection can you see between **major** and *majority*? 5. What is the source of the English word *plural*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

653. 1. Maximum bellum; minimum saxum; pessimum cōsiliū. 2. Major exercitus; melior schola; pejor poēta. 3. Majōrēs cōpiās statim mittēmus. 4. Ille cōsul erat optimus dux. 5. Pessimum cōsiliū semper dās. 6. Tum meliōrēs cīvēs habēbāmus. 7. Perīculum nunc majus est.

654. 1. This school is the best but it is not the largest. 2. My cottage is on the smallest island. 3. This man is a worse citizen than his father. 4. I will give you a larger reward.

(a) Decline the comparatives of **bonus** and **parvus**.

(b) Write the comparison of **sapiēns**, **pulcher**, **similis**, and **magnus**.

SIXTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS LXXXIV-LXXXVIII

fūnis, fūnis	brevis, -e	ōdī, ōdisse
grātia, -ae	commūnis, -e	prehendō, -ere
imperium, -ī	dissimilis, -e	trahō, -ere
lacus, -ūs	ultimus, -a, -um	nūper
lēx, lēgis	agō, -ere	contrā
scelus, sceleris	arcessō, -ere	itaque
superbia, -ae	cadō, -ere	
uxor, uxōris	creō, -āre	
vōx, vōcis	dēmittō, -ere	
antīquus, -a, -um	dēsiliō, -īre	

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

(See section 624)

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES IN *ER-* AND *-LIS*

(See sections 641, 642)

IRREGULAR COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

(See section 649)

DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

(See section 633)

THE SYNOPSIS OF VERBS

(See sections 616, 617)

LESSON LXXXIX

FORMATION OF ADVERBS

THE DERIVATION OF ADVERBS FROM ADJECTIVES

655. In English we have many adverbs which are formed by adding *-ly* to adjectives; thus the adverb *slowly* is formed from the adjective *slow*, *briskly* from *brisk*, *carefully* from *careful*. Most Latin adverbs are also formed from adjectives.

ADVERBS FROM FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

656. Many adverbs are formed in Latin from first and second declension adjectives by adding *-ē* to the base. The following are examples:

lātus, *wide*lātē, *widely*cārus, *dear*cārē, *dearly*longus, *long*longē, *at a distance, far*

ADVERBS FROM THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

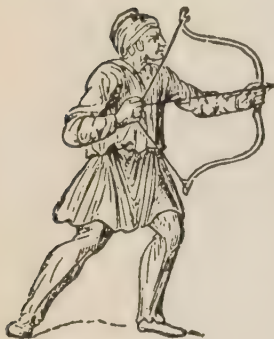
657. Many adverbs are formed from adjectives of the third declension by adding *-ter* or *-iter* to the base (*-er* if the base ends in *-nt*).

fortis, *brave*fortiter, *bravely*audāx, *bold*audācter, *boldly*sapiēns, *wise*sapienter, *wisely*

a. The neuter accusative of an adjective is sometimes used as an adverb; **facile**, *easily*; **multum**, *much*.

b. The adverb corresponding to **magnus** is **magnopere**, to **bonus** is **bene**. Some adverbs do not have a corresponding adjective: **saepe**, *often*, **semper**, *always*, **numquam**, *never*, and many others.

658. READING EXERCISE: A SUCCESSFUL HUNT¹



AN ARCHER

In silvā, ubi lentē ambulābam, magnum cervum vidī. Ventus flābat, et cervus sonitum pedum meōrum audire nōn poterat. Arcum meum celeriter cēpī et cervum primā sagittā vulnerāvī. Deinde alteram sagittam mīsī, et eum interfēcī. Nunc cervum umeris meis ad comitēs portō. Mox cēnam parābimus. Post cēnam in silvam redibō, quod tēctum ibi vidī. Sed nūllī virī in cōspectū erant. Itaque hunc lōcum explōrāre cupiō.

659.

VOCABULARY

arcus, -ūs, M., bow
cervus, -ī, M., deer
flō, flāre, flāvī, flātum, blow
lentē, *adv.*, slowly
lītus, lītoris, N., shore

similis, -e, like, similar
sonitus, -ūs, M., sound
umerus, -ī, M., shoulder
ventus, -ī, M., wind

a. Frequently a noun or pronoun in the dative is used with **similis**: **similis animālī**, like an animal.

¹While returning from Troy, Ulysses, one of the Greek heroes, was driven to the shore of a certain island. This reading exercise and those of the four following lessons represent scenes during his stay on the island.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

660. 1. The deer was running swiftly through the forest. 2. The man who was carrying the bow and arrows was walking slowly. 3. I killed the deer easily with my arrows. 4. The sailors bravely defended themselves and the ships. 5. We made an attack vigorously and we captured the camp.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

661. 1. Find from a dictionary the derivation of *arch* and *archer*. 2. What is the original meaning of *inflated*? 3. What is a *simile*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

662. 1. Celeriter ambulābam; lentē ambulābās; hostēs ācritēr pugnābant. 2. Comes tuus graviter vulnerātus est. 3. Fortiter Horātius pontem dēfendit. 4. Cōpiae rēgis nōn facile repellentur. 5. Villa nostra nōn longē ā silvā abest.

663. 1. We quickly prepared dinner. 2. Our leader does not easily carry the large deer. 3. The army comes slowly through the city. 4. The attack was made vigorously by the enemy at that time.

(a) Give the adverbs formed from **gravis** and **altus**.

(b) Point out the adverbs in section 660.

(c) Make a list of all the adverbs in the last three review lessons.

(d) Write the declension of **arcus** and **litus**.

LESSON XC

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

ADVERBS COMPARED REGULARLY

664. Adverbs derived from adjectives regularly have as their comparatives the neuter accusative singular form of the

corresponding adjective. Their superlative is made by adding **-ē** to the base of the superlative of the corresponding adjective.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē (<i>from lātus</i>)	lātius	lātissimē
ācriter (<i>from ācer</i>)	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile (<i>from facilis</i>)	facilius	facillimē

IRREGULAR ADVERBS

665. The following adverbs are irregular either in their formation or their comparison:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene , <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
male , <i>badly</i>	pejus	pessimē
magnopere , <i>greatly</i>	magis	maximē
multum , <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
parum , <i>little, too little</i>	minus	minimē

a. Other irregularly compared adverbs are given in the Appendix, section 18.

READING EXERCISE: A DISSATISFIED COMPANY

666. (*The sailors speak*). Rēctē ducem nostrum culpāmus, quī nōs hūc dūxit. Ēsurimus, neque cibum invenire possumus. Ducem bonum nōn habēmus, neque dī immortalēs eum amant. In silvam cum arcū iit, quia cervī in silvā sunt, sed ipse cibum habēbit sī cervum interficiet, et nōs ēsuriēmus. Patriam nostram reliquimus et in bellō cum eō (homine) pugnāvimus, sed nunc nōs dēseruit. Nāvem parābimus et ad patriam redībimus. Ibi amīcī nōs expectant, et hī nōbīs cibum dabunt. Sī tūti illam terram iterum vidēbimus, numquam eam relinquēmus. Satis in bellō pugnāvimus et satis lātē errāvimus. Amīcōs vidēre et in patriā manēre maximē cupimus.

667.

VOCABULARY

culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, blame
 dēserō, -ere, -uī, -tum, desert
 deus, -ī (*nom. pl. dī*), M., a god
 ēsuriō, -īre, be hungry
 immortalis, -e, immortal

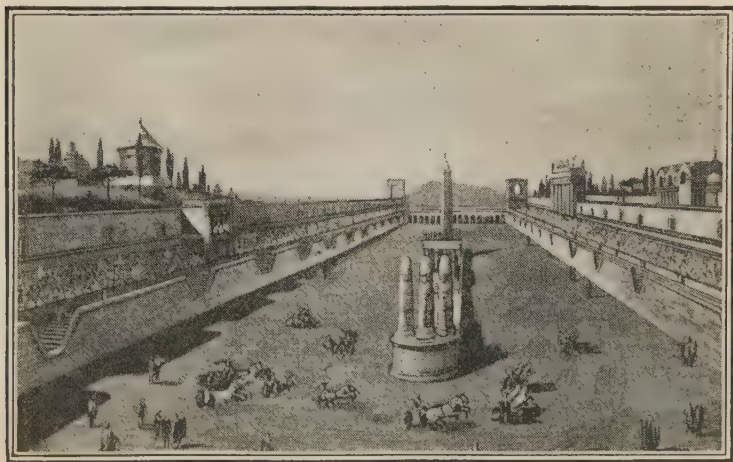
inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ven-
 tum, find
 lātē, *adv.*, widely
 quia, *conj.*, because
 rēctē, *adv.*, rightly

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

668. 1. You blame me, but who will lead you better?
 2. The gods do not greatly love this city. 3. We now fear
 the enemy less, but we are not yet safe. 4. We very greatly
 desire to return to our own country. 5. The Gauls formerly
 wandered more widely.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

669. 1. What is a *culpable* action? 2. From which of
 the principal parts of *dēserō* have our English derivatives
 come? 3. Find a noun which is connected in derivation
 with *immortalis*. 4. What is the original meaning of *invent*?



THE CIRCUS OF MAXENTIUS (RESTORATION)

OPTIONAL DRILL

670. 1. Magnopere Etruscōs timētis. 2. Castra male mūnīta sunt. 3. Hic poēta clārus maximē laudātus est. 4. Optimē pōns ab Horātiō dēfēnsus est. 5. Minus facile urbem oppugnāre poterimus quod flūmen est lātum.

671. 1. The boy cannot swim well. 2. We shall less easily find food in that country. 3. The city will be better defended by a larger army. 4. The sentinels very easily heard the voices of the enemy.

(a) Write the comparison of **rēctē** (from **rēctus**).

(b) Write the comparison of **miserē** (from **miser**).

(c) Compare the adjectives **bonus**, **malus**, **magnus**.

LESSON XCI

QUOTATIONS: INDIRECT DISCOURSE

DIRECT AND INDIRECT QUOTATIONS

672. 1. A direct quotation is one which repeats the exact words of the speaker. Thus, *He said, "I will come."*

2. An indirect quotation is one which repeats the thought but not the exact words of the original speaker. In English an indirect quotation is often introduced by the conjunction *that*. Thus, *He said that he would come.*

a. Sometimes no conjunction is used. Thus, *He said he would come.*

INDIRECT QUOTATIONS IN LATIN

673. In Latin, a simple sentence when used in an indirect quotation has its verb in the infinitive and its subject in the accusative. No conjunction is used to introduce indirect quotations in Latin.

Dicit puerum in silvā ambulāre, He says that the boy is walking in the forest.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

674. The name *indirect discourse* is given to the use of the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect quotations, and also to certain other expressions which are not exactly quotations. In such sentences as *I heard that you had received a letter*, and *Everyone thought that the day would be pleasant*, the clauses introduced by *that* take the same form in Latin as the indirect quotation given in section **673**. That is, their verbs will be infinitives and their subjects will stand in the accusative.

Indirect discourse is used with verbs of saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, seeing, and the like.

Crēdō tē librum meum habēre, *I believe (that) you have my book.*

a. A predicate noun or adjective used with an infinitive in indirect discourse is in the accusative, to agree with the subject.

Putāmus ducem nostrum fortem esse, *We think (that) our leader is brave.*

READING EXERCISE: THE FAULT-FINDERS REPROVED

675. (*The sailor who has been left in charge speaks.*) Dīcō ducem nostrum fidēlem esse. Quod cibum nōn habēmus, in silvam iit, ubi crēdō eum cibum petere. Ferās interficiet et carnem nōbīs dabit. Putō vōs ignāvōs esse et nihil scīre. Mare timētis et omnia timētis. Quod ēsurītis, ducem bonum nostrum culpātis et dīcitis eum vōs dēserere. Vōs nōn dēseruit neque dēseret. Etiam nunc hominem vidēō quem esse ducem nostrum crēdō. Rēctā ad nōs venit, et aliquid (*something*) grave umerīs portat. Habitus ejus ostendit eum esse ducem nostrum. Cervum portat, quem in silvā interfēcit. Mox cervus in (*on*) igne pōnētur, et vōs cibum habēbitis.

676.

VOCABULARY

carō , carnis , F., flesh, meat	habitus , -ūs , M., appearance,
crēdō , -ere , crēdidī , crēditum ,	garb
believe, trust	ignis , ignis , -ium , M., fire
fera , -ae , F., wild animal	nihil , <i>indeclinable</i> , N., nothing
fidēlis , -e , faithful	rēctā , <i>adv.</i> , directly

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

677. 1. You say that your friends love you. 2. I think you do not have many friends. 3. The sailors believe that their leader wishes to desert them. 4. I say that our leader is faithful. 5. The leader, who has killed a deer, will return to the shore.



A ROMAN SACRIFICE

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

678. 1. What is a *carnivorous* animal? 2. Give a noun derived from **fidēlis**. 3. Find a verb derived from **ignis**. 4. What does a *nihilist* desire in the way of government?

OPTIONAL DRILL

679. 1. Dux noster est fidēlis. 2. Dīcimus ducem nostrum fidēlem esse. 3. Putō vōs mare timēre. 4. Sciō nautās cibum

nōn habēre. 5. Dux dīxit nōs nihil scīre. 6. Comitēs meī nōn crēdidērunt mē cibum petere. 7. Cōsul audivit hostēs appropinquāre. 8. Vīdimus urbem in periculō esse. 9. Vīdimus nautās cēnam parāre. 10. Rēctā ad mare veniunt. 11. Ferās interfēcī et carnem vōbīs dabō. 12. Habitus illius virī ostendit eum nōn esse Rōmānum.

680. 1. The sailor said that the leader was coming. 2. We saw that the man was carrying a deer. 3. I think you fear wild animals. 4. The barbarians heard that we had no weapons. 5. The deer has been placed on the fire, and we shall soon have food.

(a) Give the present active and passive infinitives of **expectō**, **videō**, **petō**, **mūniō**.

(b) Write two English sentences which if translated into Latin would take the construction of indirect discourse.

(c) Decline **habitus** in the singular number.

LESSON XCII

NOUNS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

681. The genitive singular of the fifth declension ends in **-ēī** (after a consonant, **-eī**). The nominative singular always ends in **-ēs**. The nouns **diēs**, *day*, and **rēs**, *thing*, are declined as follows:

	diēs, M., F.		rēs, F.		<i>Endings</i>	
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
NOM.	di'ēs	di'ēs	rēs	rēs	-ēs	-ēs
GEN.	diē'ī	diē'rum	re'ī	rē'rum	-ēī (-eī)	-ērum
DAT.	diē'ī	diē'bus	re'ī	rē'bus	-ēī (-eī)	-ēbus
ACC.	di'em	di'ēs	rem	rēs	-em	-ēs
ABL.	di'ē	diē'bus	rē	rē'bus	-ē	-ēbus

a. **Diēs**, *day*, is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine in the singular, but always masculine in the plural. The other nouns of this declension are feminine, except one compound of **diēs**.

b. Only **diēs** and **rēs** are declined in full. The other nouns of this declension lack some or all of the plural forms.

READING EXERCISE: FOOD AT LAST

682. Hic nauta rāmōs siccōs portat, ille (nauta) rēmum frāctum habet, quem in lītore invēnit. Omnēs ignem quam primum accendere et cēnam parāre properant. Nam per omnem diem sine cibō in lītore fuērunt, et nunc laetī ducem appropinquāre vident cum cervō, quem umerīs portat. Saepe dixerunt ducem nōn esse fidēlem, sed hanc rem nōn esse vērā nunc sciunt. Ducem nunc laudant, ducī grātiās nunc agunt, quī vitā eōrum servāvit. Sed multī ex eīs neque bonī neque fortēs sunt. Sī cibum habent, nihil aliud cupiunt, nihil aliud sciunt. Nōn vident ducem fortem vitā eōrum servāre.

683.

VOCABULARY

accendō, -cendere, -cendī,	rāmus, -ī, M., bough, branch
-cēsum, kindle, light	rēmus, -ī, M., oar
diēs, diēī, M. or F., day	rēs, rei, F., thing
quam primum, as soon as possible.	siccus, -a, -um, dry
	vērus, -a, -um, true

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

684. 1. On that day (*see section 541*) many brave men were killed. 2. I have often heard this fact (thing). 3. You cannot (will not be able to) kindle a fire in this place. 4. Why did you not announce this fact (thing) at once? 5. You know that the days are long in summer.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

685. 1. What is the literal meaning of *sine die*? How is this phrase used in connection with the meetings of assemblies? 2. Find from a dictionary the meaning of *ramify*. 3. What is the derivation of *real*? 4. What is a *veracious* narrative?

OPTIONAL DRILL

686. 1. Illius diē; eārum rērum; eō diē; hīs diēbus. 2. Multae rēs; multārum rērum; multōrum diērum. 3. Propter hās rēs auxilium postulāvimus. 4. Propter eam rem felicēs erāmus. 5. Eō diē nūlla animālia in silvā vidimus. 6. Multōs diēs (see section 542) vōs expectāvimus. 7. Crēdō vōs propter eam rem manēre. 8. Scīmus hieme diēs esse brevēs. 9. Rāmōs siccōs in silvā invēnimus. 10. Nūllōs rēmōs habēmus. 11. Ignem quam primum accendēmus.

687. 1. On this day we shall see our native country. 2. They will remain for many days. 3. On account of this fact (thing) many blamed the consul. 4. We wish to prepare dinner as soon as possible.

(a) Give the ablative singular and the genitive plural of *porta*, *rāmus*, *dux*, *animal*, *exercitus*, *diēs*.

(b) Decline together **haec rēs**.

(c) Name the classes of verbs with which indirect discourse is used (see section 674).



SEA-FOOD

From a Pompeian picture

LESSON XCIII

CARDINAL NUMBERS: DECLENSION OF *DUO* AND *TRĒS*

CARDINAL NUMERALS

688. The numerals used in counting or in telling how many persons or objects are meant are called *cardinal numerals*. The Latin cardinal numerals from one to twenty are as follows:

<i>ūnus</i> , -a, -um, <i>one</i>	<i>ūndecim</i> , <i>eleven</i>
<i>duo</i> , <i>duae</i> , <i>duo</i> , <i>two</i>	<i>duodecim</i> , <i>twelve</i>
<i>trēs</i> , <i>tria</i> , <i>three</i>	<i>tredecim</i> , <i>thirteen</i>
<i>quattuor</i> , <i>four</i>	<i>quattuordecim</i> , <i>fourteen</i>
<i>quīnque</i> , <i>five</i>	<i>quīndecim</i> , <i>fifteen</i>
<i>sex</i> , <i>six</i>	<i>sēdecim</i> , <i>sixteen</i>
<i>septem</i> , <i>seven</i>	<i>septendecim</i> , <i>seventeen</i>
<i>octō</i> , <i>eight</i>	<i>duodēvigintī</i> , <i>eighteen</i>
<i>novem</i> , <i>nine</i>	<i>ūndēvigintī</i> , <i>nineteen</i>
<i>decem</i> , <i>ten</i>	<i>vīgintī</i> , <i>twenty</i>

DECLENSION OF *DUO* AND *TRĒS*

689. The numerals *duo* and *trēs* are declined as follows:

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
<i>duōs or duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs (trīs)</i>	<i>tria</i>
<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

a. With the exception of *ūnus*, *duo*, and *trēs*, the numerals given in section 688 are not declined. The declension of *ūnus* is like that of *sōlus*, which is given in section 13 of the Appendix. *Trēs* is declined like the plural of *omnis*, section 10 of the Appendix.

690. READING EXERCISE: CONVERSATION
DURING THE FEAST

- Nauta I. Haec carō dulcis est.
 N. II. Ita est; gaudeō quod carnem iterum edō.
 N. III. Quam callidus dux noster est!
 N. IV. Gaudēmus quod tam callidum ducem habēmus.
 N. III. Cervum in silvā invēnit et eum sagittā interfēcit.
 N. N. I et II. Dā nobīs iterum carnem.
 N. V. Similēs suibus estis. Nihil cēterīs relinquētis.
 N. N. I et II. Sed per omnem diem nūllum cibum habuimus.
 Ēsuriēbāmus.
 N. VI. Nōs quoque ēsuriēbāmus, sed nōn suēs sumus.
 Vōsne tōtum cervum edētis?
 N. N. VII et VIII. Crās in silvam ibimus. Inde multōs
 cervōs referēmus.
 N. IX. Vix dux callidus noster ūnum invēnit; vōs nōn facile
 multōs inveniētis.
 Dux. Ipse in silvam quam primum redībō, quia tēctum
 ibi vīdī. Quis in hōc tēctō habitat? Id scīre cupiō.

691. VOCABULARY

callidus, -a, -um, shrewd, wise	referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum,
dulcis, -e, sweet, delicious	bring back
gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, ¹ be	sūs, suis, M. and F., hog, swine
glad, rejoice	vix, adv., scarcely, with diffi-
inde, adv., from there	culty

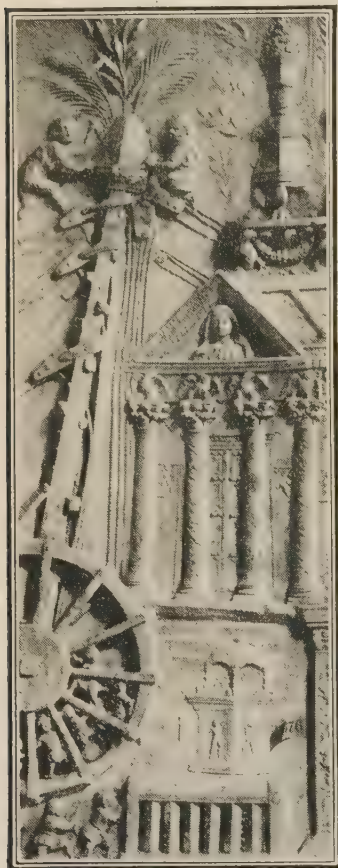
a. The verb **referō** has some irregular forms, but only those belonging to the third conjugation (like **dūcō**) or to the perfect system are used in this lesson.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

692. 1. My brother has gone to the forest with two companions. 2. We crossed the river with three legions. 3. Five

¹In the perfect system this verb has only passive forms, but these are active in meaning. They are not used in the exercises of this book.

sailors remained on the shore. 4. I saw four men who had been in Spain. 5. Our companions will soon return to the ship with our leader.



HOISTING APPARATUS

There were no gasoline or steam engines for use in building operations among the Romans.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

693. 1. What are *dulcet* tones? 2. Find from a dictionary the meaning of the Italian phrase *Dolce far niente*. What do you suppose is the origin of the Italian word *dolce*? 3. What is the origin of the word *octave*? 4. What is the origin of the words *refer* and *relate*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

694. 1. Duōrum diērum; trium diērum; quattuor diērum. 2. Cum duōbus amīcīs; cum tribus amīcīs; cum quīnque amīcīs. 3. Ā tribus nautīs; ā tredecim nautīs; ā sēdecim nautīs. 4. Explōrātor callidus est. 5. Inde nihil referēs. 6. Inde explōrātor multās rēs rettulit. 7. Cervus tribus sagittīs vulnerātus est. 8. Hae ferae carnem edunt. 9. Vix hās rēs portāre possumus. 10. Hominēs dixerunt sē vix hās rēs portāre posse. 11. Cibus dulcem habēmus. 12. Ūnum cervum et tria alia animalia in silvā invēnimus.

695. 1. Of two armies; of three armies; of four armies.
 2. With two companions; with three companions; with six companions. 3. The consul had two legions. 4. The lieutenant sent two scouts. 5. Four soldiers defended Horatius.

(a) Decline together **duo hominēs**.

(b) Decline together **duae insulae**.

(c) Give the accusative singular and the genitive plural of **sūs**.

SEVENTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW, LESSONS LXXXIX-XCIII

arcus, -ūs <i>Bow</i>	umerus, -ī	ēsuriō, -īre <i>h</i>
carō, carnis <i>meat</i>	ventus, -ī <i>wind</i>	flō, flāre <i>?</i>
cervus, -ī <i>deer</i>		gaudeō, -ēre
deus, -ī <i>god</i>	callidus, -a, -um <i>clever</i>	inveniō, -īre <i>find</i>
diēs, -ēī <i>day</i>	dulcis, -e <i>sweet</i>	referō, -ferre <i>bring</i>
fera, -ae <i>wild animal</i>	fidēlis, -e <i>faithful</i>	
habitus, -ūs <i>habit</i>	immortālis, -e <i>immortal</i>	inde <i>thence</i>
ignis, ignis <i>fire</i>	siccus, -a, -um <i>dry</i>	lātē <i>hide</i>
litus, litoris <i>shore</i>	similis, -e <i>similar</i>	lentē <i>slowly</i>
nihil <i>nothing</i>	vērū, -a, -um <i>true</i>	rēctā <i>directly</i>
rāmus, -ī <i>branch</i>		rēctē <i>right</i>
rēmū, -ī <i>oar</i>	accendō, -ere <i>kindle</i>	vix <i>scarcely</i>
rēs, rei <i>thing</i>	crēdō, -ere <i>trust</i>	
sonitus, -ūs <i>sound</i>	culpō, -āre <i>blame</i>	quia <i>because</i>
sūs, suis <i>swine</i>	dēserō, -ere <i>desert</i>	

ENDINGS OF THE FIFTH DECLENSION

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
NOM.	-ēs	-ēs
GEN.	-ēī (eī)	-ērū
DAT.	-ēī (eī)	-ēbus
ACC.	-em	-ēs
ABL.	-ē	-ēbus

FORMATION OF ADVERBS

(See sections 656, 657)

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

(See sections 664, 665)

CARDINAL NUMERALS

(See section 688)

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

(See sections 673, 674)

ROME AND CARTHAGE

Perhaps the most dangerous enemy Rome ever had was Carthage, a city located on the north coast of Africa. The Carthaginians had a strong fleet as well as a good army when they first met the Romans in war. At that time the Romans had had little experience as sailors, and for a while they were not very successful. Later they developed a navy with which they were able to rout the Carthaginians at sea.



HANNIBAL

The Romans and Carthaginians fought three wars with each other, known as the First, Second, and Third Punic wars. The second of these was the most important, and in this Rome narrowly escaped defeat. The famous Carthaginian general, Hannibal, invaded Italy, coming through Spain and France and crossing the Alps. He won a victory over the Romans in the great battle

of Cannae, in which a great many Romans were killed, among them a number of the officials of the government.

After the war had continued for several years the Roman general, Scipio, finally defeated Hannibal, and the war was

brought to an end. Carthage was compelled to give up part of her territory and to pay a large sum of money.

Some years later another war broke out, and this time another Scipio was in command of the Roman army. The Carthaginians were again defeated and their city was entirely destroyed. The Romans never again permitted Carthage to become a dangerous enemy. They made the country which Carthage had ruled Roman territory, and it continued under Roman control until the Roman Empire was destroyed, centuries later.



SITE OF CARTHAGE

HORATIUS

Note.—New words occurring in this play and the following selections will be found in the complete Vocabulary, pages 1-30, following 482.

PERSONAE

Porsena: *rēx Etrūscōrum.*

Sextus Tarquinius: *filius Tarquiniī Superbī.*

Mamilius: *rēx Tusculī, socius Porsenae.*

Scaena I.

Tarquinius Superbus: *rēx Rōmānōrum, exul.*

Vigilēs: *Etrūscī.*

Ducēs Militum: *Etrūscī.*

Scaena II.

Valerius	}	<i>cōsulēs Rōmānī.</i>
Pulvillus		
Horātius Cocles	}	<i>senātōrēs Rōmānī</i>
Spurius Lartius		
Titus Herminius		
Vigil Prīmus	}	<i>Rōmānī</i>
Vigil Secundus		
Cīvēs: <i>Rōmānī</i>		
Militēs: <i>Etrūscī.</i>		

SCAENA PRĪMA. IN CASTRIS ETRŪSCŌRUM

Vesperī. Porsena ante tabernāculum suum stat; ā dextrā Mamilius; ā sinistrā Tarquinius Superbus; ā tergō Sextus Tarquinius. Ante Porsenam ducēs militum imperāta expectant. Longē ā dextrā stant vigilēs; hī Rōmam prōspectant.

POR. Bene pugnāvistis hodiē, Ō ducēs, vōs et militēs Etrūscī.

DUC. Grātiās tibi agimus, rēx maxime; prō patriā et prō tē pugnāvimus.

POR. Quō nōmine hic mōns appellātur, ubi jam castra posuimus?

SEX. Jāniculum vocātur hic mōns.

SUP. Jāniculum habēmus; facile erit Rōmam capere.

POR. Quō modō Jāniculum cēpistī, Mamili¹? Nārrā nōbīs.

DUC. Bene nōs dūxit Mamilius, Ō rēx maxime.

POR. Hoc sciō; attendite animum et audīte.

¹Proper names ending in *-ius* have the vocative singular in *-ī* (not *-ie*). This is also true of *filius* (vocative *fīlī*).

MAM. Ō rēx maxime, Jāniculum tenēbat Pulvillus cōsul cum centum mīlitibus; juvenis est et malus dux; male imperat, neque Rōmānī semper pārent. At diū resistēbant; neque facile erat illud parvum agmen dē monte pellere. Tandem centum mīlītēs circum montem mīsī; hī ā tergō Rōmānōs subitō oppugnāvērunt. Pulvillus pavidus tergum vertit; cum quīnquāgintā hominibus effūgit; cēterōs occīdimus. Ille, tertius in ōrdine ducum [*ūnum* 20 *ex ducibus indicat*], primus in summum montem pervēnit. Hostēs illum vulnerāverant et signiferum occīderant. Statim ille signum ē dextrā mortuī rapuit et in summō monte posuit.

POR. Bene fēcistī, Mamilī; bene fēcērunt tuī mīlītēs. Tū, dux vulnerāte, hūc venī. [*Dux tertius appropinquat.*] Accipe hoc praemium. [*Bracchium armillā circumdat. Tum dux sē in ōrdinem recipit.*] Crās Rōmam oppugnābimus.

DUC. [*laetis clāmōribus.*] Crās Rōmam capiēmus. 30

SUP. Crās rēx iterum erō Rōmānōrum.

SEX. Crās omnēs inimicōs occīdam.

SUP. Crās omnēs nōbilēs in vincula conjiciam

SEX. Vae victīs! nōs enim Rōmā expulērunt.

SUP. Ignāvī hominēs rēgem habēre nōlēbant; poenās crās dabunt.

DUC. [*murmurant.*] Fortēs, nōn ignāvī, sunt Rōmānī. Fortēs hostēs amāmus; ignāvōs ōdimus amicōs.

POR. Quandō et quō modō Rōmam oppugnābimus?

SEX. Statim hoc faciēmus; sī enim Rōmānī pontem subli- 40
cium frangent, neque Tiberim trānsīre neque urbem intrāre poterimus.

DUC. Nōs quidem hodiē diū pugnāvimus; sine somnō mīlītēs nōn bene pugnābunt.

SUP. Vigil! Vigil!

- VIG. Quid dēsīderās, Ō rēx?
- SUP. Quid nunc Rōmānī faciunt?
- VIG. Omnēs intrā moenia sē recēpērunt. Vigilēs tamen
ē moenibus prōspectant.
- POR. Frēgēruntne pontem? 59
- VIG. Minimē, rēx maxime! Stat pōns.
- POR. Quālis erit nox?
- VIG. Obscūra; nūbilāre enim coepit, neque lūna fulgēbit.
Etiam nunc vigilēs Rōmānōs vidēre nōn possumus;
nōn jam pōns in cōspectū est; hāc nocte caeci
erunt vigilēs.
- POR. Bene dixistis, vigilēs. Hoc igitur cōsiliū omnēs
audīte. Quārtā vigiliā, dum Rōmānī adhūc dor-
miunt, ad pontem silentiō appropinquābimus.
Antequam illūc pervēnerimus, nōs neque vidēre 60
neque audīre vigilēs poterunt. Nullā morā pon-
tem trānsībimus et portam facile rumpēmus, dum
Rōmānī arma petunt et tōtā urbe trepidant.
- DOC. Bonum cōsiliū cēpistī, Ō rēx maxime. Vincēmus.
- POR. Hoc cōsiliū, ducēs, mīlitibus nūntiāte. Deinde
usque ad quārtā vigiliā dormīte.
- DOC. Audīmus et pārēbimus.
- POR. Vigilēs, cum quārtā vigilia erit, ē somnō nōs omnēs
excitāte.
- VIG. Audīmus et pārēbimus. 70

SCAENA SECUNDA. RŌMAE

*Ā sinistrā appārent moenia urbis; Tiberis praeter moenia
fluit; rīpam ulteriōrem ad portam urbis jungit pōns
sublicius. Vigilēs ē summīs moenibus prōspectant. In
rīpā ulteriōre agmen Etrūscōrum ad pontem sublicium
silentiō appropinquat, sed adhūc procul abest, cum sōl
surgere incipit. Prīmā lūce vigilēs hostēs vident.*

VIG. I. Audīsne sonum?

VIG. II. Quam timidus es! Ventus aquam agitat.

VIG. I. Pedēs hominum audiō.

VIG. II. Nōlī hoc crēdere. Sōl mox surget; tum vidēre poterimus.

VIG. I. Hominēs videō. Appropinquant.

VIG. II. Agmen est. Hostēs sunt.

VIG. I. Surgite, Rōmānī. Hostēs adsunt.

VIGILES. Surgite, Rōmānī. Hostēs adsunt.

[*Cīvēs armātī portam aperiunt et prōspectant. Valerius et Pulvillus in pontem currunt.*]

VAL. Frangite pontem, cīvēs.

1C

PUL. Tempus nōn dabunt hostēs. Eheu! Nōs primōs occident. Quid facere possumus? Quō fugere debēmus?

VAL. Silē, ignāve! Cūr herī militēs frangere pontem nōn jussistī? Tū enim imperātor erās. Hodiē ego imperō. [*Pulvillus in urbem redit. Multī cīvēs in portā appārent.*] Audīte, cīvēs. Sī duo vel trēs breve temporis spatium resistere poterunt, cēterī pontem frangent. Ita urbem servāre poterimus.

2C

HOR. [*inter cīvēs appāret.*] Ego, Ō cōsul, pontem dēfendam. Quis mēcum hoc prō patriā faciet?

SPU. [*ex cīvibus prōdit.*] Ego tibi socius erō, fortis Horātī.

HOR. Tū bonus eris socius. Tēcum bene pugnābō. Tamen sī trēs erimus, tōtum hostium agmen facile repellēmus.

TIT. [*ex cīvibus prōdit.*] Ecce tertius erō. Prō Rōmā et Rōmānīs cum hīs comitibus pugnābō.

VAL. Vōbīs agō grātiās.

3C

CIV. Vōbīs grātiās agimus.

[*Etrūscī appropinquant.*]

POR. Currite, militēs. Pontem occupāte.

VAL. Properāte vōs, currunt enim hostēs.

[*Trēs pontem trānseunt.*]

HOR. Ego medius stābō; tū, Spuri, ā dextrā stā, Herminī,
tū ā sinistrā.

[*Etrūscī ad pontem adveniunt.*]

POR. Oppugnāte, militēs. Illōs trēs occīdite et urbem
intrāte.

VAL. Secūrēs sūmite, cīvēs. Sūmite gladiōs. Frangite
pontem.

POR. Mamili, mēcum manē! Herī satis pugnābās. 40

Sextus contrā suam urbem hominēs dūcet.

VAL. Dā mihi secūrem, tū! Ita, ita, lignum frangite.

[*Ipsē pontem ferit dum militēs Etrūscī pontem
oppugnant.*]

SPU. Cavē, Herminī! Ā sinistrā oppugnābunt.

TIT. Parātus sum; ecce, undique veniunt.

HOR. Dūra verbera date. Nōn multī eōdem tempore nōs
oppugnāre possunt.

PUL. [*in moenibus appāret.*] Venīte, vōs, ad moenia.

[*Multī cīvēs in moenia veniunt.*] Sagittās mittite.

Jacula conjicite.

SEX. Mēcum venīte, militēs. Ego Horātium occīdam. 50

CIV. Cujus vōcem audīmus?

VIG. I. Sextus Tarquinius hostēs dūcit.

CIV. Apage, perfide Sexte! Audēsne ad urbem revenīre?

SEX. Mox alia clāmābitis, cum vōs in vincula conjiciam.

CIV. Occīde Sextum, Ō Horātī. Etiam sī hostēs nōs
vīcerint, gaudēbimus, quod perfidus Sextus mor-
tuus erit.

[*Sextus Horātium oppugnat; Spurius et Titus contrā
aliōs pugnant.*]

PUL. Cavēte, sagittārii. Nōlite nostrōs occīdere. Cavēte, jaculātōrēs. Suprā capita nostrōrum jacula conjicite.

60

VIG. II. Uter vincet? Ecce, noster illum ferit!

CIV. Iō triumphe! Mortuus est Sextus.

PUL. Minimē, surgit. Horātī, iterum ferī.

[*Alter Horātium oppugnat, dum Mamilius Sextum ē periculō trahit.*]

CIV. Quis auxilium fert?

PUL. Mamilius.

CIV. Ecce, Sextum ē periculō trahit.

VIG. I. Nunc redit; ipse Horātium oppugnābit.

CIV. Eheu! Nōn mortuus est Sextus.

VAL. Auxilium date, cīvēs; ecce, paene frāctus est pōns.

CIV. Iō, Spurius hostem occīdit; nunc alterum ferit.

70

VIG. II. Eheu! Horātium vulnerāvit Mamilius.

CIV. Eheu! Spuri, auxilium dā.

VIG. I. Ecce. Mamilium repellunt.

VAL. [*magnā vōce.*] Redīte, Rōmānī. Paene frāctus est pōns. Jam, jam redī, Horātī.

CIV. Redīte, Rōmānī. Paene frāctus est pōns. Nōs servāvistis; jam vōs servāte.

HOR. Redīte, comitēs. Dum tempus manet, redīte.

SPU. } Tū etiam nōbiscum redī. Sine tē nōn redībimus.
TIT. }

CIV. Redīte, fortēs virī. Jam jam cadit pōns.

80

HOR. Redīte, comitēs. Cōnsilium habeō bonum; mē hostēs nōn occīdent.

SPU. } Pārēmus. Valē. [*Ad portam redeunt.*]
TIT. }

CIV. Nōlite Horātium relinquere.

SPU. Ipse imperāvit. Pārēmus.

[*Spurius et Titus urbem intrant.*!]



CIV. Sērō redibis, Horātī. Cadit pōns.

HOR. [*Scūtum ad cīvēs conjicit.*] Excipite, cīvēs, scūtum.
Nōn honestum est scūtum relinquere. [*Gladium
in mediōs hostēs conjicit.*] Vōs, hostēs, gladium
excipite. Tibi mē committō, Tiberis. [*Dum 90
pōns cadit, Horātius in flūmen dēsilit.*]

PUL. Quid facit? Vulnerātus est; nōn potest natāre.

CIV. Ita; flūmen trānsit; ad portam natat.

VAL. Dēmittite fūnēs! [*Cīvēs fūnem dēmittunt.*]

CIV. Fūnemprehendit. Trahite! Trahite!

OMNES. Trahite! trahite! [*Cīvēs Horātium ex aquā in
portam trahunt.*]

VAL. }
PUL. } Senātus tibi grātiās agit.

CIV. Populus Rōmānus tibi grātiās agit.

OMNES. Rōmam servāvistī.

THE STORY OF PERSEUS

1. SET ADRIFT

Haec narrantur ā poētīs dē Perseō. Perseus fīlius erat Jovis, maximī deōrum. Avus ejus Ācrisius appellābātur. Ācrisius volēbat Perseum, nepōtem suum, necāre; nam propter ōrāculum puerum timēbat. Comprehendit igitur Perseum, adhūc infāntem, et cum mātē in arcā lignēā inclūsit. Tum 5
arcam ipsam in mare conjēcit. Danaē, Perseī mātē, magnopere territa est; tempestās enim magna mare turbābat. Perseus autem in sinū mātē dormiēbat.

2. CAST ON AN ISLAND

Juppiter tamen haec omnia vīdit et fīlium suum servāre cōstituit. Fēcit igitur mare tranquillum et arcam ad insulam Serīphum perdūxit. Hujus insulae Polydectēs tum rēx erat. Postquam arca ad litus appulsa est, Danaē in harēnā quiētem capiēbat. Post breve tempus ā piscātōre quōdam reperta est et ad rēgiam Polydectis adducta est. Ille mātrem et puerum benignē excēpit et sēdem tūtā in fīnibus suis 15

1. *Haec, these things, or these stories.*

2. *Ācrisius*: predicate nominative after the passive of a verb of calling.

6. *Danaē*: a Greek name, with genitive ending in *-ēs*, accusative in *-ēn*.

7. *enim*: always stands after one or more words of its sentence; the same is true of *autem*, line 8.

11. *Serīphum*: in apposition with *insulam*. We usually say in English "the island of," "the city of," etc.

12. *Postquam*: with *postquam* and *ubi* the perfect is the tense most frequently employed. In translation, with "after" or "when," we sometimes employ the past perfect tense, sometimes the past.

13. *piscātōre quōdam*: the forms of *quīdam* sometimes precede and sometimes follow the word they modify; for the declension of *quīdam* see Appendix 28 (3)

dedit. Danaē hoc dōnum libenter accēpit et prō tantō beneficiō rēgī grātiās ēgit.

3. PERSEUS SENT ON HIS TRAVELS

Perseus igitur multōs annōs ibi habitāvit et cum mātrem suā vītam ēgit beātam. At Polydectēs Danaēn magnopere amābat atque eam in mātrimonium dūcere volēbat. Hoc tamen cōsiliū Perseō minimē grātum erat. Polydectēs igitur Perseum dīmittere cōstituit. Tum juvenem ad sē vocāvit et haec dīxit: "Turpe est vītam hanc ignāvam agere; jam dūdum tū adulēscēns es; quousque hīc manēbis? Tempus est arma capere et virtūtem praestāre. Hinc abī et caput Medūsae mihi refer."

4. PERSEUS GETS HIS OUTFIT

Perseus, ubi haec audīvit, ex insulā discessit et, postquam ad continentem vēnit, Medūsam quaesīvit. Diū frūstrā quaerēbat; nam nātūram locī ignōrābat. Tandem Apollō et Minerva viam dēmōstrāvērunt. Prīmum ad Graecās, sorōrēs

16. *dedit*: *ūs*, dative of indirect object, is to be understood.

18. *annōs*: accusative of duration of time.

20. *volēbat*: the principal parts of this verb are *volō, velle, voluī*. It is irregular in the present tense, but its imperfect and future indicative forms are like those of the third conjugation *-ō* verbs (*dūcō*).

21. *Perseō*: dependent on *grātum*.

23. *haec dīxit*, *spoke as follows*.

agere: subject of *est*; an infinitive used as a noun is in the neuter gender; hence the predicate adjective, *turpe*, is neuter.

24. *jam dūdum es*, *you have long been*; with *jam dūdum* a present tense is translated by an English present perfect, an imperfect by an English past perfect; *jam dūdum erās* would mean *you had long been*.

25. *abī*: imperative of *abeō*. What is the imperative of *eō*?

26. *refer*: the verb *ferō* has as its present imperative in the singular number the form *fer*. Its compounds have the same irregularity.

27. *Perseus, ubi*: in Latin, when the verbs of a principal and a subordinate clause denote acts by the same person or thing, the noun or pronoun used to denote the subject frequently stands before the subordinate clause.

haec: the neuter plural of *hic*, used without a noun (literally, *these things*), may often be translated *this*.

30. *sorōrēs*: what case and why?

Medūsae, pervēnit. Ab hīs tālāria et galeam magicam ac-
cēpit. Apollō autem et Minerva falcem et speculum de-
dērunt. Tum postquam tālāria induit, in āera statim as-
cendit. Diū per āera volābat; tandem tamen ad eum locum
vēnit ubi Medūsa cum cēteris Gorgonibus habitābat. Gorgo-
nēs autem mōnstra erant quae speciem horribilem praebēbant;
capita enim eārum serpentibus omnīnō contēcta erant; manūs
etiam ex aere factae erant.

35

5. THE GORGON'S HEAD

Rēs erat difficillima abscidere caput Gorgonis; ejus enim
cōnspectū hominēs in saxum vertēbantur. Propter hanc cau-
sam Minerva illud speculum dederat. Perseus igitur tergum vertit, et in
speculum inspiciēbat; hōc modō ad locum vēnit ubi Medūsa dormiēbat.
Tum falce suā caput ejus ūnō ictū abscidit. Cēterae Gorgonēs statim
ē somnō excitātae sunt et, ubi rem vīdērunt, irā commōtae sunt. Arma
rapuērunt, et Perseum occidere volē-
bant; ille autem, dum fugit, galeam
magicam induit et, ubi hoc fēcit, statim ē cōnspectū eārum
ēvāsīt.

40



45

HEAD OF MEDUSA

50

31. *galeam magicam*: this rendered the wearer invisible.

33. *āera*: this form is an accusative singular, masculine gender. The word *āēr* is a Greek noun carried over into Latin; it keeps its Greek accusative ending.

38. *aere*: from *aes*.

40. *vertēbantur*: the Latin imperfect often expresses repeated or customary action.

43. *speculum*: ancient mirrors were polished metal plates.

hōc modō, *in this way*; the ablative case, sometimes with the preposition *cum* and sometimes, as here, without *cum*, is used to express the manner in which an action is done.

50. *dum fugit*, *while he fled*, *while fleeing*; a clause with *dum* meaning *while* takes the present indicative, regardless of the tense of the principal verb.



NEPTUNE

6. THE SEA SERPENT

Post haec Perseus in finēs Aethiopum vēnit. Ibi Cēpheus quīdam illō tempore rēgnābat. Hic Neptūnum, maris deum, 53 ōlim offenderat. Neptūnus autem mōnstrum saevissimum mīserat. Hoc cotidiē ē marī veniēbat et hominēs dēvorābat. Ob hanc causam pavor animōs omnium occupāverat. Cēpheus igitur ōrāculum deī Hammōnis cōsultuit, atque ā deō jussus

53. Cēpheus quīdam, a certain Cepheus, or a man named Cepheus.

54. tempore: ablative of time.

Hic: a pronoun, referring to Cēpheus.

57. omnium, of all (i.e., men); the masculine plural of *omnēs* often means *all men*, or *everybody*; the neuter plural often means *all things*, or *everything*.

58. ōrāculum: the word may mean the seat of an oracle, as here, or the reply given by an oracle. The consultation of oracles sprang from the belief that information and advice could be obtained from certain divinities. Oracles were usually given by oral utterances of a priest or priestess in a state of real or pretended frenzy, or by signs. The temple (with its oracle) of the Egyptian god Hammon stood in an oasis of the Libyan desert.

est filiam mōnstrō trādere. Ejus autem filia, nōmine Andromeda, virgō fōrmōsissima erat. Cēpheus, ubi haec audīvit, magnum dolōrem percēpit. Volēbat tamen cīvēs suōs ē tantō periculō extrahere, atque ob eam causam cōstituit imperāta Hammōnis facere. 60

7. A HUMAN SACRIFICE

Tum rēx diem certam dīxit et omnia parāvit. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Andromeda ad litus dēducta est et in cōspectū omnium ad rūpem alligāta est. Omnēs fātum ejus dēplōrābant, nec lacrimās tenēbant. At subitō, dum mōnstrum expectant, Perseus accurrit, et, ubi lacrimās vīdit, causam dolōris quaerit. Illi rem tōtam expōnunt et puellam dēmōnstrant. Dum haec geruntur, fremitus terribilis audītur; simul mōnstrum procul cōspicitur. Ejus cōspectus magnopere omnēs terruit quī in litore stābant. At mōnstrum magnā celeritāte ad litus contendit, jamque ad locum appropinquābat ubi puella stābat. 70

59. mōnstrō: indirect object of *trādere*.

nōmine: ablative of respect.

60. Cēpheus, ubi: the order of words is explained in the note on *Perseus, ubi*, line 27.

62. ob eam causam, for that reason.

64. diem dīxit, appointed a day; in the plural, *diēs* is always masculine, in the singular sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine. What is the gender of most other nouns of the fifth declension?

omnia, all things, everything; or with *parāvit*, made all preparations; see note on line 57.

67. nec . . . tenēbant, and did not restrain; neque is regularly used in Latin for *and not*.

dum . . . expectant, while they were awaiting; for the present tense with *dum*, see note on line 50.

68. accurrit: for vivid effect a past event or situation may be represented as present. The present in this use is called the historical present; it may often be translated by the English past. Several other examples occur in this section.

70. Dum haec geruntur, while this was going on; compare the note on *haec*, line 27.

72. magnā celeritāte: another example of the ablative denoting manner, like *hōc modō*, line 43.

8. THE RESCUE

- 75 At Perseus, ubi haec vīdit, gladium suum rapuit et, postquam tālāria induit, in āera sublātus est. Tum dēs super in mōnstrum impetum subitō fēcit et gladiō suō collum ejus graviter vulnerāvit. Mōnstrum, ubi sēnsit vulnus, fremitum horribilem ēdidit et sine morā tōtum corpus sub aquam mersit.
- 80 Perseus, dum circum lītus volat, reditum ejus expectābat; mare autem intereā undique sanguine īficitur. Post breve tempus bēlua rūrsus caput sustulit; mox tamen ā Perseō ietū graviorē vulnerāta est. Tum iterum sē sub undās mersit, neque posteā vīsa est.

9. THE REWARD OF VALOR

- 85 Perseus, postquam in lītus dēscendit, prīmum tālāria exuit; tum ad rūpem vēnit ubi Andromeda vīncta erat. Ea autem omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat et, ubi Perseus adiit, terrōre paene exanimāta erat. Ille vincula statim solvit et puellam patrī reddidit. Cēpheus ob hanc rem maximō gaudiō affectus
- 90 est. Meritam grātiā prō tantō beneficiō Perseō rettulit; praetereā Andromedam ipsam eī in mātirimōnium dedit. Ille libenter hoc dōnum accēpit et puellam dūxit. Paucōs annōs cum uxōre suā in eā regiōne habitāvit, et in magnō honōre erat apud omnēs Aethiopēs. Magnopere tamen cupiēbat mātrem

76. sublātus est: perfect passive of *tollō*.

in (*mōnstrum*), *on*.

83. *neque*: translate as in line 67.

86. *vīncta*: what are the principal parts of *vinciō*? Of *vincō*?

87. *terrōre*, with *terror*; this is an example of the ablative of cause. Sometimes a preposition (*ab*, *dē*, *ex*) is found with this use of the ablative. The idea of cause may also be expressed by *propter* or *ob* with the accusative.

90. *Meritam grātiā rettulit*, made a deserved requital, or repaid the favor as it deserved.

prō, in return for.

91. *Ille*: pronoun referring to Perseus.

92. *puellam dūxit*, married the girl. *Dūcō* has reference to that part of the ceremony in which the bridegroom led the bride to his own house.

suam rūrsus vidēre. Tandem igitur cum uxōre ē rēgnō Cēpheī discessit. 95

10. TURNED TO STONE

Postquam Perseus ad insulam nāvem appulit, sē ad locum contulit ubi māter ōlim habitāverat. At domum invēnit vacuum et omnīnō dēsertam. Trēs diēs per tōtam insulam mātrem quaerēbat; tandem quārtō diē ad templum Diānae pervēnit. Hūc Danaē refūgerat, quod Polydectem timēbat. Perseus, ubi haec cognōvit, irā magnā commōtus est; ad rēgiam Polydectis sine morā contendit et, ubi eō vēnit, statim in ātrium irrūpit. Polydectēs magnō timōre affectus est, et fugere volēbat. Dum tamen ille fugit, Perseus caput Medūsae mōnstrāvit; ille autem, simul atque hoc vīdit, in saxum versus est. 100 105

11. THE ORACLE FULFILLED

Post haec Perseus cum uxōre suā ad urbem Ācrisiī rediit. Ille autem, ubi Perseum vīdit, magnō terrōre affectus est. Nam propter ōrāculum istud nepōtem suum adhūc timēbat. In Thessaliam igitur ad urbem Lārissam statim refūgit; frūstrā tamen, neque enim fātum suum vitāvit. Post paucōs annōs rēx Lārissae lūdōs magnōs fēcit; nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmiserat et diem ēdīxerat. Multī ex omnibus urbibus Graeciae 110

97. sē . . . contulit, *betook himself, proceeded.*

101. quod: not a relative pronoun.

103. eō: an adverb.

104. magnō timōre affectus est, *was very badly frightened.* What is it literally?

106. simul atque, *as soon as*; the same rule as to the tense of the verb applies to this phrase as to *postquam* and *ubi*; see note on line 12.

110. istud: the demonstrative *iste* is declined like *ille*, and usually means *that* or *that of yours*. Here the force is, *that oracle of which you know*.

111. Lārissam, *of Larissa*; an appositive translated like *Serīphum*, line 11.

112. neque: translate as if *nōn*.

113. lūdōs fēcit, *gave games*.

in omnēs partēs, *in all directions*.

- 115 ad lūdōs convēnērunt. Ipse Perseus inter aliōs certāmen discōrum iniit. At, dum discum conjicit, avum suum cāsū occīdit; Ācrisius enim inter spectātōrēs ejus certāminis forte stābat.
-

116. **discōrum**: the discus was a flat piece of stone or metal.

cāsū, *by chance, accidentally*; the ablative of *cāsus* without a preposition is often used in this meaning.

1. Conjugate *videō* and *quaerō* in the future active. 2. Decline the demonstrative *ille*. 3. What case is *diēs* in line 99, and why used? 4. What are the meanings of *volō*, *velle*, and *volō*, *volāre*? 5. What is the meaning of *magnō terrōre affectus*? 6. Who was the mother of Perseus? 7. Why did Perseus need the mirror when he slew Medusa? 8. What was the name of the maiden whom Perseus rescued from the sea-monster? 9. How did Acrisius meet his death?

CIRCE

PERSŌNAE.

Ulixēs, quī domum iter facit.

Eurylochus, comes et amīcus Ulixis.

Scaena I.

Aegyptius }
Philippus }
Menexenus } *nautae.*
Alexander }
Crēsius }
Cēterī nautae.

Scaena II.

Naupactōus }
Proxenus } *nautae.*
Rhodius }

Circē: *maga.*
Ancillae quattuor.
Minister.
Coquus.
Servus alius.

SCAENA PRĪMA. IN LĪTORE ĪNSULAE.

*In saxō stat Eurylochus; circum eum vīgintī nautae, aliī humī
sedent, aliī stant; omnēs murmurant.*

EUR. Nōlite ducem nostrum culpāre.

AEG. At quis nōs in īnsulam dēsertam dūxit?

CET. Respondē, Ō Euryloche! Nōnne Ulixēs?

EUR. Sānē, magnus Ulixēs vōs hūc dūxit; sed nōlite illum
culpāre.

PHI. Cūr nōn dēbēmus illum culpāre?

CET. Respondē, Ō Euryloche. Cūr nōn dēbēmus illum
culpāre?

EUR. Quia dī immortalēs [*palmās tollit*] nōs et illum in
haec perīcula addūxērunt.

10

MEN. Sī dī Ulixem nōn amant, nōn jam noster erit dux.

CET. Rēctē dīcis; nōn jam noster erit dux.

ALE. Ēsuriō; dā mihi cibum, Euryloche.

OMNES. Ēsurīmus; dā nōbīs cibum, Euryloche.

EUR. Nōnne magnanimus Ulixēs in mediās silvās iit, quia
cibum nōbīs petere volēbat?

OMNES. Nōn hoc crēdimus. Immō vērō nōs dēseruit.

AEG. Sī ferās arcū occīdet, ipse eās edet.

OMNES. Ipse carnem edet avium et bēstiārum.

PHI. Nihil nōbīs referet. Hoc prō certō habēō. 20

OMNES. Nihil nōbīs referet. Hoc prō certō habēmus.

EUR. Ō stultī; fidēlis est noster dux; cibum vōbīs referet.

MEN. [*quī circum sē spectat.*] Hominem quī advenit, videō.

CET. Hostisne an amīcus venit?

MEN. Nesciō; adhūc procul abest.

[*Aliī nautae nunc stant.*]

ALE. Ecce, dē summō colle dēscendit.

CET. Quis est? Quae vestīmenta, quae arma portat?

CRE. Arcum sagittāsque fert; rēctā ad nōs venit.

OMNES. Ulixēs est.

AEG. Quid umerīs portat? 30

PHI. Carnem nōbīs refert.

OMNES. Ō magnanimum Ulixem! Ō optimum ducem!

ULIXIS VOX. Cervum sagittā occīdī. Cibum vōbīs ferō.

Carnem edēmus omnēs.

OMNES. Iō, Iō! Ō magnanimum Ulixem! Ō optimum ducem!

EUR. Ligna petite, nautae. Properāte vōs!

[*Dum Ulixēs appropinquat, nautae ligna per litus petunt et in mediō cumulant.*]

MEN. Rēmum frāctum invēnī, quī in litore jacēbat.

ALE. Siccōs rāmōs ferō, quī dē arbore cecidērunt.

CRE. } Grave est id quod portāmus; gubernāculum ferimus 40

AEG. } nāvis nostrae, quod mare in litus jēcit.

PHI. Rōstrum nāvis repperī; ecce, Minervae imāginem undae perdidērunt; eam vix possum agnōscere.

[*Ulixēs appāret et cervum humī dēpōnit.*]

EUR. Salvē, Ulixēs! Nautae, ignem accendite.

- CET. Nōn possumus ignem accendere. Ō callidissime omnium hominum [*Ulīxī hoc dīcunt*], hoc prō nōbīs fac, quia ēsurīmus et quam prīmum cēnāre volumus.
- EUR. [*Dum Ulīxēs ligna cōnfricat et ignem accendit.*] Nunc callidus et magnanimus est is quī nūper pessimus ducum erat et infidissimus. 50
 [*Ulīxēs in saxō cōnsīdit; nautae in summō igne cervum tōtum pōnunt. Tum circum Ulīxem et ignem sē dispōnunt.*]
- ULI. Per silvam errābam, cum hunc cervum haud procul vīdī —
- MEN. Dulcis est fūmus.
- ULI. Mē post arborem cēlāvī —
- ALE. [*sonitum labrīs facit.*] Dulcem carnem jam gustō.
- ULI. Ventus adversus flābat; nōn igitur mē olfacere cervus poterat.
- CRE. Carnem equidem olfaciō dulcissimam.
- ULI. Sagittam arcumque parāvī. 60
- AEG. Nōs quidem convīvium parāmus.
- ULI. Sagittā primā cervī frontem trānsfixī. Nōnne magna et pulchra sunt cornua, Ō Euryloche?
- PHI. Magna et pulchra erit cēna.
- MEN. Jam certē tostus est cervus. Statim edere cupiō.
- OMNES. Statim edere cupimus.
- ULI. Edite, comitēs. Gaudeō quod nōn jam ēsuriētis.
- EUR. Vorāte, vōs quī suibus estis similēs; nihil nisi cēna cibisque vōbīs in mentem venit.
 [*Nautae cervum dīvidunt et carnem vorant; intereā Ulīxēs nārrat.*]
- ULI. Postquam cervum occīdī, circum mē spectāre coepī. 70
 Haud procul inter arborēs appārēbat tēctum domūs. Fūmus inde ascendēbat.

- ALE. Sine dubiō torrēbant carnem.
 CET. Carō dulcis est! Libenter iterum carnem gustāmus.
 CRE. Nōnne usque ad domum ivistī, Ō dux?
 ULI. Minimē; comitum mihi in mentem vēnit famēs. Ad
 vōs igitur quam primum praedam meam rettulī.
 AEG. Crās ad illam domum ibimus. Quid cēnsētis, comitēs?
 CET. Placet; ad eum locum ibimus.
 MEN. Fortasse ibi multam carnem et bene tostam in- 80
 veniēmus.
 EUR. Glandēs saltem in silvā inveniētis.

SCAENA SECUNDA. IN ĀTRIŌ CIRCAE.

*Nēmō in ātriō adest; sed per jānuam quae ā dextrā est nunc
 fēminās quae rident, nunc suēs quī edunt audītis. Ā
 sinistrā intrant Ulixēs et Eurylochus et trēs nautae,
 Naupactōus, Proxenus, Rhodius.*

- NAU. Ubi sunt comitēs nostrī?
 PRO. Eōs neque videō neque audiō.
 RHO. At vōcēs audiō.
 EUR. Sānē, fēminās quae rident audīs.
 NAU. Nōnne suēs audītis, comitēs, quī edunt?
 PRO. Silēte, fēmina nunc cantat.
 ULI. Circē, maga, pessima fēminārum, cantat quia nos-
 trōs comitēs perdidit. 90
 RHO. Nōnne nōs etiam perdet?
 ULI. Priōrēs eam oppugnābimus.
 NAU. At sī baculum illud agitābit, nōnne mortuī nōs
 omnēs cadēmus?
 ULI. Sī pārēbitis et omnia quae nunc imperābō faciētis,
 eam vincēmus.
 EUR. Pārēbimus, Ō dux noster, vir callide. Quid imperās?
 NAUTAE. Pārēbimus nōs omnēs.
 ULI. Apud hanc fēminam nōlite edere, nōlite bibere.
 OMNES. Nihil hīc edēmus, nihil bibēmus. 100

ULI. Etiam sī ego cibum et pōculum accipiam, vōs nōlīte idem facere.

RHO. Cūr tū hoc faciēs quod nōs facere vetās?

ULI. Hunc quem teneō flōrem Mercurius mihi dedit.

PRO. Quō modō tē dēfendere hic flōs potest?

ULI. Dum hunc flōrem olfaciō, Cīrcē mē laedere nōn poterit.

EUR. Silēte omnēs; aliquis enim jānuam aperit.

ULI. Mementōte id quod imperāvī, et pārēte!

[*Intrat Cīrcē cum ancillīs quattuor.*]

CIR. Salvē, Ō Ulixēs.

110

ANC. I. Salvē, Ō Euryloche.

ANC. II. Salvē, Ō Naupactōe.

ANC. III. Salvē, Ō Proxene.

ANC. IV. Salvē, Ō Rhodī.

ULI. Salvē, Ō rēgīna. Tē, quae meum nōmen scīs, quō modō vocābō?

EUR. [*ancillae I.*] Quō modō nōmen meum scīs?

NAU. [*ancillae II.*] Quō modō nōmen meum scīs?

PRO. [*ancillae III.*] Quō modō nōmen meum scīs?

RHO. [*ancillae IV.*] Quō modō nōmen meum scīs?

120

CIR. Salvēte, omnēs advenae. Nōmen meum nōlīte rogāre, sed vīnum meum bibite et carnēs meās edite. [*Manibus plaudit.*]

[*Intrat minister quī quīnque pōcula fert.*]

MIN. Adsum, Ō rēgīna.

ANCILLAE. Dā nōbīs pōcula. [*Ē manibus ministrī quattuor pōcula accipiunt. Cīrcē manibus plaudit. Intrat servus quī amphoram fert.*]

SER. Adsum, Ō rēgīna.

CIR. Appropinquā, serve. [*Dum baculum suprā amphoram agitāt, venēnum in vīnum dēmittit.*] Tibi, Ō Juppiter, vīnum cōnsecrō.

ULI. [*nautīs.*] Cavēte vīnum. [*Servus vīnum in pōcula 130*
fundit.]

SER. [*vōce sonōrā.*] Aurea mīrificō complēvī pōcula vīnō.

CIR. Mihi dā pōculum, Ō minister.

MIN. [*vōce sonōrā.*] Tē vel¹ callidiōrem hoc vīnum reddet,
Ulixēs.

ULI. Tum erō tam callidus quam vulpēs.

CIR. Hoc prōmittō. Accipe, Ō rēx. Rēgīna tibi vīnum
offert.

ANC. I. Accipe, Ō Euryloche; ancilla rēgīnae tibi vīnum
offert.

ANC. II. Accipe, Ō Naupactōe; ancilla rēgīnae tibi vīnum 140
offert.

ANC. III. Accipe, Ō Proxene; ancilla rēgīnae tibi vīnum
offert.

ANC. IV. Accipe, Ō Rhodī; ancilla rēgīnae tibi vīnum
offert.

[*Virī ā fēminīs pōcula accipiunt. Rhodius sē post*
columnam cēlat.]

ULI. Oculōs mihi advertite. [*Intereā Eurylochus et Nau-*
pactōus et Proxenus vīnum humī effundunt, sed
Rhodius bibit.] Vīnum bibō, grātus quia nōs
advenās tam benignē excēpistī, Ō rēgīna. [*Flōrem*
olfacit, dum vīnum bibit. Omnēs Ulixem diū
spectant.]

ULI. Quid spectātis? Bonum est vīnum quod hospitibus
dās, Ō rēgīna; dī tibi praemium meritum dabunt. 150

CIR. [*baculum agitat.*] Vulpēs eris! Hoc imperō.

ULI. Quid facis? Quid dīcis? [*Ridet.*] Eia! Nunc intel-
legō; tam callidus sum quam vulpēs.

ANC. I. Estne tibi vīnum grātum, Euryloche? Nōnne
aliquid sentīs?

¹Even.

EUR. Dulce est hoc vīnum.

ANC. II. Et tū, Naupactōe, quid dīcis?

NAU. Numquam antea tam dulce vīnum bibī.

ANC. III. Nōne optimum est vīnum, Ō Proxene?

PRO. Nectar est, dīs idōneum, [sibi dīcit] sed nōn ho- 160
minibus.

ANC. IV. Tibine grātum est vīnum, Ō Rhodī?

[*Rhodium suis sonitum facit et sui similis ex atriō currit,
Ulixēs nihil videt.*]

NAU. Vidistine suam quā ex atriō currēbat?

PRO. Ubi est Rhodius? Multum timeō.

EUR. Nōlī timēre; Ulixēs nōs servābit.

ULI. At aliquid mihi in mentem venit, Ō rēgīna. Aliīne
hīc adsunt apud tē hospitēs?

CIR. Multās bēstiās apud mē habeo, sed hominēs nullōs.

ULI. Ante hōs duos diēs¹ comitēs meī, nautae, ad tuam
domum vērunt, quia ēsuriēbant. 180

CIR. Ita est. Illis cibum dedī; hominēs brevī hinc dis-
cesserunt.

ANCILLAE. [*rident.*] Suēs tamen apud nōs manent.

NAUTAE. Quid dīcitis? Nōn suēs erant comitēs nostrī,
sed virī.

[*Circē manibus plaudit. Intrat coquus quā carnēs
in paterā fert.*]

COQ. Adsum, Ō rēgīna.

CIR. Quid affers?

COQ. [*vōce sonōrā.*] Ambrosiam hospitibus dulcem fēlici-
bus offers.

CIR. Bibistis, Ō hospitēs, nunc edite. 180

ULI. [*nautīs.*] Cavēte carnēs.

¹Two days ago.

CIR. [*baculum suprā carnēs agitāt.*] Tibi, Ō Juppiter, carnēs cōsecrō. [*Deinde Ulixi offert. Omnēs carnem manibus accipiunt.*]

ULI. [*subitō clāmat.*] Ubi est Rhodius? [*Dum omnēs circumspectant, nautae carnēs rejiciunt.*]

ANC. IV. Ex ātriō fūgit—[*parvā vōce*—]sūs. [*Rident ancillae.*]

ULI. Carnem edō et tibi, Ō rēgina, grātiās agō. [*Omnēs diū spectant.*]

CIR. [*baculum agitāt.*] Tandem vulpēs eris! Hoc ego, Circē, imperō.

ULI. [*magnō rīsū.*] Tē agnōscō, fēmina dīs hominibusque infesta, improba maga. Nihil efficere potes. [*Gla-* 190
dium stringit.] Tē et tuās ancillās occīdam, quia tot hominēs jam perdidistis.

CIR. Nōlī mē occīdere, Ō optime rēx! Nōn iterum hominēs laedam; hoc prōmittō.

ULI. Sī tē occīdam, hoc prō certō habēbō.

EUR. Ubi sunt nostrī comitēs? Jubē eam, Ō Ulixēs, hoc dīcere.

CIR. Sī tibi hoc dīcam, tūta erō?

ULI. Sī hoc faciēs, vivēs.

CIR. [*baculum agitāt.*] Ō suēs, quī comitēs Ulixis fuistis, 200
este iterum hominēs.

[*Intrant cēterī nautae, quī comitēs salūtant.*]

ULI. Nōlī iterum hominem in bēstiae formam mūtāre!
Hoc jūrā!

CIR. Hoc jūrō.

ANCILLAE. [*lacrimant.*] Hoc jūrāmus quod domina jūrāvit.

ULI. Abīte, miserae. [*Fēminae discēdunt; nautae gaudent.*]

America

SAMUEL F. SMITH

HENRY CAREY

1. Te ca - no, Pa - tri - a, Can - di - da,
2. Tu - tor es u - ni - cus, U - nus a-

li - be - ra; Te re - fe - ret Por - tus et
vûm De - us! Lau - do li - bens. Pa - tri - a

ex - ul - um Et tu - mu - lus se - num;
lu - ce - at, Li - be - ra ful - ge - at,

Li - be - ra mon - ti - um Vox re - so - net.
Vis tu - a mu - ni - at, Om - ni - po - tens!

The Latin version is by Professor George D. Kellogg, and is printed by permission.

Integer Vitae¹

HORATIUS, B.C. 65-8

Fr. F. FLEMMING, c. 1811

1. In - te - ger vi - tae sce - le - ris - que
 2. Si - ve per Syr - tis i - ter aes - tu -
 3. Nam - que me sil - va lu - pus in Sa -
 4. Qua - le por - ten - tum ne - que mi - li -

pu - rus Non e - get Mau - ris ja - cu - lis ne -
 o - sas, Si - ve fac - tu - rus per in - hos - pi -
 bi - na, Dum me - am can - to La - la - gen et
 ta - ris Dau - ni - as la - tis a - lit aes - cu -

que ar - cu Nec ve - ne - na - tis gra - vi - da sa -
 ta - lem Cau - ca - sum vel quae lo - ca fa - bu -
 ul - tra Ter - mi - num cu - ris va - gor ex - pe -
 le - tis, Nec Ju - bae tel - lus ge - ne - rat, le -

(1) For English translation see page 372.



git - tis, Fus - ce, pha - re - - tra,
 lo - sus Lam - bit Hy - das - - pes.
 di - tis, Fu - git in - er - - mem.
 o - num A - - ri - da nu - - trix.

5 Pone me pigris ubi nulla campis
 Arbor aestiva recreatur aura,
 Quod latus mundi nebulae malusque
 Juppiter urget;

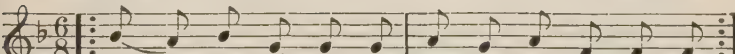
6 Pone sub curru nimium propinqui
 Solis, in terra domibus negata;
 Dulce ridentem Lalagen amabo,
 Dulce loquentem.

Horner Jacculo¹

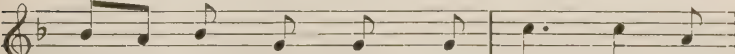
GAMMER GURTON, English

HENRICUS DRURY, Latin

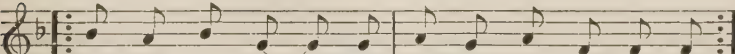
Old Nursery Tune



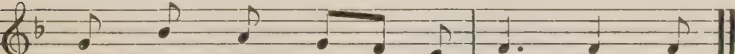
1. { Hor - ner Jac - cu - lo se - dit in an - gu - lo, }
 { Vo - rans, ceu se - ri - as a - ge - ret fe - ri - as, }



Crus - tum dul - ce et a - ma - bi - le:



{ In - quit et u - num ex - tra - hens pru - num: }
 { "Hor-ner, quam fu - e - ris no - bi - le pu - e - ris" }



Ex - em - plar i - - mi - ta - bi - le."

(1) For English words see page 372.

Adeste Fideles¹

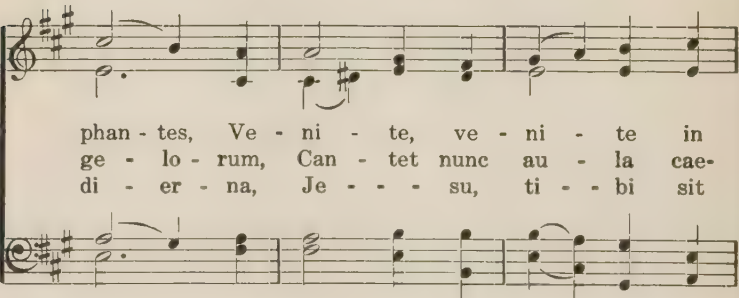
Author unknown
17th or 18th cent.

(PORTUGUESE HYMN)

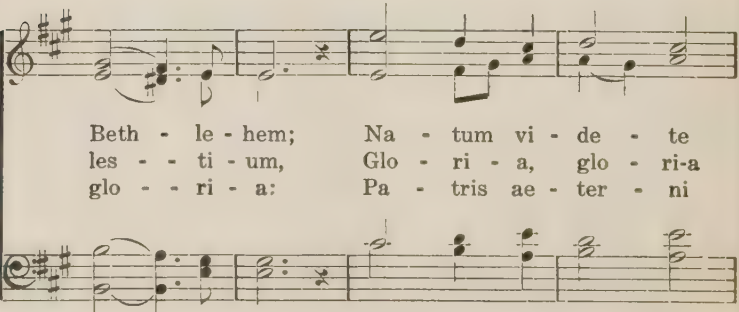
JOHN READING, d. 1692



1. Ad - es - te, fi - de - les, Lae - ti tri - um -
 2. ✕ Can - tet nunc I - o! Cho - rus an -
 3. ✕ Er - go qui na - tus Di - - e ho -



phan - tes, Ve - ni - te, ve - ni - te in
 ge - lo - rum, Can - tet nunc au - la cae -
 di - er - na, Je - - - su, ti - - bi sit



Beth - le - hem; Na - tum vi - de - te
 les - - ti - um, Glo - ri - a, glo - ri - a
 glo - - ri - a: Pa - tris ae - ter - ni

(1) For English words see page 372.

Re - gem an - ge - lo - rum: Ve - ni - te a - do -
 In ex - cel - sis De - o! Ve - ni - te a - do -
 Ver - bum ca - ro fac - tum! Ve - ni - te a - do -

re - mus, ve - ni - te a - do - re - mus, ve -

ni - te ad - o - re - mus Do - mi - num.

Domina Maria¹

GAMMER GURTON, English
 HENRICUS DRURY, Latin

Old Nursery Melody

O me - a Ma - ri - a, To - ta con - tra - ri - a,

Quid ti - bi cres - cit in hor - to? Tes - tae et cro - ta - li

Sunt mi - hi flos - cu - li, Cum hy - a - cin - thi - no ser - to.

(1) For English words see page 373.

ENGLISH WORDS OF THE LATIN SONGS

INTEGER VITAE

The man upright in life and free from guilt, needs not, O Fuscus, Moorish darts nor bow nor quiver loaded with envenomed arrows, whether his journey is to be over the boiling Syrtis or through the inhospitable Caucasus or in the places washed by the Hydaspes, famed in story. For while in the Sabine woods I was singing of my Lalage, and carefree was wandering beyond bounds, a wolf fled from me though I was unarmed. No such monster does the warlike Daunian nourish in its oak forest, nor does the land of Juba, that desert nurse of lions, produce the like. Place me where on the lifeless plains no tree is warmed to new life by the summer breeze, a region over which hang clouds and a gloomy sky; place me beneath the course of the sun as it draws too near the earth, in a land devoid of human dwellings; still will I love Lalage with her sweet smile and her sweet words.

LITTLE JACK HORNER

Little Jack Horner
Sat in a corner,
Eating a Christmas pie.
He put in his thumb
And pulled out a plum,
And cried, "What a good boy am I!"

O COME, ALL YE FAITHFUL¹

O come, all ye faithful, joyfully triumphant;
To Bethlehem hasten now with glad accord.
Lo! in a manger lies the King of angels,
O come, let us adore Him, Christ the Lord.

Raise, raise, choirs of angels, songs of loudest triumph;
Through heaven's high arches be your praises poured.
Now to our God be glory in the highest;
O come, let us adore Him, Christ the Lord.

¹ The words of this hymn are based upon the Latin hymn *Adeste Fideles*, but they are not an exact translation.

Amen, Lord, we bless Thee, born for our salvation;
O Jesus, forever be Thy name adored;
Word of the Father, late in flesh appearing,
O come, let us adore Him, Christ the Lord.

MISTRESS MARY

Mistress Mary,
Quite contrary,
How does your garden grow?
With silver bells
And cockle-shells
And hyacinths all of a row.



A LITTER

MEDICUS

PERSŌNAE.

Titus: <i>puer Rōmānus, duodecim annōs nātus.</i>		Lūcius	} <i>Titī frātrēs, geminī,</i> <i>Pūblius</i> } <i>septem annōs nātī.</i>
Octāvia: <i>Titī māter.</i>		Medicus.	

SCAENA. IN CUBICULŌ PUERŌRUM.

Ā sinistrā stat lātus lēctulus; ibi dormiunt trēs puerī, Titus et Lūcius et Pūblius. Ā dextrā est fenestra, ā tergō jānuā. Gallus extrā cantat et puerōs ē somnō excitat.

TIT. Quota hōra est?

LUC. [ad fenestram currit.] Prīma ferē hōra est. Sōl mox surget.

TIT. Ō mē miserum! Pēnsū meum nōn fēcī. Quid Orbilius dicet?

PUB. Immō vērō, quid faciet Orbilius?

TIT. Jam ferulam sentiō. Ad lūdum ire nōn audeō.

LUC. Gaudeō quia nōndum ad lūdum imus, ego et Pūblius.

TIT. Quālēs frātrēs estis! Quia vāpulābō, gaudētis.

LUC. ET PUB. [saltant et cantant.] Titus vāpulābit; Titus 10.
vāpulābit.

TIT. [īrātus.] Vōs etiam vāpulābitis.

[Frātrēs loculīs ferit.]

LUC. ET PUB. [lacrimant.] Lacrimāmus, quia Titus vāpulābit. Lacrimāmus, quia Titus vāpulābit.

TIT. Quia vōs vāpulāvistis, lacrimātis. Iterum autem lacrimābitis, nisi bonum cōsiliū mihi inveniētis; nam ego vāpulāre hodiē nōlō.

PUB. Cōsiliū habeō.

TIT. ET LUC. Dīc nōbīs.

PUB. Manēte; cōgitō.

20

TIT. Festīnā, Pūblī; Ō mē miserum, vāpulābō.

LUC. Fortasse malum Pūblius habet cōsiliū; tum vāpulābis, Tite.

TIT. Nisi statim cōsiliū nārrābis, iterum idem accipiēs.
[*Loculōs sūmit.*]

PUB. Cōgitāvi. Audīte cōsiliū. Vesperī apud Quīntum cēnābās.

TIT. Illud jam scīmus.

PUB. Bene, ibi nimis ēdistī.

TIT. Quid dicere vīs? Semper nimis edō; tū quoque et Lūcius.

30

PUB. Sānē, at tū hodiē aegrōtās, quia nimis vesperī ēdistī.

TIT. At nōn aegrōtō, mī frāter!

LUC. Ō stulte, nōnne intellegis? Hodiē aegrum simulābis.

TIT. Intellegō. Euge, Pūblī! bonum cōsiliū invēnistī! Tū, Lūcī, ī ad mātrem; illī dē morbo meō aliquid nārrā! [*Exit Lūcius.*] Pūblī, in aquam hunc pannum merge! Festīnā! nam mātrem audiō; pannō meōs oculōs preme! Heu! heu! quantum doleō!

[*Octāvia intrat cum Lūciō.*]

OCT. Hercle! Quam aeger es! Quid habēs, mī fili?

40

TIT. Multum doleō. Nunc calidus sum, nunc frigidus.

OCT. Ō cāre fili, medicum arcessam. Quis medicum venīre jubēbit?

LUC. Ego medicum arcessam, mea māter.

PUB. Et ego cum Lūciō ibō.

OCT. Īte, parvulī, et medicāmentum ferre medicum jubēte.

LUC. Acerbum medicāmentum sēcum feret medicus.

PUB. Acerbum medicāmentum. [*Exeunt geminī.*]

TIT. Ut sitiō, māter cārissima!

OCT. Miselle puer! Aquam frīgidam tibi dabō. Bibe! 50
[*Titus bibit.*]

TIT. Māter, nunc frīgidus sum. Ecce! membra mea
tremunt.

OCT. Ēn, vestīmentīs tē tegam.

TIT. Māter, nimis calidus sum.

OCT. Eheu! Quī morbus tē tenet? Quandō medicus veniet?

TIT. Aliquis jānuam pulsāt.

[*Medicus cum puerīs intrat.*]

MED. Salvē, domina! Quis aeger est?

OCT. Salvē, medice! Filius meus aegrōtat.

MED. Salvē, puer! Aegerne es? [*Titus annuit.*]

LUC. ET PUB. Ita, medice, valdē aeger est. 60

MED. Num edere potes? [*Titus annuit.*]

LUC. ET PUB. Minimē; nihil edere potest.

MED. Ostende mihi linguam tuam. Hem! Quid herī ēdistī?

TIT. Nesciō, medice.

LUC. Sciō equidem.

PUB. Et ego.

LUC. Apud Quīntum vesperī cēnābat.

PUB. Nimis ēdit—porcum.

LUC. Et pōma.

PUB. Et liba. 70

LUC. Et alia multa.

OCT. Minimē mīrum, sī hodiē aegrōtās.

MED. Minimē mīrum est. Medicāmentum tibi parābō.
[*Medicus medicāmentum parat.*]

LUC. Quāle medicāmentum parās?

PUB. Acerbumne est annōn?

MED. Acerbum est.

LUC. ET PUB. Acerbum est medicāmentum. Acerbum est
medicāmentum.

MED. Dā mihi pōculum, domina! [*Fundit.*] Nunc bibe,
puer! [*Titus medicāmentum gustat.*] 80

TIT. Nōlō bibere. Tāle pōculum numquam bibam.

OCT. Ohē, puer improbe! Quō modō aegrōtāre dēsīnēs,
nisi medicāmentum bibēs?

LUC. ET PUB. Titus bibere nōn vult. Titus bibere nōn
vult.

MED. Necesse est bibere.

LUC. ET PUB. Acerbum est. Gaudēmus, quia acerbum est
medicāmentum.

TIT. Aliquis mox vāpulābit. [*Geminī audiunt et silent.*]

OCT. Statim bibe; sīn minus, patrem vocābō. 90

TIT. Nōlō. [*Exit Octāvia.*]

PATRIS VOX. Tite, audīsne mē?

TIT. Ita, mī pater.

PATRIS VOX. Nōnne medicāmentum bibere vīs?

TIT. Sānē, mī pater, bibere volō. [*Dum bibit, Octāvia
intrat.*]

OCT. Medicāmentum bibit Titus.

MED. Bene; deinde tranquillē dormiēs. Mox validus iterum
eris et rōbustus. Valē, domina; valēte, puerī.

OMNES. Valē, medice. [*Exit Medicus.*]

TIT. Jam validior sum. Licetne mihi surgere, māter? 100

OCT. Nōn licet, Ō stulte. Tōtum diem in lectulō jacēbis.
Et ego prope tē manēbō.

TIT. Nōn necesse est tibi, cārissima māter, prope mē
manēre.

OCT. Meus es filius. Prope tē manēbo, dum aegrōtās.

LUC. ET PUB. Licetne nobīs in hortō lūdere?

OCT. Abīte, geminī, et in hortō lūdite.

LUC. ET PUB. Titus in lectulō manēbit, tōtum diem in
lēctulō manēbit. [*Exeunt Lūcius et Pūblius.
Titus pugnum agitat.*]

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON I

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

THE INDEPENDENT PARTICIPIAL PHRASE

696. A phrase consisting of a noun or pronoun and a participle is sometimes used in a sentence without being closely connected with any other word in the sentence. Thus, *A new leader having been chosen, we may expect better results.* In this sentence the phrase *a new leader having been chosen* is not directly connected with any word in the rest of the sentence. Such a phrase is said to be independent of the rest of the sentence.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

697. The case which is used in Latin for such independent constructions is the ablative. In the sentence given above as an example the word for *leader* would be put in the ablative in Latin and the participle for *having been chosen* would agree with it in gender, number, and case. This use of the ablative is called the *ablative absolute*.¹

Duce captō, hostēs fūgērunt, The leader having been captured, the enemy fled.

Filiis meis laudātis, laetus sum, My sons having been praised, I am happy.

¹The original force of the ablative in this construction may be seen if the preposition *with* is used in the translation of these phrases: *with the leader captured; with my sons (having been) praised.*

698. Often an adjective or another noun is used instead of a participle as the second part of the ablative absolute construction.

Amīcō meō invitō, diūtius nōn manēbō, My friend (being) unwilling, I shall not remain longer.

Caesare duce, milītēs semper fortiter pugnābant, Caesar (being) leader, the soldiers always fought bravely.

a. The participle *being*, which is often used in translating an ablative absolute of which the second part is an adjective or a noun, has no equivalent in Latin.

FREE TRANSLATION OF THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

699. In English, independent phrases which correspond to the literal translation of the ablative absolute are not very often used. It is, therefore, frequently necessary to translate the ablative absolute by a clause introduced by *when*, *after*, *if*, *since*, or *although*, as the sense of the main clause may suggest.

monte occupātō, when the mountain had been seized.

duce captō, after the leader had been captured.

a. Sometimes prepositional phrases are employed in translating this ablative.

Gallis invītis, against the will of the Gauls.

Caesare cōsule, in the consulship of Caesar.

READING EXERCISE: HERCULES

700. Ōlim in Graeciā erat rēx quī Creōn appellātus est. Is rēx erat ignāvus, neque cīvēs contrā hostēs dēfendēbat. Tum Herculēs, quī in eādē urbe habitābat, exercitū coāctō, cum hostibus pugnābat. Hostibus victis, exercitus in urbem reductus est. Omnēs cīvēs Herculem laudābant, et praemia eī data sunt.

Herculēs erat vir validissimus tōtīus Graeciae, neque ūllum perīculum timēbat. Multōs labōrēs cōnfēcīt et per multās terrās errāvit. Dēnique, hīs labōribus cōnfecītis, in Graeciam rediit.

701.

VOCABULARY

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum,	Herculēs, Herculis, m., Her
collect, compel	cules
cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,	labor, labōris, m., labor
accomplish	redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-
Creōn, Creontis, m., Creon, a	tum, lead back
Greek name	ūllus, -a, -um, any

a. The genitive and dative of ūllus are like those of sōlus, section 13 of the Appendix.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

702. 1. Collecting an army (an army having been collected), Hercules defeated the enemy. 2. After the capture of the city (the city having been captured) the king was killed. 3. On seeing the enemy (the enemy having been seen) the soldiers seized (took) their arms. 4. Hearing the sound (the sound having been heard) the soldiers hastened to the gates of the city. 5. After the founding of the city (the city having been founded) a king was elected.

ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

703. 1. What is a *cogent* reason? 2. Find two English words derived from *redūcō*. 3. What English adjective is connected in derivation with *labor*?

OPTIONAL DRILL

704. A. In the following sentences point out the phrases or clauses which could be translated by ablatives absolute and give the equivalent independent phrase in English for each:

1. Leaving the legion in camp, the general crossed the river.
2. After killing the deer the man returned to his companions.
3. On receiving the reward the boy thanked his father.
4. When the king had been driven out, the citizens were happier.

(a) Give the gender and number of the Latin participles required in the translation of the independent phrases in the preceding sentences.

B. 1. Agrīs suis vāstātīs, sociī auxilium postulant. 2. Cōnsiliō tuō probātō, omnēs cīvēs tē laudant. 3. Oppidō dēlētō, barbarī fūgērunt. 4. Armīs cēlātīs, portās aperuimus. 5. Nūntiō missō, diū in eō locō mānsimus.

705. 1. Hearing the shout, the boy ran from the farmhouse. 2. When many had been wounded (*not a clause in Latin*) the soldiers left the rampart. 3. When the rope had been let down, Horatius was pulled from the river.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON II

DEPONENT VERBS

FORM AND USE OF DEPONENTS

706. A deponent verb is a verb which is passive in form but active in meaning. Thus **cōnor**, *I try*, **pollicētur**, *he promises*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF DEPONENTS

707. Deponents have only three principal parts and only two stems, the present and the participial. The principal parts of **cōnor**, of the first conjugation, and **polliceor**, of the second, are:

cōnor, **cōnārī**, **cōnātus sum**, *try*

polliceor, **pollicērī**, **pollicitus sum**, *promise*

PRESENT INFINITIVE ENDINGS

708. The following are the endings of the present infinitive of deponent verbs for the four conjugations:

I	II	III	IV
-ārī	-ērī	-ī	-īrī

DEPONENTS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

709. The present tense of deponents of the first and second conjugations is formed exactly like the present passive of **portō** and **moneō**:

I		II	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
cōnor	cōnāmur	polliceor	pollicēmur
cōnāris	cōnāminī	pollicēris	pollicēminī
cōnātur	cōnantur	pollicētur	pollicentur

710. In the imperfect and future the use of tense signs and person endings is the same as in the passive of the corresponding tenses of **portō** and **moneō**:

cōnābar, cōnābāris, etc.; cōnābor, cōnāberis, etc.; pollicēbar, pollicēbāris, etc.; pollicēbor, pollicēberis, etc.

PERFECT SYSTEM OF CŌNOR AND POLLICEOR

711.

PERFECT TENSE

I		II	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
cōnātus sum	cōnātī sumus	pollicitus sum	pollicitī sumus
cōnātus es	cōnātī estis	pollicitus es	pollicitī estis
cōnātus est	cōnātī sunt	pollicitus est	pollicitī sunt

a. The past perfect and future perfect are formed like the corresponding tenses of the passive of **portō** and **moneō**: cōnātus eram, etc.; cōnātus erō, etc.; pollicitus eram, etc.; pollicitus erō, etc.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

712. 1. *Hī hominēs auxilium pollicentur.* 2. *Ille rēx urbem dēfendere nōn cōnātus est.* 3. *Multi hunc librum mīrantur.* 4. *Herculēs leōnem nōn veritus est.* 5. *Illī barbarī lātē vagābantur et agrōs gentium fīnitimārum vāstābant.* 6. *Ōlim Herculēs magnum leōnem necāvit quī in silvā latēbat.* 7. *Incolae ejus regiōnis leōnem magnopere verēbantur.* 8. *Eam silvam semper vitābant ubi leō erat.* 9. *Leōne necātō, omnēs laetī erant.* 10. *Magnum praemium quod pollicitī erant Herculi dedērunt.*

713.

VOCABULARY

<i>cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum,</i>	<i>polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum,</i>
try, attempt	promise
<i>fīnitimus, -a, -um,</i>	<i>vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum,</i>
neighboring	wander
<i>leō, leōnis, m.,</i>	
lion	
<i>mīror, mīrārī, mīrātus sum,</i>	<i>vereor, verērī, veritus sum,</i>
admire, wonder at	fear

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

714. 1. The man does not try to defend his brother. 2. We cannot promise aid. 3. The Gauls feared punishment because they had killed the lieutenant. 4. The Etruscans wondered at the courage of Horatius. 5. The boys are wandering through the forest.

OPTIONAL DRILL

715. A. 1. Write the conjugation of *vagor* and *vereor* in the present tense. 2. Write a synopsis of *mīror* in the third person plural. 3. Conjugate *vereor* in the future. 4. Translate: *cōnābātur; pollicēbātur; vagābuntur; verentur; mīrābimur.*

B. 1. *Rēx pecūniam pollicētur.* 2. *Barbarī nostrās urbēs mīrātī sunt.* 3. *Illī exulēs per Eurōpam vagātī sunt.* 4. In-

colae urbis adventum barbarōrum verēbantur. 5. Cūr flūmen trānsire nōn cōnāris? 6. Ponte frāctō, hostēs flūmen trānsire nōn poterant.

- 716.** 1. I was trying; I was promising; we were admiring.
 2. We shall fear; they will wander; you (*plural*) will promise.
 3. The town having been fortified, the citizens were safe.
 4. We shall try to come soon.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON III

DEPONENT VERBS (Continued)

DEPONENTS OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

717. The present tense of deponents of the third and fourth conjugations is formed like the present passive of **dūcō** and **audiō**. The principal parts and the present indicative of **sequor** of the third conjugation and **partior** of the fourth are as follows:

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow
partior, partīrī, partītus sum, share

718.

PRESENT

III		IV	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
sequor	sequimur	partior	partimur
sequeris	sequimini	partīris	partīmini
sequitur	sequuntur	partītur	partiuntur

719. In the imperfect and future the use of tense signs and person endings is the same as in the passive of the corresponding tenses of **dūcō** and **audiō**: **sequēbar, sequēbāris, etc.**; **partiēbar, partiēbāris, etc.**; **sequare, sequēris, etc.**; **partiar, partiēris, etc.**

720.

PERFECT OF SEQUOR AND PARTIOR

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
secūtus sum	secūtī sumus	partītus sum	partītī sumus
secūtus es	secūtī estis	partītus es	partītī estis
secūtus est	secūtī sunt	partītus est	partītī sunt

a. The past perfect and future perfect are formed like the corresponding tenses of the passive of **dūcō** and **audiō**: **secūtus eram**, etc., **secūtus erō**, etc., **partītus eram**, etc., **partītus erō**, etc.

DEPONENTS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATON IN -IOR

721. Verbs of the third conjugation ending in **-ior** are conjugated like the passive of **capiō**. The synopsis of **prōgredior**, which belongs to this class, is as follows in the third person singular:

prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, advance

PRES.	prōgreditur	PERF.	prōgressus est
IMP.	prōgrediēbātur	P. PERF.	prōgressus erat
FUT.	prōgrediētur	F. PERF.	prōgressus erit

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

722. 1. Hunc cibum partiēmur quod amīcī nostrī ēsuriunt. 2. Parvus puer patrem diūtius sequī nōn potest. 3. Tum dux Rōmānus ad collem cum equitibus prōgressus est. 4. In Eurōpam cum amīcīs proficīscimur, et duōs annōs ibi manēbimus. 5. Duo centuriōnēs ex castrīs prōgrediuntur et cum hostibus pugnant. 6. Tē sequēmur quod cōnsilium tuum semper bonum fuit. 7. Herculēs usque ad eum collem prōgressus est ubi Rōma postea condita est. 8. Equitēs in castrīs mānsērunt, sed aliī militēs profectī sunt. 9. Tum leōnēs et alia animālia per illam regiōnem vagābantur. 10. Pācem nōbīs pollicitus es, sed pācem nōn habēmus.

723.

VOCABULARY

eques, equitis, m., horseman; <i>pl.</i> , cavalry	prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgres- sus sum, advance
partior, -īrī, partitus sum, share, divide	sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow
proficīscor, proficīscī, pro- fectus sum, set out	

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

724. 1. The cavalry were following the enemy, who had fled from the camp. 2. We shall not advance far from the camp. 3. The leader shares this honor with the soldiers. 4. The Romans set out into the region where the barbarians were laying waste the fields. 5. Many wondered at the courage of Hercules. 6. The leader promised money to the scouts.

OPTIONAL DRILL

725. A. 1. Write a synopsis of **proficīscor** in the third person singular. 2. Write the conjugation of **partior** and **prōgredior** in the present tense and point out the differences between the two. 3. Decline **eques** and **equus**. 4. Translate: (a) **proficīscētur; sequētur; sequentur; sequuntur; prōgrediētur; prōgreditur.** (b) We were following; they were following; he will share; he shares; he fears; he admires.

B. 1. **Ad urbem proficīscēbāmur in quā māter tua habitābat.** 2. **Legiō ad ripam flūminis prōgressa est.** 3. **Explōrātor hostēs sequētur quī nunc proficīscuntur.** 4. **Hanc pecūniam partiēmur quae nōbis data est.** 5. **Civēs magnopere equitēs hostium verēbantur.** 6. **Per multās terrās vagātī sumus, et laetī patriam iterum vidēmus.**

726. 1. Who will follow me into the city? 2. We advanced with all our soldiers. 3. Your brother had set out to Europe with your father. 4. We did not promise help to the boys.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON IV

DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS AND WITH SPECIAL VERBS

DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

727. Many verbs compounded with prepositions take a dependent noun or pronoun in the dative case. The most important prepositions whose compounds are thus used are **ante**, **ob**, **prae**, and **sub**.

Centuriō legiōnī praeest, *The centurion is in command of the legion.*

a. Other prepositions whose compounds sometimes take the dative are **ad**, **circum**, **cum** (com-), **in**, **inter**, **post**, **prō**, **super**.

b. If the simple verb is transitive the compound may have both an accusative and a dative.

Rōmānī Gallīs bellum inferunt, *The Romans make war on the Gauls.*

DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

728. Most verbs meaning *to please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, serve, obey, favor, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare* govern the dative.

Liber tibi placet, *The book pleases you.*

a. The verbs **imperō**, *command*, **noceō**, *injure*, and a few others also govern the dative.

b. The English equivalents of these verbs take direct objects, but the Latin words did not suggest to the Romans a direct object. Thus **placēre** meant *be pleasing to* and **persuādēre** meant *make attractive to*.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

729. 1. Puerō persuāsī, sed patrī ejus persuādēre nōn potuī. 2. Cūr epistula mea tibi nōn placet? 3. Militēs fortiter hostibus resistēbant et pontem dēfendēbant. 4. Rōmānī Horātiō pārēbunt et in urbem redībunt. 5. Rōmānīs bellum nōn inferimus, sed Rōmānī nōbīs bellum inferunt. 6. Dux quī urbi praeest ignāvus est. 7. Cīvēs alium ducem exercituī praeficiēnt. 8. Gallis resistēmus et patriam dēfendēmus. 9. Hoc cōnsilium mihi nōn placet, sed multī probant. 10. Ūna legiō exercituī barbarōrum restitit.

730.

VOCABULARY

inferō, inferre, intulī, inlātum, bring upon, cause;	placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, please, be pleasing
bellum inferre, make war on.	praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, place in command of
persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, persuade	praesum, -esse, -fuī, be in charge of, be in command of

a. In the indicative the verb **inferō** is conjugated like **dūcō** except for a few forms in the present tense. Only forms of the third conjugation or belonging to the perfect system are used in the exercises of this book.

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

731. 1. This story greatly pleased the little girls. 2. The boy obeyed his father and remained in the town. 3. The consul who is in command of the army today is not a good leader. 4. Why have the Etruscans made war on the Romans? 5. I shall place the bravest centurion in command of these soldiers.

OPTIONAL DRILL

732. A. 1. Mihī persuādēs; tibi persuādeō; Horātius cōsulī persuādet. 2. Haec terra nōbīs placet; pāx omnibus cīvibus placet. 3. Barbarī legiōnī resistēbant. 4. Exercitus ducī nōn pārēt. 5. Centuriō legiōnī praeest.

B. 1. Sextus equitibus praeest quī hostēs sequuntur. 2. Cōsul quī tum urbī praeerat ad pontem prōgressus est. 3. Dux quī bellō praefectus est statim ex urbe profectus est. 4. Omnēs eum ducem ōderant quī Siciliae praefectus erat. 5. Bellum huic gentī inferēmus quod agrī nostrī vāstātī sunt.

733. 1. This war did not please good citizens. 2. The soldiers were resisting the barbarians who had crossed the river. 3. The Roman leader who has been placed in command of the ships is a brave man. 4. You will never persuade these citizens.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON V

PARTICIPLES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE

THE PRESENT ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

734. The present active participle of a Latin verb ends in **-ns**, and is formed on the present stem. In the fourth conjugation and in **-iō** verbs of the third conjugation the stem ending becomes **-iē**, as in the imperfect tense. The present participles of regular verbs in the four conjugations are as follows.

I	II	III		IV
(portō)	(monēō)	(dūcō)	(capiō)	(audiō)
portāns	monēns	dūcēns	capiēns	audiēns
<i>carrying</i>	<i>warning</i>	<i>leading</i>	<i>taking</i>	<i>hearing</i>

a. The English verb has a present passive participle as well as a present active: *being carried*, *being warned*, etc. There is no present passive participle in Latin.

DECLENSION OF THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

735. Like other participles, the present participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun which it modifies. It is declined as an adjective of the third declension:

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Singular</i>	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. portāns	portāns	monēns	monēns
GEN. portantis	portantis	monentis	monentis
DAT. portanti	portanti	monenti	monenti
ACC. portantem	portāns	monentem	monēns
ABL. portante (-ī)	portante (-ī)	monente (-ī)	monente (-ī)
<i>Plural</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
NOM. portantēs	portantia	monentēs	monentia
GEN. portantium	portantium	monentium	monentium
DAT. portantibus	portantibus	monentibus	monentibus
ACC. portantīs (-ēs)	portantia	monentīs (-ēs)	monentia
ABL. portantibus	portantibus	monentibus	monentibus

a. The use of the Latin present participle must not be confused with the progressive form of the verb (see section 108, a). In the sentence *The man is standing in the street* the expression *is standing* is the progressive form of the verb, and will be translated by one Latin word, **stat**. In the sentence *The man standing on the wall is my brother*, the word *standing* is a participle modifying *man*, and will be translated by the Latin present participle, **stāns**.

b. Deponent verbs have present active participles: **cōnāns**, **verēns**, etc.

THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

736. Latin verbs have a future active participle formed on the participial stem. It is declined like the perfect passive participle, from which it is to be distinguished by **-ūr-**, preceding the case ending.

portātūrus, -a, -um, *about to carry*, or *going to carry*.

monitūrus, -a, -um, *about to warn*, or *going to warn*.

a. Some verbs which have no perfect participle have a future active participle. The future active participle of such verbs is given as the fourth principal part.

737. The future participle of **sum** is **futūrus**. The principal parts of **sum** are **sum, esse, fui, futūrus**. The fourth of the principal parts of **stō** is **stātūrus**.

a. The future participle is often combined with the forms of **sum** to refer to something which someone intends to do or is about to do.

Mānsūrus eram, *I was about to remain, I intended to remain.*

Laudātūrus est, *He is about to praise, He intends to praise.*

b. Deponent verbs have future active participles: **cōnātūrus, veritūrus**, etc.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

738. 1. Puer per agrōs ambulāns serpentem vīdit. 2. Hic sonus infāntem dormientem excitāvit. 3. Herculēs arcum et sagittās rapuit et animal necātūrus erat. 4. Māter infāntium clamōrem eōrum in cūnīs cubantium audīvit et maritum suum excitāvit. 5. Maritus ejus lūmen accēnsūrus erat. 6. Lūmine accēnsō vir infāntem tūtum esse vīdit. 7. Epistulam dē hīs rēbus mox missūrus sum. 8. Hostēs legiōnem venientem vīdērunt et statim fūgērunt. 9. Haec urbs nōbīs nōn placet, et mox ad alium locum cum amicis profectūri sumus.

739.

VOCABULARY

cubō, -āre, -uī, -itum, lie

down, lie

cūnae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, cradle

lūmen, lūminis, N., light

maritus, -ī, M., husband

serpēs, -entis, F., snake

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

740. Translate the italicized words in the following sentences:

1. We saw the *ship coming* to the land. 2. We hear the voices of *the sailors demanding* food. 3. The consul is the brother of *the man standing* on the bridge. 4. I saw a *deer running* through the forest. 5. The *scouts fleeing* from the enemy crossed this river. 6. Your friends are *going to remain* in Europe.

OPTIONAL DRILL

741. A. 1. Give the present participles of **habeō**, **habitō**, **praeficiō**, **proficīcor**. 2. Write the declension of the present participle of **accendō**. 3. Give the future active participles of **mittō**, **dicō**, **dō**, **accipiō**, **persuādeō**. 4. Translate: *clāmāns*; *vidēns*; *expectāns*; *jaciēns*; *mūniēns*.

B. 1. *Nautae per insulam errantēs parvum oppidum vidērunt*. 2. *Major numerus sociōrum ventūrus est*. 3. *Horātius pontem frāctūrus est*. 4. *Rēx magnōs lūdōs factūrus est*. 5. *Perseus in litus dēscēnsūrus erat*. 6. *Hunc locum petēns ad tuam insulam vēnī*.

742. 1. The serpents were about to kill the children (*īnfantēs*.) 2. The centurion was about to seize his sword. 3. The sailors aroused the boy sleeping on the shore. 4. The barbarians fleeing from the battle were killed by the cavalry.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON VI

TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE

THE ACTIVE INFINITIVES

743. The Latin infinitive has three tenses, the present, perfect, and future. The active infinitives of **portō** are as follows: present, **portāre**, *to carry*, perfect, **portāvisse**, *to have carried*, future, **portātūrus esse**, *to be going to carry* (or *to be*

about to carry). The present infinitives of the four conjugations, both active and passive, have already been given (*section 473*).

FORMATION OF THE PERFECT AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVES

744. The perfect active infinitive is formed by adding **-isse** to the perfect stem. The future active infinitive consists of the future active participle with **esse**. The active infinitives of the model verbs of the four conjugations are as follows:

	I	II	III	IV
PRES.	portāre	monēre	dūcere	audire
PERF.	portāvisse	monuisse	dūxisse	audīvisse
FUT.	portātūrus esse	monitūrus esse	ductūrus esse	audītūrus esse

THE PASSIVE INFINITIVES

745. The present passive and perfect passive infinitives of **portō** are: present, **portārī**, *to be carried*, perfect, **portātus esse**, *to have been carried*. The future passive infinitive is rarely used and is omitted from the exercises of this book.

The perfect passive infinitive of all verbs is made up of the perfect participle followed by **esse**. The present passive and perfect passive infinitives of the model verbs of the four conjugations are as follows:

	I	II	III	IV
PRES.	portārī	monērī	dūcī	audīrī
PERF.	portātus esse	monitus esse	ductus esse	audītus esse

a. While the present and perfect infinitives of deponent verbs are passive in form, their future infinitives are active: **cōnātūrus esse**, **veritūrus esse**.

EXERCISES

746. 1. Invītārī; invītāvisse; invītātus esse. 2. Auditūrus esse; audīvisse; audīrī. 3. Cēpisse; dūxisse; mūnīvisse. 4. Mittī; mīsisse; missus esse. 5. Monērī; monitūrus esse; monuisse. 6. Dīcī; dīxisse; dictūrus esse. 7. Postulārī; timērī; petī; interficī; mūnīrī. 8. Jūvisse; relīquisse; fūgisse. 9. Datūrus esse; mānsūrus esse; mūnītūrus esse. 10. Stetisse; dedisse; jēcisse.

747. 1. To defend; to be defended; to have defended. 2. To order; to have ordered; to have been ordered. 3. To take; to be taken; to be going to take. 4. To have feared; to have been left; to have been led. 5. To be destroyed; to have been destroyed; to have destroyed. 6. To have been killed; to have killed; to have been received.

OPTIONAL DRILL

748. A. 1. Write the principal parts of **gerō**, **mūniō**, and **vincō** and indicate the three stems of each. 2. Mention all the forms which are made on the perfect stem. 3. Give all the participles which have been studied thus far from **gerō**, **mūniō**, and **capiō**.

B. 1. Write all the infinitives given thus far for the verbs **mōnstrō**, **aperiō**, and **sūmō**, with their meanings. 2. Give the forms meaning *to have seen*, *to have conquered*, *to have come*. 3. Give four prepositions whose compounds regularly govern the dative. 4. Write the rule for the use of the dative with special verbs.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON VII

TENSE OF INFINITIVES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

THE PRESENT INFINITIVE

749. The act expressed by the present infinitive in indirect discourse is represented as occurring at the time denoted by the tense of the main verb.

Dicit sē periculum timēre, *He says that he fears danger.*

Dixit sē periculum timēre, *He said that he feared danger.*

THE PERFECT INFINITIVE

750. The act expressed by the perfect infinitive in indirect discourse is represented as already past at the time denoted by the tense of the main verb.

Hostēs fūgisse videō, *I see that the enemy have fled.*

Hostēs fūgisse vīdī, *I saw that the enemy had fled.*

THE FUTURE INFINITIVE

751. The act expressed by the future infinitive in indirect discourse is represented as future from the point of view of the time denoted by the tense of the main verb. The future infinitive is regularly translated with *shall* or *will* after a main verb in the present tense and with *should* or *would* after a main verb in any past tense.

Puer dicit frātre^m ventūrum esse, *The boy says that his brother will come.¹*

Puer dixit frātre^m ventūrum esse, *The boy said that his brother would come.¹*

THE PARTICIPLE IN THE PERFECT PASSIVE AND FUTURE ACTIVE INFINITIVE

752. The participle used in forming the perfect passive and the future active infinitive agrees in gender, number, and case

¹We may also translate these infinitives *is going to come* for the first sentence and *was going to come* for the second.

with the subject of the infinitive. Since the subject is in the accusative, the participle will end in **-um** or **-am** for the singular and in **-ōs** or **-ās** or **-a** for the plural.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

753. 1. Cīvēs putābant Perseum mōnstrum interfectūrum esse. 2. Rēx vidēbat filiam suam servātam esse. 3. Servus dixit arcam ad lītus appulsam esse. 4. Poētae dicunt rēgem mātrem Perseī benignē excēpisse. 5. Scīmus Minervam viam dēmōnstrāvisse. 6. Audīvimus hanc fābulam ā magnō poētā scriptam esse. 7. Herculēs crēdidit sē leōnem sagittīs necātūrum esse. 8. Māter Perseī dixit sē rēgem timēre. 9. Vidimus hostēs magnās cōpiās habēre.

754.

VOCABULARY

appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive

arca, -ae, f., box, chest

benignē, adv., kindly

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, show, point out

Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, a goddess

mōnstrum, -ī, n., monster

Perseus, -ī, m., Perseus, a legendary Greek hero

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

755. 1. Romulus believed that he had founded a great city. 2. The citizens thought that the army would defend the town. 3. We had heard that Horatius defended the bridge bravely. 4. The soldier said that his brother would send the money at once. 5. The sailor announced that he had found food on the island.

OPTIONAL DRILL

756. 1. Sciō tē amīcōs habēre. 2. Sciō tē amīcōs habuisse. 3. Sciō tē amīcōs habitūrum esse. 4. Crēdō ducem nostrum

semper fidēlem fuisse. 5. Crēdō eum semper fidēlem futūrum esse. 6. Vidēbam nāvem appropinquāre. 7. Audīvimus barbarōs multa oppida expugnāvisse. 8. Putō vōs cibum mox habitūrōs esse.

757. 1. The boys believed that they would kill many animals in the forest. 2. The Gauls said that they had left all their weapons in the town. 3. I thought that you would send the books. 4. The consul saw that the army did not obey.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON VIII

GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION: ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

THE GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

758. The genitive modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing.

homō magnae virtūtis, *a man of great courage.*

a. The genitive is often employed in this construction to express measure.

mūrus trium pedum, *a three-foot wall (a wall of three feet)*

THE ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

759. The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing.

homō magnā virtūte, *a man of great courage.*

a. In many phrases, such as the example above, either the genitive or the ablative may be used. But physical characteristics are usually expressed by the ablative, and measure always by the genitive.

b. This use of two different cases for the idea of description is similar to our use of *with* phrases and *of* phrases in certain expressions in English. We may say *a man of good reputation* or *a man with a good reputation*, using both phrases to describe *man*.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

760. 1. Hic centuriō erat magnā auctōritāte apud milītēs.
 2. Mūrus erat magnā altitūdine, et oppidum tūtum erat.
 3. Milītēs, quī iter sex diērum fēcerant, dēfessī erant. 4. Ille dux erat magnā audāciā, et hostēs eum timēbant. 5. Ōlim in eā terrā erat rēx quī hominēs immolābat. 6. Audīvimus in eā terrā ōlim rēgem crūdēlissimum fuisse. 7. Facile haec vincula perrumpam et effugiam. 8. Ille vir validus putābat sē vincula facile perruptūrum esse. 9. Gallī vidēbant agrōs suōs vāstātōs esse. 10. Putābant exercitum Rōmānum agrōs suōs vāstātūrum esse.

761.

VOCABULARY

altitūdō, -dinis, F., height, depth	immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sacrifice
auctōritās, -ātis, F., influence, authority	perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break through,
audācia, -ae, F., boldness	break

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

762. 1. The scout, who was a man of great boldness, followed the army through the forest. 2. The Romans sent into Gaul a leader of great courage. 3. Mountains of great height divide Italy from (ā) Gaul. 4. The consul was not a man of great courage, nor was he a wise leader. 5. The messenger said that the prisoners had broken their chains.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON IX
CONJUGATION OF *VOLŌ* AND *FERŌ*

THE CONJUGATION OF *VOLŌ*

763. The principal parts of **volō**, *I wish*, are as follows:

volō, velle, voluī

It is conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
volō	volumus
vīs	vultis
vult	volunt

a. The imperfect and future indicative are formed like those of a regular third conjugation verb: imperfect, **volēbam, volēbās**, etc., future, **volam, volēs**, etc.

THE CONJUGATION OF *FERŌ*

764. The principal parts of **ferō**, *I bear*, are as follows:

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum

It is conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris	feriminī
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

a. Like the corresponding tenses of **volō**, the imperfect and future indicative are formed regularly in the third conjugation: imperfect, **ferēbam, ferēbās**, etc., future, **feram, ferēs**, etc.

b. Both **ferō** and **volō** are conjugated regularly in the perfect system.

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

765. 1. Quid vīs, vigil? Cūr tantum clamōrem tollis?
 2. Hostēs appropinquāre videō, et omnēs cīvēs excitāre volō.
 3. Puer frātre[m] quī dormiēbat excitāre volēbat. 4. Dux
 noster cibum fert, et mox cēnam parābimus. 5. Militēs in
 litore ligna cōferunt et ignem incendunt. 6. Barbarī ad
 proelium prōgredientēs magnōs clāmōrēs tollunt. 7. Puerī
 ex casā arma ferunt et haec arma patrī suō dant. 8. Cīvēs sē
 fortiter dēfendunt, et auxilium ā militibus fertur. 9. Nēmō
 in hōc locō diūtius manēre vult. 10. Putāmus nēminem in
 hōc locō manēre velle.

766.

VOCABULARY

cōferō, -ferre, contulī, collā-	nēmō, <i>dat. nēminī, acc. nēmi-</i>
tum, bring together, collect	nem, <i>no gen. or abl., no one</i>
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear,	tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum,
bring, carry	raise
incendō, -cendere, -cendī, cē-	volō, velle, voluī, wish, be
sum, kindle, set fire to	willing

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

767. 1. The king wishes to return to (*in*) his native land.
 2. The soldier brings money from (*ā*) the centurion's father.
 3. A large city of Spain has been captured by the barbarians.
 4. The soldiers wish to return to the camp at once. 5. A
 letter is brought by the slave who comes from the town.

OPTIONAL DRILL

768. 1. Write a synopsis of *volō* in the third person singular.
 2. Write a synopsis of *ferō* in the third person singular, active and passive.
 3. Translate: you (*singular*) wish; they will wish; he has wished; he will bring; you bring; you have brought.

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSON X

THE GERUND

769. The Latin gerund is a neuter noun of the second declension, formed on the present stem as it appears in the present participle (*see section 734*). It has no nominative and is used only in the singular. The gerunds of the four conjugations are as follows:

	I	II	III	IV
GEN.	portandī	monendī	dūcendī	audiendī
DAT.	portandō	monendō	dūcendō	audiendō
ACC.	portandum	monendum	dūcendum	audiendum
ABL.	portandō	monendō	dūcendō	audiendō

a. The gerund of **capiō** is declined like that of **audiō**: **capiendī**, etc.

770. The genitive is translated *of carrying, of warning, etc.* The ablative without a preposition is translated *by carrying or with carrying, etc.* The ablative is also used with prepositions. The accusative is used only with prepositions. The dative does not often occur.

a. The genitive is used with adjectives or nouns. It is frequently employed with the ablative **causā**, *for the sake of, for the purpose of*.

cupidus natandī, *fond of swimming.*

effugiendī causā, *for the purpose of escaping.*

b. It must be remembered that the form in *-ing* used to translate the Latin gerund is not a present participle but an English gerund, or, as it is sometimes called, a verbal noun. In the sentence *I am fond of walking* the word *walking* is not a present participle but a gerund (or verbal noun).

EXERCISES FOR TRANSLATION

771. 1. Tum cupidus manendī in eā urbe cum amicīs eram. 2. Spem effugiendī nōn habēbāmus. 3. Cōsul cōpiās coēgit et omnia ad proficiendum parāvit. 4. In quaerendō reperimus epistulam nōn missam esse. 5. Hostēs spem vincendī amiserunt, et lēgātōs mittent. 6. Multī ex omnibus partibus resistendī causā convēnerunt. 7. Fēmina epistulam legere vult quam filius suus mīsit. 8. Dux Rōmānus Gallīs bellum infert quod oppida sociōrum expugnāre cōnantur. 9. Centuriō nūntiāvit hostēs in castra impetum factūrōs esse. 10. Hic servus in omnibus rēbus est diligēns.

772.

VOCABULARY

cupidus, -a, -um, desirous, reperiō, -īre, repperī, reper-
fond tum, find, find out
diligēns, gen. diligentis, careful spēs, speī, F., hope

EXERCISES FOR WRITING

773. 1. Everything is now prepared for setting out, and the citizens will assemble tomorrow. 2. The barbarians, who had no hope of resisting, withdrew into the mountains. 3. These boys have come for the purpose of learning. 4. Why do you (*singular*) wish to go to Italy at this time? 5. The scouts brought (led) the Gaul to the lieutenant.

OPTIONAL DRILL

774. 1. Decline *spēs* in the singular number. 2. Write the gerunds of *habeō* and *veniō*. 3. In the following sentences name the case required in Latin for the italicized words: (a) I tried to persuade your *brother*. (b) They feared the *general*. (c) They obeyed the *lieutenant*. (d) I was in command of the *fort*. (e) Caesar placed *Sextus* in command of the *cavalry*. (f) We resisted the *Romans*. (g) The Romans defeated the *Gauls*.

POLYPHEMUS

PERSŌNAE

Ulixēs.
Nautae XII.
Polyphēmus.

Alii Cyclōpēs.
Ariēs et ovēs.

SCAENA PRĪMA. IN ANTRŌ POLYPHĒMĪ.

*Ā dextrā ovīlia; ā sinistrā calathī cāseō plēnī et crātērae lacte
plēnae; ā tergō saxum post quod nautae sē cēlant.
Ulixēs et nautae antrum Polyphēmī intrant.*

ULI. Ecce! in cavernā ingentī sumus. Sine dubiō
Cyclōpis domus est quem nūper vīdimus.

NAUTA I. Sine dubiō ejus caverna est. Tantum mōnstrum
ego numquam vīdī.

N. II. Hominī dissimilis vidētur.

N. III. Ūnum modo oculum in mediā fronte habet.

N. IV. Ovēs et caprōs in agrīs pāscēbat.

OMNES. Sine dubiō in hōc antrō habitat.

ULI. Ita; nam hūc spectāte, virī; nōnne vidētis illōs
calathōs cāseō plēnōs? Et ovīlia in quibus agnī 10
sunt et haedī? Et haud procul crātērās cōspiciō
lacte plēnās.

N. V. Certē, avidus est, sī haec omnia edere potešt.

N. VI. Fortasse nōs quoque comedere cupiet, Ō domine.

N. VII. Redīre ad litus quam primum¹ optimum erit.

N. VIII. Mihi quoque id optimum vidētur. Sed cāseum nō-
bīscum auferēmus et agnōs paucōs haedōsque.
Nam cibum nōn habēmus multum in nāvibus.

ULI. Nōlō jam redīre, virī. Melius erit hīc manēre et
dōna rogāre cum Polyphēmus redībit. 20

N. IX. Temerārius est Ulixēs. Nōs omnēs perībimus.

¹As soon as possible.

ULI. Cēnam parāte, nautae. Cum cēnāverimus, forte ille domum redībit. [*Nautae cēnam parāre incipiunt.*]

N. X. Hei mihi! Quid audiō? Ipse appropinquat.

N. XI. Fugite, amīcī. Vae miseris nōbīs.

ULI. Venite mēcum, virī. In intimam cavernam nōs recipiēmus.

[*Virī sē post saxum cēlant, unde Polyphēmum spectant.*]

N. I. Adestne ille?

N. II. Jam jam gregem in cavernam agit.

N. III. Quid nunc facit?

30

N. IV. Agnōs et haedōs extrā jānuam reliquit, sed ovēs intrā cavernam dūcit.

N. V. Cūr tam obscūra caverna est?

N. VI. Jānuā jam clausa est, nam saxum magnum ante jānuam posuit.

N. VII. Quid Cyclōps nunc agit?

N. VIII. Ovēs et caprās mulget.

N. IX. Nōnne ignem nunc accendit? Flammae lūcem dant.

N. X. Tacēte amīcī. Nōs audiet.

40

POL. Hem! Quid audiō? Quis adest? [*virōs videt*] Ohē! Quī estis, advenae? Unde vēnistis?

N. XI ET XII. Hei mihi! Quid nōs agere poterimus?

ULI. Nōlite timēre, amīcī. Ego prō omnibus respondēbō, et fortasse benignē nōs tractābit. Graeci sumus, quī Trōjā venīmus et domum mare trānsimus. Sed Juppiter, quī nōbīs irātus est, ventōs et undās nōs ā viā prohibēre sinit. Itaque ad tuam īnsulam invītī vēnimus. Sed benignus es,¹ Ō hospes, nam supplicēs tuī sumus. Sī tū auxilium nōbīs dederis, dī tē remūnerābuntur.

50

¹See Section 552.

POL. Stultus es, aut procul ab hāc terrā habitās, sī mē tālem esse putās. Deōs enim nōs Cyclōpēs neque venerāmur neque timēmus. Grātissima autem cēna mihi eritis, tū et nautae tuī. Duōs enim māne et duōs vesperī edam dōnec omnēs mortuī eritis. [*Duōs captōs occīdit et comedit.*]

SCAENA SECUNDA. IN EÖDEM LOCÖ.

Ulixēs cōnsilium init.

Postrīdiē māne Ulixēs et octō nautae in antrō sedent et inter sē loquuntur.

Polyphēmus, quī duōs nautās hodiē comēdit, exiit.

NAUTAE OMNES. Vac nōbīs miserīs! Ad patriam nostram numquam redībimus.

60

N. V. Crūdēlior Cyclōps est quam fera; duōs nostrum herī, duōs hodiē comēdit, et mox omnēs ad ūnum dēvorābit.

ULI. Nōlite dēspērāre, virī; dī nōs etiam nunc juvāre possunt, et ego ipse cōnsilium inīre incipiō.

N. VI. Tua cōnsilia nōn probāmus; nam propter tē amīcī nostrī quattuor miserrimē periērunt.

OMNES. Visne Cyclōpem, dum noctū dormit, occīdere, Ō domine?

ULI. Id facere volō; sed etiam sī eum interficiam, nōs ex antrō per clausam jānuam effugere nōn poterimus.

70

OMNES. Quam prūdēns dominus noster est! Sed quid nōs facere jam possumus?

ULI. Audite mē. Baculum longum quod Cyclōps humī reliquit cōspiciō. Id acuēmus, et in igne adūrēmus. Vesperī, cum Polyphēmus redierit, vīnum eī dabō; nam—ut meministis—optimum vīnum mēcūm hūc attulī. Cum ille somnō vīnōque sepultus erit, oculum ejus baculō ārdentī extingūēmus. Tum impotēns ille et imbēcillus fiet.

80

OMNES. Sapientissimum cōnsilium est. Omnēs tē adjuvābimus.

ULI. Crās, ubi jānua aperta erit, cum ovibus nōs quoque exībimus. Sic ad litus et nāvēs tandem effugere poterimus.

OMNES. Omnium prūdentissimus dominus noster est.

SCAENA TERTIA. IN EÖDEM LOCÖ.

Polyphēmī oculum Graecī extinguunt.

Vesperī: Ulīxēs et octō nautae Polyphēmum expectant.

ULI. Parātīne estis, virī? Mox enim redībit Polyphēmus.

NAUTAE. Ita, parātī sumus. Baculum acūtum ārdēnsque habēmus. 90

ULI. Quī in oculō Cyclōpis baculum mēcum contorquēre audēbunt? Quattuor ad hunc labōrem sorte ēligere optimum erit.

NAUTAE. Ita vērō; id faciēmus.

N. VII. Hīc est galea, in quam sortēs conijcere possumus.

N. VIII. Hīc lapidēs nōnnūllī sunt, quōs in galeam conijcere possumus.

N. IX. Ego galeam tenēbō et quatiā.

[IV Nautae sortēs accipiunt.]

ULI. Et ego quīntus erō. Dī sortēs optimē rēxērunt; vōs enim quattuor ipse dēligere cupiēbam. 100

N. X. Aliquem audiō quī appropinquat!

OMNES. Sine dubiō Cyclōps ipse adest.

N. XI. Ita, ovium enim bālātūs audiō.

OMNES. Post saxum recipiēmus nōs, dōnec ille dormiet.

[*Polyphēmus cavernam intrat, ovēs mulget, duōs nautās captōs dēvorat. Ulīxēs crātēram vīnō plēnam eī offert.*]

ULI. Ecce, Cyclōps, vīnum tibi offerō. Carnem hominum ēdistī; vīnum nunc bibe; grātissimum est. [*Cyclōps bibit.*]

POL. Dā mihi iterum bibere. Vīnum tuum jūcundum est. Et dīc mihi nōmen tuum.

[*Iterum bibit.*]

ULI. [*Sēcum*] Eum fallere optimum erit.

POL. Iterum, advena: vīnum tuum mē multum dēlectat. [*Iterum bibit.*]

ULI. Nōmen meum interrogāvistī; id nōn cēlābō. "Nēmō" nōmen meum est; "Nēminem" māter mea paterque et socii omnēs mē appellant.

POL. Nēmō, prō beneficiis tuis tē remūnerārī cupiō. Postrēmum igitur tē dēvorābō.

ULI. [*sēcum*] Edepol! Grātiās tibi maximās agō. Postrēma tibi cēna erō.

[*Polyphēmus sē humi jacet; mox somnus eum opprimit.*]

[*IV Nautae ex intimā cavernā exeunt.*]

NAUTAE. Adestne tempus, domine? Dormitne Cyclōps? 130

ULI. Ita, graviter dormit. Nunc, dī patrii, adjuvāte nōs.

[*Baculum ārdēns afferunt et in oculō Polyphēmī vehementer contorquent. Ille clāmōrēs horribilēs tollit et per antrum furibundus ruit.*]



ULIXĒS VĪNUM POLYPHĒMŌ
OFFERT

POL. Vae mihi! Quid factum est? Quis oculum meum
extinxit? Ubinam estis, viri?

[*Alii Cyclôpēs extrā cavernam stant.*]

ALII CYC. Cūr tantōs clāmōrēs tollis, Polyphēme? Nōs
dormire prohibuistī. Quis tē laedit, aut quis tē
occidere temptat?

POL. Nēmō mē occīdit, amīcī.

ALII CYC. At sī nēmō in cavernā tēcum est, Juppiter for-
tasse tē laedit. Tū autem auxilium ā patre tuō 140
pete.

ULI. Ohē viri! Dolus meus et nōmen simulātum eum
fefellērunt.

N. VII. Quid facit ille? Quid factūrus est? Potesne vidēre?

N. VIII. Saxum summōvit, et ipse humī ante jānuam sedet.

N. IX. Nōs, dum exīmus, rapere cupit.

OMNES. Quandō fugere temptābimus, Ō domine?

ULI. Primā lūce, cum ovēs ad agrōs exhibunt, nōs quo-
que cum eīs exhibimus.

SCAENA QUARTA. IN EODEM LOCŌ.

In cavernā omnēs sedent.

ULI. Festināte, viri. Sōl mox surget; deinde nōs fugam 150
capere poterimus.

N. XI. Sed quō modō effugiēmus, domine? Nōn intellegō.

N. XII. Cyclôps enim nōs, dum exīmus, capiet.

ULI. Singulī hominēs ā ternīs arietibus ferentur. Trēs
enim arietēs colligābō, quōrum medius homi-
nem ūnum portābit. Sic omnēs ad litus inco-
lumēs perveniēmus. Agite arietēs ad mē.

N. VII. Ēn callidum cōnsilium!

[*Ulixēs arietēs ternōs colligat; singulī hominēs
sub ternīs arietibus ligantur.*]

N. VIII. Quō modo tē ipsum servātūrus es?

ULI. Vidēsne hunc ducem gregis? Multō grandior et 160
rōbustior est quam cēterī. Ejus sub ventre
vellus tenēbō, et ipse postrēmus exībō.

N. IX. Ecce, sōl surgit, et ovēs exire incipiunt.

OMNES. Brevī tempore ad lītus perveniēmus. [vōce parvā.]
Valē Polyphēme!

[*Omnēs ē cavernā efferuntur. Ulixēs postrēmus
sequitur. Polyphēmus arietem dētinet.*]

POL. Quid, Crasse? Tū postrēmus hodiē exīs? Id
mīror; nam antehāc prīmus māne exire, prīmus
merīdiē ad rīvōs dēscendere, prīmus vesperī
domum redīre solēbās. Bonus amīcus dominī 170
miserī tuī semper fuistī, cujus oculum Nēmō
extīnxit. Ēn hominem improbum! Sed haud
impūne filium Neptūnī caecum effēcīt!

[*Ariēs tandem aliōs sequitur. Polyphēmus nautās et
Ulixem in cavernā frūstrā quaerit.*]

FĪNIS FĀBULAE.

HERCULES

Hercules was a Greek hero, celebrated for his feats of strength. While only an infant he strangled two serpents which had been sent by Juno to destroy him. In his boyhood he devoted himself to athletic pursuits, and in a fit of anger he slew the Centaur who was his teacher of music. Having been seized by the King of Egypt as a victim for sacrifice, he killed the king, as well as the priest who was about to sacrifice him. His next exploit was to cut off the ears of the envoys of the Minyae who had come to Thebes to demand tribute, thus causing a war, in which the Thebans under the leadership of Hercules were victorious. While in a state of temporary madness he slew his children, and thereupon was ordered by the oracle at Delphi to give himself up to the service of Eurystheus, King of Tiryns. At his command he performed the celebrated Twelve Labors, as follows: 1. Slaying the Nemean lion. 2. Slaying the Hydra of Lerna. 3. Capturing the Cerynian stag. 4. Capturing the boar of Erymanthus. 5. Cleaning the Augean stables. 6. Killing the birds of Stymphalus. 7. Capturing the Cretan bull. 8. Capturing the horses of Diomedes. 9. Obtaining the girdle of Hippolyte. 10. Bringing the oxen of Geryon from the island of Erythia. 11. Procuring the golden apples of the Hesperides. 12. Bringing Cerberus from the lower world. In connection with these labors he also performed numerous other exploits.

His death came from the putting on of a poisoned robe which had been dipped in the blood of the Centaur, Nessus. After his death he was taken by Jupiter to Olympus.

THE STORY OF HERCULES

1. THE INFANT PRODIGY

Herculēs, Alcēmēnae filius, ōlim in Graeciā habitābat. Hic dicitur omnium hominum validissimus fuisse. At Jūnō, rēgīna deōrum, Alcēmēnam ōderat, et Herculem, adhūc infāntem, necāre voluit. Mīsīt igitur duās serpentēs saevissimās; hae mediā nocte in cubiculum Alcēmēnae vērunt, ubi Herculēs 5 cum frātre suō dormiēbat. Nec tamen in cūnīs, sed in scūtō magnō cubābant. Serpentēs jam appropinquāverant et scūtum movēbant; itaque puerī ē somnō excitātī sunt.

2. HERCULES AND THE SERPENTS

Īphiclēs, frāter Herculis, magnā vōce exclāmāvit; at Herculēs ipse, puer fortissimus, haudquāquam territus est. Par- 10 vīs manibus serpentēs statim prehēdit et colla eārum magnā vī compressit. Tālī modō serpentēs ā puerō interfectae sunt. Alcēmēna autem, māter puerōrum, clāmōrem audiverat et maritum suum ē somnō excitāverat. Ille lūmen accendit et gladium suum rapuit; tum ad puerōs properābat, sed, ubi 15 ad locum vērīt, rem mīram vīdit; Herculēs enim ridēbat et serpentēs mortuās mōnstrābat.

1. Hic dicitur fuisse, *he is said to have been.*

3. ōderat, *hated*; this verb has only the tenses formed on the perfect stem; the perfect, however, is translated as a present, the past perfect as an imperfect, and the future perfect as a future.

5. mediā nocte, *in the middle of the night.*



JUNO

3. THE MUSIC LESSON

Herculēs ā puerō corpus suum diligenter exercēbat. Magnam partem diēi in palaestrā cōnsūmēbat; didicit etiam arcum intendere et tēla conijcere. Hīs exercitātiōnibus vīrēs ejus cōfirmātae sunt. In mūsicā etiam ā Linō Centaurō ērudiēbātur. (Centaurī autem equī erant, sed caput hominis habēbant.) Huic tamen artī minus diligenter studēbat. Hic Linus Herculem ōlim culpābat, quod parum studiōsus erat. Tum puer irātus citharam subitō rapuit et summīs vīribus caput magistrī infēlicis percussit. Ille ictū prōstrātus est, et paulō post ē vītā excessit, neque quisquam postea id officium suscipere voluit.

4. HERCULES ESCAPES FROM BEING SACRIFICED

Dē Hercule haec etiam inter alia narrantur. Ōlim, dum iter facit, in finēs Aegyptiōrum vēnit; ibi rēx quīdam, nōmine Būsiris, illō tempore rēgnābat; hic autem, vir crūdēlissimus, hominēs immolāre cōsuēverat. Herculem igitur corripuit et in vincula conjēcit. Tum nūntiōs dimisit et diem sacrificiō ēdixit. Mox ea diēs appetīvit, et omnia ritē parāta sunt.

18. ā puerō, *from boyhood; literally, from a boy.*

19. palaestrā: the name given by the Greeks to the place in which instruction and training were given in wrestling and boxing.

23. Huic artī . . . studēbat, *he devoted himself to this art; studeō takes the dative.*

25. summīs vīribus, *with all his might.*

26. Ille, *he (i.e., Linus); ille is here used as a pronoun.*

27. paulō post, *a little later.*

id officium: *i.e., the task of instructing Hercules in music.*

29. haec inter alia, *these stories among others.*

31. vir: in apposition with hic.

32. cōsuēverat, *was accustomed; cōsuēscō means become accustomed; its perfect tense therefore means has become accustomed, i.e., is accustomed; likewise the past perfect cōsuēverat means had become accustomed, i.e., was accustomed.*

33. sacrificiō, *for the sacrifice, dative.*

- 35 Manūs Herculis catēnis ferreīs vinctae sunt, et mola salsa in caput ejus īnspersa est. Mōs enim erat apud antiquōs salem et fār capitibus victimārum impōnere. Jam victima ad āram stābat; jam sacerdos cultrum sūmpserat. Subitō tamen Herculēs magnō cōnātū vincula perrūpit. Tum ictū sacerdotem
40 prōstrāvit, alterō rēgem ipsum occidit.

5. EAR-CROPPING

- Herculēs, jam adulēscēns, urbem Thēbās incolēbat. Rēx Thēbārum, vir ignāvus, Creōn appellābātur. Minyae, gēns bellicōsissima, Thēbānīs finitimī erant. Lēgātī autem ā Minyīs ad Thēbānōs quotannis veniēbant et centum bovēs postulābant. Thēbānī enim ōlim ā Minyīs superātī erant; tribūta
45 igitur rēgī Minyārum quotannis pendēbant. At Herculēs cīvēs suōs hōc stipendiō liberāre cōstituit. Lēgātōs igitur comprehendit atque aurēs eōrum abscidit. Lēgātī autem apud omnēs gentēs sacri habentur.

6. DEFEAT OF THE MINYAE

- 50 Ergīnus, rēx Minyārum, ob haec vehementer irātus erat, et cum omnibus cōpiīs in finēs Thēbānōrum contendit. Creōn adventum ejus per explōrātōrēs cognōvit; ipse tamen pugnāre nōluit; nam magnō timōre affectus est. Thēbānī igitur Her-

37. capitibus: dative governed by a compound verb.

40. alterō: *ictū* is to be supplied.

43. Thēbānīs: dative, depending on the adjective *fīnitimī*.

44. veniēbant: the imperfect denoting repeated action; they came every year.

47. cīvēs suōs, *his fellow-citizens*. stipendiō, *from tribute*.

49. habentur, *are regarded*; the passive forms of *habeō* often have this meaning.

53. magnō timōre affectus est: see note on Perseus, 104.

1. Decline *omnis*. 2. Compare *validus* and *saevus*. 3. Give the principal parts of *moveō*, *terreō*, *comprimō*, *rapio*. 4. Give the genitive singular and the nominative plural of *caput* and *nōmen*. 5. What English prepositions are most frequently used in translating the Latin ablative case? 6. Find the derivation and meaning of "culpable."

culem imperatōrem creāvērunt. Ille nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisit et cōpiās coēgit. Tum proximō diē cum magnō exercitū profectus est. Locum idōneum dēlēgit et aciem instrūxit. Tum Thēbānī ē superiōre locō impetum in hostēs fecērunt. Illi autem impetum sustinēre nōn potuērunt, itaque aciēs hostium pulsa est atque in fugam conversa. 55

7. MADNESS AND MURDER

Post hoc proelium Herculēs cōpiās suās ad urbem redūxit. Omnēs Thēbānī propter victōriam maximē gaudēbant. Creōn autem magnīs honōribus Herculem decorāvit, atque filiam suam eī in mātirimōnium dedit. Herculēs cum uxōre suā vītā beātā agēbat; sed post paucōs annōs subitō in furōrem incidit atque liberōs suōs ipse suā manū occidit. Post breve tempus ad sānitātem reductus est, et propter hoc facinus magnō dolōre affectus est; mox ex urbe effūgit et in silvās sē recēpit. Nōlēbant enim cīvēs sermōnem cum eō habēre. 65

8. HERCULES CONSULTS THE ORACLE

Herculēs magnopere cupiēbat tantum scelus expiāre. Cōstituit igitur ad ōrāculum Delphicum ire; hoc enim ōrāculum 70

57. *in, on.*

59. *conversa*: supply *est*; the other forms of *sum* are also sometimes omitted in the perfect passive.

61. *gaudēbant*: the principal parts of this verb are *gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum*; the present, imperfect, and future tenses are active in form, the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect are passive. All, however, are active in meaning. Such a verb is called semi-deponent.

64. *in furōrem incidit, become insane.*

65. *ipse suā, his own*; but the two Latin words are more emphatic than the English translation.

68. *sē recēpit, betook himself, withdrew.*

sermōnem habēre, to associate, literally, to have conversation.

71. *ōrāculum Delphicum*: the most famous oracle of antiquity, at Delphi, in Greece.

erat omnium celeberrimum. Ibi templum erat Apollinis, plurimīs dōnīs ōrnātum. Hōc in templō sedēbat fēmina quaedam, nōmine Pŷthia, et cōnsilium dabat iis quī ad ōrāculum
 75 veniēbant. Haec autem fēmina ab ipsō Apolline docēbātur, et voluntātem deī hominibus ēnūntiābat. Herculēs igitur, quī Apollinem praecipuē colēbat, hūc vēnit. Tum rem tōtam exposuit neque scelus cēlāvit.

9. THE ORACLE'S REPLY

Ubi Herculēs finem fēcit, Pŷthia diū tacēbat. Tandem
 80 tamen iussit eum ad urbem Tīryntha ire et Eurystheī rēgis omnia imperāta facere. Herculēs, ubi haec audīvit, ad urbem illam contendit et Eurystheō rēgī sē in servitūtem trādīdit.

72. *omnium*: supply *ōrāculōrum*.

73. *dōnīs*: presented by states and by individuals.

Hōc in templō: a preposition of one syllable may stand between a noun and a modifier.

80. Tīryntha: a word of Greek origin, retaining its Greek accusative form. Proper names must always be translated by the nominative.

82. *in servitūtem*, *in slavery*.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

adventus	proximus	gaudeō	suscipiō
gēns	summus	imperō	sustineō
iter	tālis	incidō	taceō
mōs		īnstruō	
officium	quisquam	interficiō	ita
scelus		nōlō	maximē
servitūs	cōgō	ōdī	quotannis
vīs	colō	pellō	vehementer
voluntās	cōnficiō	proficiō	vix
	cōnsūmō	recipiō	
alter	dēligō	sedeō	itaque
finitimus	discō	studeō	
idōneus	doceō	sūmō	

Duodecim annōs in servitūte Eurystheī tenēbātur, et duodecim labōrēs, quōs ille imperāverat, cōnfēcit. Hōc enim ūnō modō tantum scelus expiārī potuit. Dē hīs labōribus plūrima 85
ā poētīs scripta sunt. Multa tamen quae poētae narrant vix crēdibilia sunt.

10. FIRST LABOR—SLAYING THE NEMEAN LION

Primum ab Eurystheō jussus est Herculēs leōnem occidere, quī illō tempore vallem Nemaeam reddēbat infestam. In silvās igitur quās leō incolēbat statim sē contulit. Mox 90
feram vīdit, et arcum quem sēcum attulerat intendit; ejus tamen pellem, quae dēnsissima erat, trājicere nōn potuit. Tum clāvā magnā, quam semper gerēbat, leōnem percussit. Frūstrā tamen, neque enim hōc modō eum occidere potuit. Tum dēmum collum mōnstrī bracchiīs suis complexus est et faucēs 95
ejus summīs vīribus compressit. Hōc modō leō brevī tempore exanimātus est; nūlla enim respirandī facultās eī dabātur. Tum Herculēs cadāver ad oppidum in umerīs rettulit, et pellem, quam dētrāxerat, postea prō veste gerēbat. Omnēs autem quī eam regiōnem incolēbant, ubi fāmam dē morte 100
leōnis accēpērunt, vehementer gaudēbant et Herculem magnō in honōre habēbant.

11. SECOND LABOR—SLAYING THE LERNAEAN HYDRA

Post haec jussus est ab Eurystheō Hydram necāre. Hoc autem mōnstrum erat quod novem capita habēbat. Her-

85. *plūrima*, a great many things.

89. *reddēbat*, rendered.

91. *sēcum*: the preposition *cum* is regularly attached as an enclitic to a personal, a reflexive, or a relative pronoun.

94. *neque*, not, as in Perseus, 112

97. *respirandī facultās*, chance of breathing, chance to breathe; *respirandī* is a gerund.

99. *prō veste*, as a garment.

103. *Hoc*: although the reference is to *Hydram*, a feminine noun, the demonstrative, in accordance with Latin usage, takes the gender of the predicate noun *mōnstrum*.

- 105 culēs igitur cum amīcō Iolāō profectus est ad palūdem Ler-
naeam, quam Hydra incolēbat. Mox mōnstrum invēnit et,
quamquam rēs erat magnī periculī, collum ejus laevā pre-
hendit. Tum dextrā capita novem abscīdere coepit. Quotiēns
tamen hoc fēcerat, nova capita exoriēbantur. Diū frūstrā
110 labōrāvit; tandem hōc cōnātū dēstitit; cōstituit deinde ar-
borēs succīdere et ignem accendere. Hoc celeriter fēcit, et,
postquam ligna ignem comprehendērunt, face ardente colla
adussit, unde capita exoriēbantur. Nec tamen sine magnō
labōre haec fēcit. Auxilium enim Hydrae tulit cancer ingēns,
115 quī, dum Herculēs capita abscīdit, crūra ejus mordēbat.
Postquam mōnstrum tālī modō interfēcit, sagittās suās san-
guine ejus imbuīt itaque mortiferās reddidit.

12. THIRD LABOR—CAPTURE OF THE CERYNIAN STAG

- Postquam Eurystheō caedēs Hydrae nūntiāta est, magnus
timor animum ejus occupāvit. Jussit igitur Herculem cervum
120 quendam ad sē referre; nōluit enim virum tantae audāciae in

107. *rēs*: while the word "thing" furnishes a starting-point in getting at the meaning of *rēs*, a more exact translation should always be given if possible—e.g., *fact*, *affair*, *circumstance*; here, *task* would be a good translation.

magnī periculī, (one) of great danger; a descriptive genitive in the predicate.

109. *exoriēbantur*, grew out, or would grow out; imperfect, denoting repeated action.

110. *hōc cōnātū*, from this undertaking; an ablative thus used is called an ablative of separation.

112. *comprehendērunt*, caught.

113. *unde*, from which.

117. *reddidit*: supply as object *eās*, referring to *sagittās*.

120. *tantae audāciae*: genitive of description.

1. Decline *impetus*. 2. Conjugate *īnstruō* in the perfect active. 3. Give the principal parts of *possum*, *pellō*, *dēligō*, *occīdō*. 4. Give the genitive singular of *scelus*, *voluntās*, *finis*, *leō*. 5. What case is *eī* in line 97, and why used? 6. Find the derivation and meaning of "tacitly."

urbe retinēre. Hic autem cervus, cujus cornua aurea fuisse trāduntur, incredibīlī fuit celeritāte. Herculēs igitur primum vēstīgia ejus in silvīs animadvertit. Deinde, ubi cervum ipsum vīdit, summīs vīribus currere coepit. Usque ad vesperum cucurrit, neque nocturnum tempus sibi ad quiētem relīquit. Frūstrā tamen, nūllō enim modō praedam cōsequī poterat. Tandem, postquam tōtum annum cucurrerat (ita trāditur), cervum cursū exanimātum cēpit et vīvum ad Eurystheum rettulit. 125

13. FOURTH LABOR—THE ERYMANTHIAN BOAR

Post haec jussus est Herculēs aprum quendam capere, quī illō tempore agrōs Erymanthiōs vāstābat et incolās hujus regiōnis magnopere terrēbat. Herculēs rem suscēpit et in Arcadiam profectus est. Postquam in silvam paulum prōgressus est, aprō occurrit. Ille autem, simul atque Herculem vīdit, statim refūgit et, timōre perterritus, in altam fossam sē prōjēcit. Herculēs igitur laqueum quem attulerat injēcit et summā cum difficultāte aprum ē fossā extrāxit. Ille, etsī multum relūctābātur, nūllō modō sē liberāre potuit, et ab Hercule ad Eurystheum vīvus relātus est. 130 135

14. HERCULES AT THE CENTAUR'S CAVE

Dē quārtō labōre, quem suprā nārrāvimus, haec etiam trāduntur. Herculēs, dum iter in Arcadiam facit, ad eam 140

121. fuisse trāduntur, *are said to have been.*

122. incredibīlī celeritāte, *of incredible swiftness*; ablative of description; either the ablative or the genitive of description may stand in the predicate.

125. sibi: dative after *relīquit*, but may be omitted in translation.

ad, *for.*

127. ita trāditur, *so the story goes.*

132. rem: see note on line 107.

134. aprō: dative governed by *occurrit*, which is a compound of *ob* and *currō*.

136. injēcit: supply *eī* (dative with a compound verb).

140. nārrāvimus: the plural as used by the writer to refer to himself was formerly common in English also, in newspaper editorials.

regiōnem vēnit quam Centaurī incolēbant. Mox, quod nox jam appetēbat, ad antrum dēvertit, in quō Centaurus quīdam, nōmine Pholus, habitābat.

- 145 Ille Herculem benignē excēpit et cēnam parāvit. At Herculēs, postquam cēnāvit, vīnum ā Pholō postulāvit. Erat autem in antrō magna amphora, vīnō optimō replēta, quam Centaurī ibi dēposuerant. Pholus hoc vīnum dare nōlēbat, quod reliquōs Centaurōs timēbat; nūllum tamen vīnum prae-
150 ter hoc in antrō habēbat. "Hoc vīnum," inquit, "mihi commissum est. Sī igitur hoc dabō, Centaurī mē interficient." Herculēs tamen cum irrīsit, et ipse cyathum vīnī ex amphorā hausit.

15. THE FIGHT WITH THE CENTAURS

- Simul atque amphora aperta est, odor jūcundissimus undique diffūsus est; vīnum enim suāvissimum erat. Centaurī
155 nōtum odōrem sēnsērunt et omnēs ad locum convēnērunt.

- Ubi ad antrum pervēnērunt, magnopere irātī erant, quod Herculem bibentem vidērunt. Tum arma rapuērunt, et Pholum interficere volēbant. Herculēs tamen in aditū antrī
160 cōstitit, et impetum eōrum fortissimē sustinēbat. Facēs ārdentēs in eōs conjēcit; multōs etiam sagittis suis vulnerāvit. Hae autem sagittae eadem erant quae sanguine Hydrae olim imbūtae erant. Omnēs igitur quōs ille sagittis vulnerāverat

143. *jam, now, or by this time; nunc means now in the sense of at the present time.*

146. *Erat, there was.* Latin has no word corresponding to *there* in the sense here used. The position of a verb at the beginning of a sentence, however, often gives the same effect.

150. *inquit:* this verb is regularly used with direct quotations and stands after one or more words of a quotation; it corresponds to the English "I said," "he said." It is defective, that is, it lacks some forms of person, tense, and mood.

153. *hausit, drew.*

160. *cōstitit:* from *cōsistō*.

161. *in, at,* the usual meaning of *in* with words meaning *to throw*.

venenō statim absūptī sunt; reliquī autem, ubi hoc vidērunt, terga vertērunt et fugā salūtem petiērunt.

165

16. THE FATE OF PHOLUS

Postquam reliquī fūgērunt, Pholus ex antrō ēgressus est, et corpora spectābat eōrum quī sagittīs interfectī erant. Magnopere autem mirātus est, quod tam levī vulnere exanimātī erant, et causam ejus rei quaerēbat. Adiit igitur locum ubi cadāver cujusdam Centaurī jacēbat et sagittam ē vulnere trāxit. Haec tamen, sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum, ē manibus ejus lāpsa est et pedem leviter vulnerāvit. Ille extemplō dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit, et post breve tempus vī venenī exanimātus est. Mox Herculēs, quī reliquōs Centaurōs secūtus erat, ad antrum rediit, et magnō cum dolōre Pholum mortuum vīdit. Multīs cum lacrimīs corpus amīcī ad sepultūram dedit; tum, postquam alterum cyathum vīnī hausit, somnō sē dedit.

170

175

17. FIFTH LABOR—CLEANSING THE AUGEAN STABLES

Deinde Eurystheus Herculi hunc labōrem graviōrem imposuit. Augēas quīdam, quī illō tempore rēgnum in Ēlide obtinēbat, tria mīlia boum habēbat. Hī in stabulō ingentis magnitudinis inclūdēbantur. Stabulum autem illuviē ac squālōre obsitum erat; neque enim ad hoc tempus umquam pūrgātum erat. Hoc jussus est Herculēs intrā spatium ūnūs

180

164. *reliquī, the others.*

165. *fugā, in flight; the ablative denotes means, however.*

171. *sive . . . deōrum, either by chance or by design of the gods.*

179. *Herculi, upon Hercules; the dative is governed by the compound verb imposuit.*

181. *tria mīlia boum, three thousand cattle; it must be kept in mind that the singular mille is usually an adjective, while the plural mīlia is always a noun used with a dependent genitive. Boum is the genitive plural of bōs.*

183. *neque umquam, never.*

- 185 diēi pūrgāre. Ille, etsī rēs erat multae operae, negōtium sus-
cēpit. Prīmum, magnō labōre fossam duodēvigintī pedum
fēcīt, per quam flūminis aquam dē montibus ad mūrū
stabulī perdūxit. Tum, postquam mūrū perrūpit, aquam
in stabulum immisit et tālī modō, contrā opīniōnem omnium,
190 opus cōnfēcīt.

18. SIXTH LABOR—THE BIRDS OF STYMPHALUS

Post paucōs diēs Herculēs ad oppidum Stymphālū iter
fēcīt; jusserat enim eum Eurystheus avēs Stymphālīdēs

185. **erat multae operae**, was one of great labor; another genitive of description standing in the predicate, as in line 107.

186. **duodēvigintī pedum**: the genitive of description with numerals is regularly employed to express measure. The reference is to width.

1. Give the principal parts of *jubeō*, *referō*, *trādō*, *currō*. 2. Decline in full the phrase *illud tempus*. 3. What form is *bibentem*, line 158? 4. Give the ablative singular of *fossa*, *antrum*, *nōmen*, *aditus*, *diēs*. 5. Where was Arcadia? 6. Give the derivation and meaning of the English word "vim".

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aditus	levis	ferō	celeriter
bracchium	nōtus	jaceō	deinde
cornū	novus	mīror	fortiter
cursus	nūllus	obtimeō	suprā
facultās	reliquus	perterreō	umquam
mors'	vīvus	petō	unde
negōtium		prōgredior	
opus	aperiō	prōjiciō	etsī
palūs	coepī	relinquō	
pellis	committō	sequor	contrā
vēstīgium	cōnsequor	spectō	praeter
	cōsistō	trahō	
ingēns	currō		

necāre. Hae avēs rōstra aēnea habēbant, et carne hominum vēscēbantur. Ille, postquam ad locum pervēnit, lacum vidit; in hōc autem lacū, quī nōn procul erat ab oppidō, avēs habi- 195
tābant. Nūlla tamen dabātur appropinquandī facultās. Lacus enim nōn ex aquā sed ē limō cōstitit; Herculēs igitur neque pedibus neque lentre prōgredi potuit.

Tandem, postquam magnam partem diēi frūstrā cōsūmpsit, hōc cōnātū dēstitit et ad Vulcānum sē contulit auxilium- 200
que ab eō petiit. Vulcānus, quī ā fabris maximē colēbātur, crepundia, quae ipse ex aere fabricātus erat, Herculi dedit. His Herculēs dīrum crepitum fēcit, et avēs perterritae āvolāvērunt; ille autem, dum āvolant, magnum numerum eōrum sagittīs trānsfixit. 205

19. SEVENTH LABOR—THE CRETAN BULL

Tum jussit Herculem Eurystheus taurum quendam ferō-
cissimum ex insulā Crētā vīvum referre. Ille igitur nāvem
cōnscendit et, cum primum ventus idōneus fuit, solvit. Ubi
tamen insulae jam appropinquābat, magna tempestās subitō
coōrta est, nāvisque cursum tenēre nōn poterat. Nautae 210
paene omnem spem salūtis dēposuērunt; tantus timor

193. carne: from *carō*; the deponent verbs *utor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, *potior*, *vēscor*, take as their object an ablative, not an accusative.

196. appropinquandī: a gerund in the genitive case, like *respīrandī*, line 97.

197. cōstitit: from *cōnstō*.

198. pedibus, *on foot*; ablative of means, here suggesting in addition the idea of manner.

206. ferōcissimum, *very savage*. The translation of the superlative by *very* is frequently necessary.

208. cum primum, *as soon as*. With this phrase, as with *ubi*, *postquam*, *simul atque*, the perfect indicative is most frequently employed, as explained in the note on Perseus, 12.

solvit, *set sail*.

209. insulae: the verb *appropinquō* takes either a dative, as here, or *ad* with an accusative.

animōs eōrum occupāverat. Herculēs, tamen, etsī nāvigandi imperitus erat, haudquāquam territus est.

Post breve tempus summa tranquillitās cōsecūta est, et
 215 nautae, quī sē ex timōre jam recēperant, nāvem incolumem
 ad terram perdūxērunt. Herculēs ē nāvī ēgressus est, et, ubi
 ad rēgem Crētae vēnit, causam veniendī docuit. Deinde,
 postquam omnia parāta sunt, ad eam regiōnem contendit
 quam taurus vāstābat. Mox taurum vīdit, et, quamquam
 220 rēs erat magnī periculī, cornua ejus prehendit. Tum ingentī
 labōre mōnstrum ad nāvem trāxit et cum praedā in Graeciam
 rediit.

20. EIGHTH LABOR — CAPTURE OF THE HORSES OF DIOMEDE

Postquam ex insulā Crētā rediit, Herculēs ab Eurystheō in
 Thrāciam missus est et equōs Diomēdis reducere jussus. Hī
 225 equī carne hominum vāscēbantur; Diomēdēs autem, vir crū-
 dēlissimus, iis prōjiciēbat peregrīnōs omnēs quī in eam
 regiōnem vēnerant. Herculēs igitur magnā celeritātē in
 Thrāciam contendit et hōs equōs ab Diomēde postulāvit.
 Quod tamen ille hōs trādere nōlēbat, Herculēs, irā com-
 230 mōtus, rēgem interfēcit et cadāver ejus equīs prōjici jussit.

Ita mīra rērum commūtātiō facta est; is enim quī antea
 multōs cum cruciātū necāverat ipse eōdem suppliciō necātus
 est. Ubi haec nūntiāta sunt, omnēs quī eam regiōnem in-
 colēbant maximā laetitiā affectī sunt, et Herculi meritam
 235 grātiā referēbant. Nōn modo maximīs honōribus et prae-
 miīs eum decorāverunt, sed rēgnum etiam ei obtulērunt.

212. nāvigandi imperitus, *ignorant of, unskilled in, navigation.* The genitive of the gerund here depends upon an adjective; in line 196 it was used with a noun, *facultās*.

215. sē recēperant, *had recovered.*

225. carne: why ablative? See note on line 193.

234. meritam grātiā referēbant: for the translation consult the note on Perseus, 90.

Ille tamen rēgnum accipere nōlēbat et, postquam ad mare rediit, nāvem occupāvit. Ubi omnia ad nāvigandum parāta sunt, equōs in nāvem collocāvit; deinde idōneam tempestātem nactus, sine morā ē portū solvit et paulō post equōs in litus Argolicum exposuit. 240

21. NINTH LABOR — THE GIRDLE OF HIPPOLYTE

Gēns Amāzonum dīcitur omnīnō ex mulieribus cōstitisse. Hae summam scientiam rei militāris habēbant et maximam virtūtem praebebant; nam etiam cum virīs proelium committere audēbant. Hippolytē, Amāzonum rēgīna, balteum habuit celeberrimum, quem Mārs ei dederat. Admēta autem, Eurystheī filia, fāmam dē hōc balteō accēperat, et eum possidēre vehementer cupiēbat. Eurystheus igitur Herculem iussit cōpiās cōgere et bellum Amāzonibus inferre. Ille nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisit et, postquam magna multitūdō convēnit, eōs dēlēgit quī maximum ūsum in rē militārī habēbant. 245

22. THE GIRDLE REFUSED

His virīs Herculēs causam itineris exposuit; illī auctōritāte ejus adductī iter cum eō facere cōstituērunt. Tum cum iīs

238. nāvem occupāvit, *went on board his ship.*

ad nāvigandum, *for sailing*; one of the commonest uses of the gerund is the accusative with *ad* in expressions of purpose.

239. tempestātem, *weather*; with what meaning has the word been used previously? Compare Perseus, 7.

240. nactus: from *nancīscor*. The past participle of a deponent verb is usually active in meaning.

paulō post: see note on line 27.

242. cōstitisse: from *cōnstō*.

243. rei militāris, *military science, art of war.*

244. proelium committere, *to engage in battle.*

249. bellum Amāzonibus inferre, *to make war on the Amazons.*

253. His virīs: dative of indirect object.

auctōritāte: ablative of cause.

- 255 quibus persuāserat nāvem cōnscendit et, ventum idōneum
nactus, post paucōs diēs ad ōstium flūminis Thermōdontis
appulit. Postquam in finēs Amāzonum vēnit, nūntium ad
Hippolytam mīsit, quī causam veniendī docuit et balteum
poposcit. Ipsa Hippolytē balteum trādere volēbat, quod dē
260 Herculis virtūte fāmam accēperat; quod tamen reliquae
Amāzōnes nōlēbant, negāvit. At Herculēs, ubi haec nūnti-
āta sunt, bellī fortūnam temptāre cōstituit.

- Proximō igitur diē cōpiās ēdūxit. Tum locum idōneum
dēlēgit et hostēs ad pugnam ēvocāvit. Amāzōnes quoque
265 cōpiās suās ex castris ēdūxerunt et nōn magnō intervāllō
aciem instrūxerunt.

23. THE BATTLE

Palūs erat nōn magna inter duōs exercitūs; neutrī tamen
initium trānseundī facere volēbant. Tandem Herculēs sig-
num dedit et, ubi palūdem trānsiit, proelium commisit.

- 370 Amāzōnes impetum virōrum fortissimē sustinuērunt et
contrā opīniōnem omnium magnam virtūtem praestitērunt;
multōs quidem eōrum occidērunt, multōs etiam in fugam
conjēcērunt. Virī enim novō genere pugnae perturbābantur,
nec solitam virtūtem praestābant. Herculēs autem, ubi haec

255. quibus: *persuādeō* is one of the special verbs that govern the dative.

256. post paucōs diēs: in this phrase *post* is employed as a preposition.

ad ōstium Thermōdontis: the Thermodon was a river in Pontus, a country on the southern coast of the Black Sea. The Amazons were also represented as dwelling to the north on the river Don.

259. volēbat, *was willing*.

261. nōlēbant: the words *balteum trādere* are to be understood.

265. nōn magnō intervāllō, *at no great distance (interval)*.

267. nōn magna, *of no great extent*.

neutrī: *neither side*, a rather frequent meaning for the plural of *neuter*.

270. Amāzōnes magnam virtūtem praestitērunt: the Amazons were said to have ventured to attack the territories of other nations, and to have made their way even into Attica, the district about Athens.

274. nec: translate *and not*.



AN AMAZON

275 vīdit, dē suīs fortūnīs dēspērāre coepit. Militēs igitur vehementer cohortātus ad prīstinam virtūtem tantum dēdecus dēprecātus est; quibus verbīs animī omnium ērēctī sunt; nam multī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī erant, proelium sine morā redintegrāvērunt.

24. DEFEAT OF THE AMAZONS

280 Diū et ācriter pugnātum est; tandem tamen ad sōlis occāsum magna commūtātiō rērum facta est, et mulierēs terga vertērunt atque fugā salūtem petiērunt. Multae autem vulneribus dēfessae, dum fugiunt, captae sunt; in quō numerō ipsa erat Hippolytē. Herculēs summam clēmēntiam praestitit
 285 et, postquam balteum accēpit, libertātem omnibus captīvīs dedit. Post haec sociōs ad mare redūxit et, quod nōn multum aestātis supererat, in Graeciam proficīscī mātūrāvit. Nāvem igitur cōnscendit et, tempestātem idōneam nactus, statim solvit. Antequam tamen in Graeciam pervēnit, ad
 290 urbem Trojam nāvem appellere cōstituit; frūmentum enim quod sēcum habēbat jam dēficere coeperat.

275. Militēs . . . dēprecātus est, *urged his soldiers to (display) their old-time courage (and) deplored, etc.*

277. quibus: translate by a demonstrative, *these*.

278. etiam quī, *even those who*.

280. Diū . . . pugnātum est, *the battle was long and fierce; literally, it was fought long and fiercely*.

ad sōlis occāsum, *about sunset*.

286. haec, *this*.

nōn multum aestātis, *not much of the summer; multum is neuter of the adjective used as a noun*.

290. Trojam: another example of an appositive where English would use a phrase with *of*.

1. What is the Latin for "after a few days"? 2. What part of speech is *procul*? 3. Give a synopsis of *dō* and *cōsumō* in the third person singular, active voice. 4. Give the gerunds of *videō* and *veniō* in all cases. 5. Conjugate *volō* in the present and imperfect indicative. 6. Find the derivation and meaning of "itinerary."

25. LAOMEDON AND THE SEA MONSTER

Lāomedōn quīdam illō tempore rēgnū Trojae obtinēbat; ad hunc Neptūnus et Apollō annō superiōre vēnerant et, quod Troja nōndum moenia habēbat, ad hoc opus auxilium obtulerant. Postquam tamen hōrum auxiliō moenia cōfecta sunt, nōlēbat Lāomedōn praemium quod prōposuerat per- 295
solvere.

Neptūnus igitur et Apollō, ob hanc causam irātī, mōn-
strum quoddam mīserunt speciē horribilī, quod cotīdiē ē marī
veniēbat et hominēs pecudēsque vorābat. Trojānī igitur, 300
timōre perterritī, in urbe continēbantur, et pecora omnia ex
agris intrā mūrōs compulerant. Lāomedōn, hīs rēbus com-
mōtus, ōrāculum cōsultuit; ā deō autem jussus est filiam
Hēsionem mōnstrō objicere.

26. THE RESCUE OF HESIONE

Lāomedōn, ubi hoc respōnsū renūtiātum est, magnum 305
dolōrem percēpit. Sed tamen, quod cīvēs suōs tantō periculō

301. continēbantur: here equivalent to *sē continēbant, were confining themselves.*

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aestās	ūsus	dēficiō	supersum
auctōritās		dēspērō	trānsēō
commūtātiō	dēfessus	ēdūcō	
cruciātus	imperītus	ēvocō	ācritēr
genus	incolumis	īnferō	anteā
initium	neuter	mātūrō	modo
mulier	prīstinus	nancīscor	quidem
occāsus		negō	quoque
portus	audeō	perturbō	
rōstrum	cohortor	poscō	cum
signum	collocō	postulō	
socius	cōnstō	praebeō	
supplicium	coōrior	redintegro	

liberāre volēbat, ōrāculō pārēre cōstituit et diem sacrificiō
 dixit. Sed, sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum, Herculēs tempore
 opportunissimō Trojam attigit; ipsō enim temporis pūctō
 310 quō puella catēnis vīcta ad litus dēdūcēbātur ille nāvem
 appulit. Herculēs, ē nāvī ēgressus, dē rēbus quae gerēbantur
 certior factus est; tum, irā commōtus, ad rēgem sē contulit
 et auxilium suum obtulit. Rēx libenter ejus auxilium accēpit;
 315 deinde Herculēs mōnstrum interfēcit et puellam, quae jam
 omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat, incolumem ad patrem
 redūxit. Lāomedōn magnō cum gaudiō filiam suam accēpit,
 et Herculī prō tantō beneficiō meritam grātiā rettulit.

27. TENTH LABOR — THE OXEN OF GERYON

Post haec jussus est Herculēs ad insulam Erythiam ire
 bovēsque Gēryonis arcessere. Rēs erat summae difficultātis,
 320 quod bovēs ā gigante Eurytiōne et ā cane bicipite custōdiē-
 bantur. Ipse autem Gēryōn speciem horribilem praebebāt;
 habēbat enim tria corpora inter sē conjūcta. Herculēs
 tamen, etsi intellegēbat periculum magnum esse, negōtium
 suscēpit, et, postquam per multās terrās iter fēcit, ad eam
 325 partem Libyae pervēnit quae Eurōpae proxima est. Ibi in
 utrāque parte freti quod Eurōpam ā Libyā dīvidit columnās
 cōstituit, quae postea Herculis Columnae appellatae sunt.

307. ōrāculō: dative with the special verb *pārēre*.

sacrificiō, for the sacrifice, dative.

309. ipsō . . . temporis pūctō quō, at the very moment at which.

312. certior factus est, was informed; literally, the words mean *was made more certain*.

322. inter sē, together, to one another.

323. periculum magnum esse, that the danger was great; an example of indirect discourse.

325. Eurōpae: dative, depending on the adjective *proxima*.

in utrāque parte, on both sides.

327. Herculis Columnae: usually referred to as the Pillars of Hercules; the Rock of Gibraltar and a hill on the opposite side of the Straits doubtless gave rise to this legend.

28. THE GOLDEN SHIP

Dum hīc morātur, Herculēs magnum incommodum ex calōre sōlis accipiēbat. Tandem igitur, irā commōtus, arcum suum intendit et sōlem sagittis petiit. Sōl tamen, audāciam virī admirātus, lintrem auream eī dedit. Herculēs hoc dōnum libentissimē accēpit; nūllam enim nāvem in hīs regiōnibus invenīre potuerat. Tum lintrem dēdūxit et, ventum nactus idōneum, post breve tempus ad insulam pervēnit. Postquam ex incolīs cognōvit dē locō ubi bovēs erant, eō statim profectus est et ā rēge Gēryone bovēs postulāvit. Quod tamen ille hōs trādere nōlēbat, Herculēs et rēgem ipsum et gigantem Eurytiōnem interfēcit.

29. A MIRACULOUS HAIL-STORM

Tum Herculēs bovēs per Hispāniam et Liguriam compellere cōstituit. Postquam igitur omnia parāta sunt, bovēs ex insulā ad continentem trānsportāvit. Ligurēs tamen, gēns bellicōsissima, dum ille per finēs eōrum iter facit, magnīs cōpiīs convēnērunt, atque eum longius prōgredi prohibēbant. Herculēs magnam difficultātem habēbat; barbarī enim in locīs superiōribus cōstiterant, et saxa tēlaque in eum conjiciēbant. Ille quidem paene omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat; sed tem-

330. petiit, *attacked*, a somewhat infrequent meaning of the verb.

331. admirātus, *admiring*; the past participles of certain deponent verbs are frequently best rendered by an English present participle.

335. eō: an adverb.

337. et . . . et, *both . . . and*.

342. finēs: *not boundaries*.

magnīs cōpiīs, *with large forces*, ablative of accompaniment; in expressing accompaniment *cum* may be omitted in military expressions if the noun in the ablative is modified by an adjective other than a numeral.

343. eum . . . prōgredi prohibēbant, *tried to prevent him from proceeding*. The infinitive with subject accusative often depends on *prohibeō*. The imperfect tense here denotes an attempted action.

345. cōstiterant: from *cōsistō*.

346. quidem: this word often means *it is true, to be sure*; it is then followed in the next sentence by some word denoting opposition or contrast, here *sed, but, nevertheless*.

pore opportūnissimō Juppiter imbrem lapidum ingentium ē
caelō dēmisit. Hī magnā vī cecidērunt et magnum numerum
Ligurum occidērunt; ipse tamen Herculēs, ut in tālibus rēbus
350 accidere cōsuēvit, nihil incommodī cēpit.

30. PASSAGE OF THE ALPS

Postquam Ligurēs hōc modō superātī sunt, Herculēs quam
celerrimē prōgressus est et post paucōs diēs ad Alpēs per-
vēnit. Necesse erat hōs trānsire, quod in Italiam bovēs
dūcere volēbat; rēs tamen summae erat difficultātis. Hī
355 enim montēs, quī Galliam ulteriōrem ab Italiā dividunt, nive
perennī teguntur; quam ob causam neque frūmentum neque
pābulum in his regiōnibus invenīri potest. Herculēs igitur,
antequam ascendere coepit, magnam cōpiam frūmentī et
pābulī comparāvit, et bovēs onerāvit. Postquam in hīs rēbus
360 trēs diēs cōsūmpserat, quārtō diē profectus est et contrā
omnium opiniōnem, bovēs incolumēs in Italiam trādūxit.

31. CACUS STEALS THE OXEN

Post breve tempus ad flūmen Tiberim vēnit; illō tamen
tempore nūlla erat urbs in eō locō. Rōma enim nōndum

349. in tālibus rēbus: *i.e.*, when favored with divine help.

350. cōsuēvit: the force of the tenses of this verb is explained in the
note on line 32.

nihil incommodī, *no harm*; literally *nothing of harm*.

351. quam celerrimē, *as rapidly as possible*.

355. Galliam ulteriōrem: *i.e.*, Gaul north of the Alps; the valley of the
Po in Italy was also inhabited at one time by Gallic tribes and was known
to the Romans as *Gallia citerior*, *Nearer Gaul*.

356. quam ob causam, *for this reason*; for the position of the preposi-
tion see the note on *hōc in templō*, line 73.

362. Tiberim: a few third declension nouns have *-im* instead of *-em* as
the ending of the accusative singular.

1. Give the principal parts of *praestō*, *solvō*, *prōpōnō*, *proficīscor*. 2.
Decline *cīvis* and *litus*. 3. Give the ablative plural of *vulnus*, *annus*, *rēx*,
rēgnum, *diēs*. 4. Conjugate *mittō* and *jubeō* in the future active. 5. Who
were the Amazons? 6. Who was Neptune? 7. What was the Hydra?
8. How many labors was Hercules to perform?

condita erat. Herculēs, itinere fessus, cōstituit ibi paucōs
diēs morārī atque sē ex labōribus recreāre. Haud procul 365
a valle ubi bovēs pascēbantur antrum erat, in quō gigās
quīdam, nōmine Cācus, tum habitābat. Hic speciem terri-
bilem praebebāt, nōn modo quod ingentī magnitudīne corporis
erat, sed quod ignem ex ōre expīrābat. Cācus autem dē
adventū Herculis fāmam accēperat; noctū igitur vēnit et, 370
dum Herculēs dormit, quattuor pulcherrimōrum boum abri-
puit. Hōs caudīs in antrum trāxit; hōc enim modō putāvit
Herculem vēstigiīs dēceptum bovēs nōn inventūrum esse.

32. HERCULES DISCOVERS THE THEFT

Posterō diē, simul atque ē somnō excitātus est, Herculēs
fūrtum animadvertit, et bovēs āmissōs undique quaerēbat. 375
Hōs tamen nusquam reperire poterat, nōn modo quod locī
nātūram ignōrābat, sed quod vēstigiīs falsis dēceptus est.
Tandem, ubi magnam partem diēi frūstrā cōsūmpsit, cum
reliquīs bōbus prōgredi cōstituit. At, dum proficisci parat,
ūnus ē bōbus quōs sēcum habuit mūgire coepit. Extemplō 380
iī quī in antrō inclūsī erant mūgītum reddidērunt; hōc modō
Herculēs locum invēnit. Tum vehementer irātus, ad spēlun-
cam quam celerrimē sē contulit. At Cācus saxum ingēns
dējēcerat et aditum spēluncae omnīnō obstrūxerat.

368. *ingentī magnitudīne*: ablative of description; what other case might have been employed?

373. *Herculem . . . nōn inventūrum esse*, *that Hercules, deceived by the tracks, would not find*; see note on line 323.

374. *diē*: ablative denoting time at which. What idea of time is expressed by *diēs* in line 365?

375. *bovēs āmissōs*, *the lost oxen*; the participle is employed as an adjective.

380. *ūnus ē bōbus*: with cardinal numbers and with *quīdam* an ablative with *ex* or *dē* is more common than a genitive; the latter, however, sometimes occurs, as in line 371.

383. *quam celerrimē*: see note on line 351.

33. RECOVERY OF THE OXEN

385 Herculēs, quoniam nūllum alium introitum reperire poterat,
 hoc saxum āmovēre cōnātus est; sed propter ejus magnitū-
 dinem rēs erat difficillima. Diū labōrābat, neque quidquam
 efficere poterat. Tandem tamen magnō cōnātū saxum
 āmovit et spēluncam patefēcit. Ibi āmissōs bovēs magnō
 390 cum gaudiō cōspexit. Sed Cācum ipsum vix cernere potuit,
 quod spēlunca replēta erat fūmō quem ille mōre suō ēvomē-
 bat. Herculēs, inūsītātā speciē turbātus, breve tempus
 haesitābat; mox tamen in spēluncam irrūpit et collum mōn-
 strī bracchiīs complexus est. Ille, etsī multum relūctātus est,
 395 nūllō modō sē liberāre potuit; et, quod nūlla facultās respī-
 randī dabātur, mox, quod necesse fuit, exanimātus est.

34. ELEVENTH LABOR — THE GOLDEN APPLES
OF THE HESPERIDES

Eurystheus, postquam bovēs Gēryonis accēpit, labōrem
 ūndecimum Herculi imposuit, graviōrem quam quōs suprā
 nārrāvimus. Jussit enim eum aurea pōma ex hortō Hesperī-
 400 dum auferre. Hesperides autem nymphae erant quaedam
 fōrmā praestantissimā, quae in terrā longinquā habitābant, et
 quibus aurea quaedam pōma ā Jūnōne commissa erant.
 Multī hominēs, aurī cupiditāte inductī, haec pōma auferre

387. *neque*, but not; occasionally *neque* is used as the equivalent of *sed* *nōn* instead of *et nōn*.

391. *mōre suō*, according to his custom; the ablative is sometimes employed to express the idea of "in accordance with."

392. *breve tempus*: accusative of duration of time.

396. *quod* (a thing) which, or as; neuter, because the relative refers to the fact in *exanimātus est*.

398. *Herculi*: see note on line 179.

quam: supply *eī erant*.

400. *quaedam*: with *nymphae*.

jam antea cōnātī erant; rēs tamen difficillima erat. Nam hortus in quō pōma erant mūrō ingentī undique circumdatus 405
est; praeterea dracō quīdam, quī centum capita habēbat, portam horti diligenter custodiēbat. Opus igitur quod Eurystheus Herculi imperāverat erat summae difficultātis, nō modo ob causās quās memorāvimus, sed quod Herculēs situm horti omnīnō ignōrābat. 410

35. ATLAS, WHO UPHELD THE HEAVENS

Herculēs, quamquam quiētem vehementer cupiēbat, cōstituit tamen Eurystheō pārēre; et simul ac jussa ejus accēpit, proficisci mātūrāvit. Multōs mercatōrēs interrogāverat dē sēde Hesperidum; nihil tamen certum reperire potuerat. Frūstrā per multās terrās iter fēcit et multa perīcula subiit; 415
tandem, postquam in hīs itineribus tōtum annum cōsūmpsit, ad extrēmam partem orbis, quae proxima erat Ōceanō, pervēnit. Hic stābat vir quīdam, nōmine Atlās, ingentī magnitudīne corporis, quī caelum (ita trādunt) umerīs suis, sustinēbat et in terram dēcidere prohibēbat. Herculēs, tantum 420
labōrem magnopere mīrātus, post paulō in colloquium cum

408. *Herculī*, had imposed upon Hercules; *Herculī* is a dative governed by the special verb *imperāverat*.

412. *Eurystheō*: what case is governed by verbs of obeying?

417. *orbis*: supply *terrārum*; the two words together mean *the world*.

419. *ita trādunt*, so legend has it, as the legend goes; literally so they hand down.

umeris: ablative of means, but to be translated *on his shoulders*.

caelum dēcidere, from falling upon the earth; see note on line 343.

421. *mīrātus*, wondering at.

1. Conjugate *possum* in the present, imperfect, and future. 2. Decline *diēs*. 3. Conjugate *veniō* in the past perfect. 4. Give the principal parts of *auferō*, *reddō*, *irrumpō*. 5. What is the meaning of *quam celerrimē*? 6. Find the derivation and meaning of "ignite."

Atlante vēnit et, postquam causam itineris exposuit, auxilium ejus petiit.

36. A SUBSTITUTE

Atlās autem potuit Herculī maximē prōdesse; ille enim,
 425 quoniam ipse erat pater Hesperidum, situm hortī bene scīvit.
 Postquam igitur audīvit causam itineris Herculis, "Ipse,"
 inquit, "ad hortum ibō; ego sī hortābor, filiae certē pōma suā
 sponte trādent." Herculēs, ubi haec audīvit, magnopere
 gāvīsus est; cupiēbat enim rem sine vī fierī. Cōstituit igitur
 430 oblātum auxilium accipere. Sed quod Atlās abitūrus erat,
 necesse erat aliquem caelum umeris sustinēre. Hoc igitur
 negōtium Herculēs libenter suscepit et, quamquam rēs erat

424. Herculī: dative with *prōdesse*, *benefit*.

427. hortābor: supply *eās* as object.

suā sponte, *of their own accord*.

429. gāvīsus est: from *gaudeō*.

430. abitūrus erat, *was about to go away*; the future active participle is often thus used with a form of the verb *sum*.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

colloquium	accidō	efficiō	turbō
cupiditās	āmittō	indūcō	
incommodum	arcessō	intellegō	longē
lapis	auferō	memorō	noctū
mercātor	cadō	moror	quam
ōs	circumdō	pāreō	ut
pābulum	condō	patefaciō	
	conjungō	putō	quoniam
posterus	cōnor	renūntiō	
ulterior	custōdiō	subeō	
uterque	dēcipiō	tegō	
	dēmittō	trādūcō	

summī labōris, tōtum pondus caelī continuōs complūrēs diēs sōlus sustinuit.

37. RETURN OF ATLAS

Atlās intereā abierat et ad hortum Hesperidum, quī pauca 435
mīlia passuum aberat, sē quam celerrimē contulerat. Eō
ubi vēnit, causam veniendī exposuit et ā filiābus suis pōma
vehementer petivit. Illae diū haerēbant; nōlēbant enim hoc
facere, quod ab ipsā Jūnōne, dē quā ante dictum est, hoc
mūnus accēperant. Atlās tamen post multa verba iīs per- 440
suāsit et pōma ad Herculem rettulit. Herculēs intereā, quī
plūrēs diēs expectāverat neque ūllam fāmam dē reditū
Atlantis accēperat, hāc morā graviter commōtus est. Tan-
dem quīntō diē Atlantem vīdit redeuntem, et mox magnō
cum gaudiō pōma accēpit; tum, postquam grātiās prō tantō 445
beneficiō ēgit, ad Graeciam proficīscī mātūrāvit.

38. TWELFTH LABOR — CERBERUS, THE THREE-HEADED DOG

Postquam aurea pōma ad Eurystheum relāta sunt, ūnus
modo relinquēbātur ē duodecim labōribus quōs Eurystheus Her-
culī praecēperat. Eurystheus autem, quod Herculem mag-
nopere timēbat, sē ab eō in perpetuum liberāre volēbat. Jus- 450
sit igitur eum canem Cerberum ex Orcō in lūcem trahere.

435. *pauca mīlia passuum, a few miles.* The use of *mille* in the plural is explained in the note on line 181.

436. *Eō*: an adverb.

437. *filiābus*: the noun *fīlia* has *fīliābus* (not *fīliīs*) as the dative and ablative plural; *dea* (*goddess*) also has *-ābus* as the ending of these cases; in other forms these nouns have the regular endings of the first declension.

439. *dictum est, we have spoken.*

448. *quōs Eurystheus Herculī praecēperat, which Eurystheus had imposed upon Hercules*: the compound verb *praecipiō* is transitive and so takes both a dative, *Herculī*, and an accusative, *quōs*.

450. *in perpetuum, forever*; the neuter adjective is used as a noun.

Hoc opus omnium difficillimum erat; nēmō enim umquam ex Orcō redierat. Praetereā Cerberus iste mōnstrum erat horribilī speciē, quī tria capita serpentibus saevīs cincta habēbat.

455 Antequam tamen hunc labōrem nārrāmus, nōn aliēnum videtur, quoniam dē Orcō mentiōnem fēcimus, pauca dē istā regiōne prōpōnere.

39. ORCUS, OR HADES, THE ABODE OF THE DEAD

Dē Orcō, quī idem Hādēs appellābātur, haec trāduntur. Ut quisque ē vitā discesserat, mānēs ejus ad Orcum, sēdem
460 mortuōrum, ā deō Mercuriō dēdūcēbantur. Hujus regiōnis, quae sub terrā fuisse dicitur, rēx erat Plūtō, cujus uxor erat Prōserpina, Jovis et Cereris filia. Mānēs igitur, ā Mercuriō dēductī, primum ad rīpam veniēbant Stygis flūminis, quō continētur rēgnum Plūtōnis. Hoc omnēs trānsire necesse erat
465 quī in Orcum veniēbant. Quoniam tamen in hōc flūmine nūllus pōns erat, mānēs trānsvehēbantur ā Charonte quōdam, quī cum parvā scaphā ad rīpam expectābat. Charōn prō hōc officiō mercēdem postulābat, neque volēbat quemquam sine hōc praemiō trānsvehere. Ob hanc causam mōs erat apud
470 antīquōs nummum in ōre mortuī pōnere; eō modō, ut putābant, mortuus ad Stygem veniēns pretium trājectūs solvere poterat. Iī autem quī post mortem in terrā nōn sepultī

455. *aliēnum*, out of place.

456. *pauca*, a few things.

458. *idem*, also, a frequent meaning of the word.

459. *Ut*, when. *quisque*, each person.

mānēs: a plural noun, but to be translated as singular.

460. *Mercuriō*: one of the functions ascribed to the god Mercury was that of guide of souls into the lower world.

464. *omnēs trānsire necesse erat*, all must cross. The subject of *erat* is the infinitive clause *omnēs trānsire*.

465. *in* (*flūmine*), over.

469. *mōs erat* . . . *pōnere*, it was the custom to place; *pōnere* is the subject of *erat*.

470. *mortuī*, of the dead person.

erant Stygem trānsire nōn potuerunt, sed in litore per centum annōs errāre coacti sunt; tum dēmum licuit Orcum intrāre.

475

40. THE REALM OF PLUTO

Postquam mānēs Stygem hōc modō trānsierant, ad alterum veniēbant flūmen, quod Lēthē appellātum est. Ex hōc flūmine aquam bibere cōgēbantur. Quod ubi fēcerant, rēs omnēs in vitā gestās ē memoriā dēpōnēbant. Dēnique ad sēdem ipsam Plūtōnis veniēbant, cujus introitus ā cane Cerberō custodiēbātur. Ibi Plūtō, nigrō vestitū indūtus, cum uxōre Prōserpinā in soliō sedēbat. Stābant etiam nōn procul ab eō locō tria alia solia, in quibus sedēbant Mīnōs, Rhadamanthus, et Aeacus, iūdicēs inferōrum. Hī mortuīs jūs dicēbant et praemia poenāsque cōstituēbant. Boni enim in Campōs Ēlysiōs, sēdem beātōrum, veniēbant; improbi autem in Tartarum mittēbantur, et multis variisque suppliciis ibi excruciābantur.

480

485

475. *intrāre*: subject of *licuit*.

478. *Quod ubi fēcerant*, and *when they had done this*. The Latin relative pronoun often stands at the beginning of a sentence and refers to an antecedent in the preceding sentence. When thus used it is often followed by *ubi*, as in this instance, or by *cum*. In this use it is translated by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun.

rēs omnēs . . . gestās, freely, *all the experiences of life*; literally, *all things done in life*.

482. *Stābant*, *there stood*; see note on line 146.

484. *mortuīs jūs dicēbant*, *dispensed justice to the dead*.

486. *Campōs Ēlysiōs*: in early Greek literature the Elysian Fields were spoken of as lying in the far west, at the earth's extremity, or in the Islands of the Blest. At a later time they were represented as a part of the lower world.

1. Give the principal parts of *cupiō*, *capiō*, *parō*, *pāreō*, *fīō*. 2. Give the ablative plural of *mercātor*, *fīlia*, *fīlius*, *orbis*. 3. Give a synopsis of *hortor* in the third person plural. 4. Decline *reditus* in the singular number. 5. What is the case of *iīs*, line 440, and why used? 6. Explain the derivation and meaning of "volition".

41. CHARON'S FERRY

Herculēs, postquam imperia Eurystheī accēpit, in Lacō-
 490 niam ad Taenarum statim sē contulit; ibi enim spēlunca erat
 ingentī magnitūdine, per quam (ut trādēbātur) hominēs ad
 Orcum dēscendēbant. Eō ubi vēnit et ex incolīs situm spē-
 luncae cognōvit, sine morā dēscendere cōstituit. Nec tamen
 sōlus hoc iter faciēbat. Mercurius enim et Minerva sē
 505 sociōs eī adjūnkerant. Ubi ad rīpam Stygis vēnit, Herculēs
 scapham Charontis cōscendit. Quod tamen Herculēs vir
 erat ingentī magnitūdine corporis, Charōn solvere nōlēbat;
 arbitrābātur enim tantum pondus scapham suam in mediō
 flūmine mersūrum esse. Tandem tamen, minīs Herculis ter-
 500 ritus, Charōn scapham solvit et eum incolumem ad ulteriōrem
 rīpam perdūxit.

42. THE TWELVE LABORS ACCOMPLISHED

Postquam flūmen Stygem tālī modō trānsiit, Herculēs in
 sēdem ipsius Plūtōnis vēnit et, postquam causam veniendī
 docuit, ab eō facultātem Cerberum auferendī petīvit. Plūtō,
 505 quī dē Hercule fāmam accēperat, eum benignē excēpit et
 facultātem quam ille petēbat libenter dedit. Jussit tamen
 Herculem imperāta Eurystheī facere et posteā Cerberum in
 Orcum rūsus redūcere. Herculēs haec pollicitus est, et Cer-
 berum, quem nōn sine magnō periculō manibus prehenderat,
 510 summō cum labōre ex Orcō in lūcem et ad urbem Eurystheī
 trāxit. Eō ubi vēnit, Eurystheus ex ātriō statim refūgit;

491. *ut trādēbātur*: the clause has the same sense as *ita trādunt*, line 419.

492. *Eō*, *to that place*.

495. *sociōs*, *as companions*.

498. *tantum pondus . . . mersūrum esse*, *that such a weight would sink*, etc.

504. *auferendī*: the genitive of the gerund of a transitive verb may have a direct object, here *Cerberum*.

510. *in lūcem*, *into the light*, i.e., to the upper world.

tantus pavor animum ejus occupāverat. Postquam autem paulum sē ex timōre recēpit, multīs cum lacrimīs clāmitāvit sē velle mōnstrum sine morā in Orcum reducī. Sic, contrā omnium opīniōnem, duodecim illī labōrēs quōs Eurystheus 513 praecēperat intrā duodecim annōs cōfecti sunt. Itaque Herculēs, servitūte tandem liberātus, magnō cum gaudiō Thēbās rediit.

43. NESSUS, THE CENTAUR

Post haec Herculēs multa alia praeclāra perfēcit, quae nunc perscribere longum est. Tandem, jam aetāte prōvectus, 520 Dēianīram, Oeneī filiam, in mātirimōnium dūxit; post tamen trēs annōs puerum quendam, nōmine Eunomum, cāsū occidit. Mōre antiquō necesse erat Herculem ob eam rem in exilium ire; itaque cum uxōre suā ē finibus ejus cīvitatīs exīre mātūrāvit. Dum tamen iter faciunt, ad flūmen quoddam pervēnē- 525 runt, in quō nūllus pōns erat, et dum quaerunt modum transeundī, accurrit Centaurus quīdam, nōmine Nessus, quī auxilium viātōribus obtulit. Herculēs igitur uxōrem suam in tergum Nessī imposuit; tum ipse flūmen nandō trānsiit. At Nessus, paulum in aquam prōgressus, ad rīpam subitō revertit 530 et Dēianīram auferre cōnābātur. Quod ubi animadvertit Herculēs, irā graviter commōtus, arcum intendit et pectus Nessī sagittā trānsfixit.

513. sē recēpit, *recovered*.

514. sē velle: again indirect discourse, *that he wished*; *velle* in turn governs an infinitive clause, *mōnstrum . . . reducī*.

518. Thēbās, *to Thebes*; the name of a city without a preposition is used to express the place to which.

519. praeclāra, *famous exploits*.

quae: object of *perscribere*.

520. longum est, *it would take too long*.

523. Mōre: an ablative expressing accordance, used as in line 391.

529. nandō, *by swimming*, ablative of the gerund expressing means and manner.

531. Quod ubi: the note on line 478 should be consulted.

44. THE POISONED ROBE

Nessus igitur, sagittā Herculis trānsfixus, moriēns humi
 535 jacēbat; at nōlēns occāsiōnem Herculem ulciscendī dīmittere,
 ita locūtus est. “Tū, Dēianīra, verba morientis audī: sī vīs
 amōrem marītī tuī cōservāre, aliquid sanguinis hujus quī ē
 pectore meō effunditur sūme ac repōne; tum, sī umquam sus-
 pīciō in mentem tuam vēnerit, vestem marītī hōc sanguine
 540 inficiēs.” Haec locūtus, Nessus animam efflāvit; Dēianīra
 autem, nihil malī suspicāta, imperāta fēcit. Post breve tem-
 pus Herculēs bellum contrā Eurytum, rēgem Oechaliae, sus-
 cēpit et, ubi rēgem ipsum cum filiīs interfēcit, Iolēn, filiam
 Eurytī, captivam redūxit. Antequam tamen domum vēnit,
 545 nāvem ad Cēnaeum prōmunturiū appulit. Ibi in terram
 ēgressus, quod Jovī sacrificāre volēbat, āram cōstituit. Dum
 tamen sacrificium parat, Licham, comitem suum, domum ire
 et vestem albam referre jussit; mōs enim erat apud antiquōs
 in sacrificandō vestem albam gerere. At Dēianīra, arbitrāta
 550 Herculem amōrem ergā Iolēn habēre, vestem, priusquam
 Lichae dedit, sanguine Nessī infēcit.

45. THE DEATH OF HERCULES

Herculēs, nihil malī suspicātus, vestem quam Lichās attulit
 statim induit. Post tamen breve tempus dolōrem per omnia

535. Herculem ulciscendī: the genitive of the gerund with a direct object, as in line 504.

536. morientis, *of one who is dying*; a present participle (from *morior*) used as a noun.

537. aliquid sanguinis hujus, *some of this blood.*

541. nihil malī, *no harm.*

suspīcāta, *suspecting.*

544. domum, *home*; the accusative of this noun, like that of the names of cities, is used without a preposition to express the place to which.

549. sacrificandō: ablative of the gerund governed by a preposition.
arbitrāta, *thinking.*

550. Herculem . . . habēre, *that Hercules was in love with Iole.*

membra sēnsit; sed, quod causam ejus rei ignōrābat, magnopere mirābātur. Dolōre paene exanimātus, vestem dētrahere cōnātus est. Illa tamen in corpore haesit, neque ūllō modō dīvellī potuit. Tum dēmum Herculēs, quasi furōre impulsus, in montem Oetam sē contulit et in rogum, quem summā celeritāte extrūxit, sē imposuit. Hoc ubi fēcit, voluit eōs quī circumstābant rogum quam celerrimē accendere. Omnēs diū recūsābant; tandem tamen pāstor quīdam, ad misericordiam inductus, ignem subdidit. Tum, dum omnia fūmō obscūrantur, Herculēs, dēnsā nūbe vėlātus, ā Jove in Olympum abreptus est.

562. ignem subdidit, *set fire to (the pile).*

1. Decline *quisque*. 2. Give a synopsis of *cōgō* in the third person singular, active and passive. 3. Give the principal parts of *cōnferō*, *dēscendō*, *cognōscō*, *polliceor*, *perscribō*. 4. Find the derivation and meaning of "conservation." 5. What was the last of the twelve labors of Hercules? 6. What was the result of drinking from the river Lethe? 7. How did Nessus take vengeance on Hercules? 8. What was the name of the dog that guarded the lower world? 9. Who were king and queen of the lower world? 10. What were the Elysian Fields?

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aetās	complūrēs	exeō	sciō
anima	perpetuus	fiō	suspicio
cīvitās	sōlus	hortor	ulciscor
comes	ūllus	licet	videor
imperium	aliquis	loquor	
lūx	quisque	morior	certē
mēns		perficiō	dēnique
nēmō	absum	polliceor	sic
pretium	arbitror	pōnō	priusquam
	cōservō	recūsō	
aliēnus	errō	revertō	ante

VOCABULARY FOR ORAL EXERCISES

The following vocabulary of Latin expressions and grammatical terms is given for the convenience of teachers who may wish to use Latin in giving directions for the work of the classroom.

Good morning, *Salvē* (pl. *salvēte*).

Be seated, *Cōnsīde* (pl. *cōnsīdite*).

Rise (imperative), *Surge* (pl. *surgite*).

Write on the blackboard, *Scrībe* (pl. *scrībite*) *in tabulā*.

Lay aside your book, *Pōne librum* (pl. *pōnite librōs*).

Take paper and pencil, *Sūme chartam et stilum* (pl. *sūmite chartam et stilōs*).

Recite, *Recitā* (pl. *recitāte*).

Give me your paper, *Mihi chartam tuam dā* (pl. *chartās vestrās date*).

Place your papers on the table, *Chartās in mēnsā pōnite*.

Open the window, *Fenestram aperī*.

Close the door, *Jānuam claude*.

Give me the chalk, *Cretam mihi dā*.

Thank you, *Grātiās tibi* (pl. *vōbīs*) *agō*.

Good-by, *Valē* (pl. *valēte*).

noun, *nōmen*

adjective, *adjectivum*

pronoun, *prōnōmen*

verb, *verbum*

adverb, *adverbium*

preposition, *praepositio*

conjunction, *conjunctio*

interjection, *interjectio*

case, *cāsus*

nominative, *nōminātivus*

genitive, *genitivus*

dative, *dativus*

accusative, *accūsātivus*

ablative, *ablātivus*

vocative, *vocātivus*

gender, *genus*

masculine, *masculīnum*

feminine, *fēmīnīnum*

neuter, *neutrum*

person, *persōna*

first, *prīma*

second, *secunda*

third, *tertia*

number, *numerus*

singular, *singulāris*

plural, *plūrālis*

tense, <i>tempus</i>	infinitive, <i>īnfīnītīvus</i>
present, <i>praesēns</i>	subjunctive, <i>subjūnctīvus</i>
imperfect, <i>imperfectum</i>	deponent, <i>dēpōnēns</i>
future, <i>futūrum</i>	transitive, <i>trānsitīvum</i>
perfect, <i>perfectum</i>	intransitive, <i>īntrānsitīvum</i>
past perfect, <i>praeteritum</i>	impersonal, <i>īmpersōnāle</i>
perfectum	conjugation, <i>conjugātiō</i>
future perfect, <i>futūrum</i>	declension, <i>dēclīnātiō</i>
perfectum	blackboard, <i>tabula</i> , -ae
voice, <i>vōx</i>	paper, <i>charta</i>
active, <i>actīva</i>	chalk, <i>crēta</i>
passive, <i>passīva</i>	pencil, <i>stilus</i>
mood, <i>modus</i>	question, <i>īntrōgātiō</i>
indicative, <i>īndīcātīvus</i>	answer, <i>respōnsum</i>
imperative, <i>īmpērātīvus</i>	

FAMILIAR LATIN PHRASES

The following list of phrases includes quotations from Latin which are frequently found in English literature, and also a number of mottoes and phrases which are in common use:

Ad astra per aspera, To the stars through difficulties (motto of Kansas).

Ad utrumque parātus, Prepared for either event.

Alter ego est amīcus, A friend is one's second self.

Aurī sacra famēs, Accursed greed for gold.

Ē plūribus ūnum, One (formed) from many (motto of the United States).

Ex animō, Sincerely.

Esse quam vidērī, To be rather than to seem.

Fāta viam īvenient, The fates will find a way.

Ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt, Men usually believe willingly that which they wish.

Fiat lūx, Let there be light.

Fiat iūstitia, Let justice be done.

Fortēs fortūna iuvat, Fortune favors the brave.

Homō sum, hūmānī nihil ā mē aliēnum putō, I am a man, and
I regard nothing as foreign to me which has to do with
humanity.

Horribile dictū, Horrible to relate.

In hōc signō vincēs, In this sign you shall conquer.

Labōrāre est ōrāre, To labor is to pray.

Labor omnia vincit, Toil conquers all things.

Mēns sāna in corpore sānō, A sound mind in a sound body.

Mēns sibi cōscia rēctī, A mind conscious in itself (to itself)
of right.

Mīrābile dictū, Wonderful to say.

Montānī semper liberī, Mountaineers are always freemen
(motto of West Virginia).

Nōn prōgredi est regredi Not to go forward is to go backward.

Nōn sibi sed omnibus, Not for one's self but for all.

Pāce tuā, With your permission.

Possunt quia posse videntur, They can because they think
they can.

Quod erat dēmōnstrandum (abbr. *Q. E. D.*), Which was to be
proved.

Semper parātus, Always ready.

Sic itur ad astra, Thus one rises to fame (to the stars).

Sic semper tyrannīs, Ever thus to tyrants (motto of Virginia).

Sic trānsit glōria mundī, Thus passes away the glory of the
world.

Sine diē, Without a day (said of an assembly which adjourns
without a date fixed for meeting again).

Tempora mūtantur et nōs mūtāmur in illīs, The times change
and we change with them (in them).

Vincit quī patitur, He conquers who endures.

Vincit quī sē vincit, He conquers who conquers himself.

GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

SUMMARY OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

NOUNS

1. FIRST DECLENSION, *ā*-stems

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	rosa	rosae
<i>Gen.</i>	rosae	rosārum
<i>Dat.</i>	rosae	rosīs
<i>Acc.</i>	rosam	rosās
<i>Abl.</i>	rosā	rosīs

2. SECOND DECLENSION, *o*-stems

Singular

<i>N.</i>	amicus	puer	ager	vir	templum
<i>G.</i>	amicī	puerī	agrī	virī	templī
<i>D.</i>	amicō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō
<i>Ac.</i>	amicum	puerum	agrum	virum	templum
<i>Ab.</i>	amicō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō

Plural

<i>N.</i>	amicī	puerī	agrī	virī	templa
<i>G.</i>	amicōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	templōrum
<i>D.</i>	amicīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs
<i>Ac.</i>	amicōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	templa
<i>Ab.</i>	amicīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs

NOTE.—The vocative singular of **-us** nouns ends in **-e**: **amice**.

THIRD DECLENSION

3.

CONSONANT STEMS

Singular

N.	<i>lĕx</i>	<i>mĭles</i>	<i>frāter</i>	<i>homō</i>
G.	<i>lĕgis</i>	<i>mĭlitis</i>	<i>frātris</i>	<i>hominis</i>
D.	<i>lĕgī</i>	<i>mĭlitī</i>	<i>frātrī</i>	<i>hominī</i>
Ac.	<i>lĕgem</i>	<i>mĭlitem</i>	<i>frātre</i>	<i>hominem</i>
Ab.	<i>lĕge</i>	<i>mĭlite</i>	<i>frātre</i>	<i>homine</i>

Plural

N.	<i>lĕgēs</i>	<i>mĭlitēs</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>	<i>hominēs</i>
G.	<i>lĕgum</i>	<i>mĭlitum</i>	<i>frātrum</i>	<i>hominum</i>
D.	<i>lĕgibus</i>	<i>mĭlitibus</i>	<i>frātribus</i>	<i>hominibus</i>
Ac.	<i>lĕgēs</i>	<i>mĭlitēs</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>	<i>hominēs</i>
Ab.	<i>lĕgibus</i>	<i>mĭlitibus</i>	<i>frātribus</i>	<i>hominibus</i>

NOTE. — Some masculine and feminine nouns have a nominative ending **-s**. If the stem ends in **-c** or **-g**,^{*} the combination of the final **-c** or **-g** of the stem with **-s** gives **-x**: **dux**, nominative from the stem **duc-**; **lĕx**, nominative from the stem **lĕg-**. If the stem ends in **-d** or **-t** the final consonant is dropped before **-s**: **laus**, nominative from the stem **laud-**. If the vowel **i** stands before the final consonant of the stem it is frequently changed to **e** in the nominative: **prīnceps**, nominative from the stem **prīncip-**; **mĭles**, nominative from the stem **mĭlit-**.

Nouns with stems ending in **-tr** have the nominative ending in **-ter**: **frāter** from the stem **frātr-**; **māter** from the stem **mātr-**.

Nouns with stems ending in **-din** and **-gin** replace **-in** of the stem by **-ō** in the nominative: **virgō** from the stem **virgin-**; **multitūdō** from the stem **multitūdin-**. The nominative **homō** is formed by replacing **-in** of the stem in the same manner.

Singular

<i>N.</i>	<i>flūmen</i>	<i>caput</i>	<i>corpus</i>	<i>iter</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>flūminis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	<i>corporis</i>	<i>itineris</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>flūminī</i>	<i>capitī</i>	<i>corporī</i>	<i>itinerī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>flūmen</i>	<i>caput</i>	<i>corpus</i>	<i>iter</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>flūmine</i>	<i>capite</i>	<i>corpore</i>	<i>itinere</i>

Plural

<i>N.</i>	<i>flūmina</i>	<i>capita</i>	<i>corpora</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>flūminum</i>	<i>capitum</i>	<i>corporum</i>	<i>itinerum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	<i>corporibus</i>	<i>itineribus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>flūmina</i>	<i>capita</i>	<i>corpora</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	<i>corporibus</i>	<i>itineribus</i>

NOTE.—Nouns which have **-in** as the stem ending change **i** of the stem to **e** in the nominative: **flūmen** from the stem **flūmin-**. A few other nouns likewise change the vowel before the final consonant of the stem in forming the nominative: **caput** from the stem **capit-**.

Neuter nouns with stems ending in **-er** or **-or** regularly have the nominative in **-us**: **corpus** from the stem **corpor-**. The nominative **iter** has the stem **itiner-**.

4. I-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS

Singular

<i>N.</i>	<i>collis</i>	<i>caedēs</i>	<i>nox</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>collis</i>	<i>caedis</i>	<i>noctis</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>collī</i>	<i>caedī</i>	<i>noctī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>collem</i>	<i>caedem</i>	<i>noctem</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>colle</i>	<i>caede</i>	<i>nocte</i>

Plural

<i>N.</i>	<i>collēs</i>	<i>caedēs</i>	<i>noctēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>collium</i>	<i>caedium</i>	<i>noctium</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>collibus</i>	<i>caedibus</i>	<i>noctibus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>collis (-ēs)</i>	<i>caedis (-ēs)</i>	<i>noctis (-ēs)</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>collibus</i>	<i>caedibus</i>	<i>noctibus</i>

Singular

N.	insigne	exemplar	animal
G.	insignis	exemplāris	animālis
D.	insignī	exemplārī	animālī
Ac.	insigne	exemplar	animal
Ab.	insignī	exemplārī	animālī

Plural

N.	insignia	exemplāria	animālia
G.	insignium	exemplārium	animālium
D.	insignibus	exemplāribus	animālibus
Ac.	insignia	exemplāria	animālia
Ab.	insignibus	exemplāribus	animālibus

5.

IRREGULAR NOUNS

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
N.	vīs	vīrēs	bōs	bovēs
G.	—	vīrium	bovis	boum
D.	—	vīribus	bovī	būbus or bōbus
Ac.	vim	vīrīs or -ēs	bovem	bovēs
Ab.	vī	vīribus	bove	būbus or bōbus

6.

FOURTH DECLENSION, u-stems

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
N.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
G.	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
D.	exercituī or -ū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Ac.	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Ab.	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

7.

FIFTH DECLENSION, ē-stems

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
N.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES

8. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

(1) **bonus**, *good*

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>G.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>D.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Ac.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Ab.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

(2) **miser**, *unhappy*

<i>Singular</i>			
<i>N.</i>	miser	miserā	miserum
<i>G.</i>	miserī	miserāe	miserī
<i>D.</i>	miserō	miserāe	miserō
<i>Ac.</i>	miserum	miseram	miserum
<i>Ab.</i>	miserō	miserā	miserō
<i>Plural</i>			
<i>N.</i>	miserī	miserāe	miserā
<i>G.</i>	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
<i>D.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
<i>Ac.</i>	miserōs	miserās	miserā
<i>Ab.</i>	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

(3) **pulcher**, *beautiful*

<i>Singular</i>			
<i>N.</i>	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
<i>G.</i>	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
<i>D.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
<i>Ac.</i>	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
<i>Ab.</i>	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

		<i>Plural</i>	
N.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
G.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Ac.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Ab.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

9. THIRD DECLENSION

THREE TERMINATIONS—(I-STEMS)

ācer, sharp

	<i>Singular</i>				<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre		ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris		ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī		ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre		ācrīs, -ēs	ācrīs, -ēs	ācria
Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī		ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

10. TWO TERMINATIONS—(i-STEMS)

omnis, all

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	omnis	omne		omnēs	omnia
G.	omnis	omnis		omnium	omnium
D.	omnī	omnī		omnibus	omnibus
Ac.	omnem	omne		omnīs or -ēs	omnia
Ab.	omnī	omnī		omnibus	omnibus

11. ONE TERMINATION

*fēlix, fortunate**potēns, powerful*

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Singular</i>	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	fēlix	fēlix		potēns	potēns
G.	fēlicis	fēlicis		potentis	potentis
D.	fēlicī	fēlicī		potentī	potentī
Ac.	fēlicem	felix		potentem	potēns
Ab.	fēlicī	fēlicī		potentī, -e	potentī -e

Plural

N.	fēlicēs	fēlicia	potentēs	potentia
G.	fēlicium	fēlicium	potentium	potentium
D.	fēlicibus	fēlicibus	potentibus	potentibus
Ac.	fēlicīs, -ēs	fēlicia	potentīs, -ēs	potentia
Ab.	fēlicibus	fēlicibus	potentibus	potentibus

12.

PRESENT PARTICIPLES

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	portāns	portāns	portantēs	portantia
<i>G.</i>	portantis	portantis	portantium	portantium
<i>D.</i>	portantī	portantī	portantibus	portantibus
<i>Ac.</i>	portantem	portāns	portantīs, -ēs	portantia
<i>Ab.</i>	portante (-ī)	portante (-ī)	portantibus	portantibus

13.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

alius	ūnus	alter
sōlus	tōtus	neuter
ūllus	nūllus	uter

N.	sōlus	sōla	sōlum	alter	altera	alterum
G.	sōlius	sōlius	sōlius	alterius	alterius	alterius
D.	sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Ac.	sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	alterum	alteram	alterum
Ab.	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	alterō	alterā	alterō

(The plurals are like those of **bonus** and **miser**.)

14.

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
lātus	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, -a, -um
fortis	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, -a, -um
fēlix	fēlicior, fēlicius	fēlicissimus, -a, -um
miser	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
fācilis	facilior, facilius	facillimus, -a, -um

15. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bonus	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus	pejor, pejus	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus	major, majus	maximus, -a, -um
parvus	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
multus	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um

16. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

lātior, broader

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
G. lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
D. lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
Ac. lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
Ab. lātiōre	lātiōre	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

plūs, more

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. ———	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
G. ———	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
D. ———	———	plūribus	plūribus
Ac. ———	plūs	plūris or -ēs	plūra
Ab. ———	———	plūribus	plūribus

17. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
lātē	lātius	lātissimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
ācritēr	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile	facilius	facillimē

18. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

bene	melius	optimē
male	pejus	pessimē
magnopere	magis	maximē
multum	plūs	plūrimum
parum	minus	minimē
prope	propius	proximē
saepe	saepius	saepissimē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē

19. NUMERALS

<i>Roman Numerals</i>	<i>Cardinal</i>	<i>Ordinal</i>
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	primus, -a, -um
II.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus <i>or</i> alter
III.	trēs, tria	tertius
IV.	quattuor	quārtus
V.	quīnque	quīntus
VI.	sex	sextus
VII.	septem	septimus
VIII.	octō	octāvus
IX.	novem	nōnus
X.	decem	decimus
XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus
XII.	duodecim	duodecim
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus
XVIII.	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsimus
XIX.	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsimus
XX.	vīgintī	vicēsimus
XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	vicēsimus primus
XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsimus
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēsimus

XXX.	trīgintā	trīcēsīmus
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
C.	centum	centēsīmus
CI.	centum (et) ūnus	centēsīmus (et) prīmus
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus
CCC.	trecentī	trecentēsīmus
CCCC.	quadrīngentī	quadrīngentēsīmus
D.	quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus
DC.	sescentī	sescentēsīmus
DCC.	septīngentī	septīngentēsīmus
DCCC.	octīngentī	octīngentēsīmus
DCCCC.	nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus
M.	mille	millēsīmus
MM.	duo mīlia	bis millēsīmus

a. DECLENSION OF DUO, TRĒS, and MĪLIA

	duo, two		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	duo	duae	duo
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

	trēs, three		mīlia, N., thousands
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	trēs	tria	mīlia
G.	trīum	trīum	mīlium
D.	tribus	tribus	mīlibus
Ac.	trēs, trīs	tria	mīlia
Ab.	tribus	tribus	mīlibus

PRONOUNS

20. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person, **ego**, *I*Second person, **tū**, *you (thou)*

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>		<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>N.</i>	ego	nōs		tū	vōs
<i>G.</i>	meī	{ nostrum nostrī		tuī	{ vestrum vestrī
<i>D.</i>	mihi	nōbīs		tibi	vōbīs
<i>Ac.</i>	mē	nōs		tē	vōs
<i>Ab.</i>	mē	nōbīs		tē	vōbīs

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun (usually **is**, *he*, **ea**, *she*, **id**, *it*), or, if the antecedent is the subject of the sentence or clause, by the reflexive pronouns.

21. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

First person,

Second person.

Third person,

meī,**tuī**,**suī**,*of myself**of yourself**of himself, etc.*

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>G.</i>	meī	nostrī		tuī	vestrī		suī	suī
<i>D.</i>	mihi	nōbīs		tibi	vōbīs		sibi	sibi
<i>Ac.</i>	mē	nōs		tē	vōs		sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
<i>Ab.</i>	mē	nōbīs		tē	vōbīs		sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

22. POSSESSIVES

*Singular**1st pers.* **meus**, -a, -um, *my**2d pers.* **tuus**, -a, -um, *your* (of one person)*3d pers.* { **suus**, -a, -um, *his, her, its* (reflexive){ **eius** (gen. sing. of **is**) *his, etc.* (not reflexive)

Plural

- 1st pers. noster, -tra, -trum, *our*
 2d pers. vester, -tra, -trum, *your* (of more than one person)
 3d pers. { suus, -a, -um, *their* (reflexive)
 { eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. plur. of *is*) *their*
 { (not reflexive)

23. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

(1) *hic, this*

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
<i>G.</i>	hujus	hujus	hujus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
<i>D.</i>	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
<i>Ac.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>Ab.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

(2) *ille, that*

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>G.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>D.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Ac.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Ab.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

(3) *is, this, that, he, she, it*

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	is	ea	id	īī, eī	eae	ea
<i>G.</i>	ejus	ejus	ejus	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>D.</i>	eī	eī	eī	īīs, eīs	īīs, eīs	īīs, eīs
<i>Ac.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Ab.</i>	eō	eā	eō	īīs, eīs	īīs, eīs	īīs, eīs

24. THE IDENTIFYING PRONOUN

idem, the same

<i>Singular</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. <i>īdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>īdem</i>
G. <i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>
D. <i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>
Ac. <i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>īdem</i>
Ab. <i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>

Plural

N. <i>īdem or eīdem</i>	<i>eaedem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
G. <i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
D. <i>īsdem or eīsdem</i>	<i>īsdem</i> or <i>eīsdem</i>	<i>īsdem or eīsdem</i>
Ac. <i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
Ab. <i>īsdem or eīsdem</i>	<i>īsdem or eīsdem</i>	<i>īsdem or eīsdem</i>

25. THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, self

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. <i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
G. <i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
D. <i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
Ac. <i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
Ab. <i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>

26. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, who

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. <i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
G. <i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>cujus</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
D. <i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
Ac. <i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
Ab. <i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

27. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	quis	quae	quid or quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>G.</i>	cujus	cujus	cujus	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>D.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Ac.</i>	quem	quam	quid or quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Ab.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. In the nominative singular masculine the adjective form is sometimes **quī**. In the nominative and accusative singular neuter it is always **quod**.

28. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

(1) **quisque**, *each*

	<i>Singular</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	quisque	quaeque	quidque, quodque
<i>G.</i>	cujusque	cujusque	cujusque
<i>D.</i>	cuique	cuique	cuique
<i>Ac.</i>	quemque	quamque	quidque, quodque
<i>Ab.</i>	quōque	quāque	quōque

(The plural is rare)

(2) **quisquam**, *anyone*

	<i>Singular</i>	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
<i>G.</i>	cujusquam	cujusquam
<i>D.</i>	cuiquam	cuiquam
<i>Ac.</i>	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
<i>Ab.</i>	quōquam	quōquam

(Plural lacking)

(3) *quīdam, a certain**Singular*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>G.</i>	cujusdam	cujusdam	cujusdam
<i>D.</i>	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Ac.</i>	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Ab.</i>	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

Plural

<i>N.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
<i>G.</i>	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
<i>D.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Ac.</i>	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
<i>Ab.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

(4) *aliquis, some**Singular*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	aliquis (aliquī)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
<i>G.</i>	alicujus	alicujus	alicujus
<i>D.</i>	alicui	alicui	alicui
<i>Ac.</i>	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
<i>Ab.</i>	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō

Plural

<i>N.</i>	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
<i>G.</i>	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
<i>D.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Ac.</i>	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
<i>Ab.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

VERBS

29.

FIRST CONJUGATION

Principal parts: **portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum**

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular

portō, *I carry*
 portās, *you carry*
 portat, *he carries*

Plural

portāmus, *we carry*
 portātis, *you carry*
 portant, *they carry*

IMPERFECT

Singular

portābam, *I was carrying*
 portābās, *you were carrying*
 portābat, *he was carrying*

Plural

portābāmus, *we were carrying*
 portābātis, *you were carrying*
 portābant, *they were carrying*

FUTURE

Singular

portābō, *I shall carry*
 portābis, *you will carry*
 portābit, *he will carry*

Plural

portābimus, *we shall carry*
 portābitis, *you will carry*
 portābunt, *they will carry*

PERFECT

Singular

portāvī, *I have carried, I carried*
 portāvistī, *you have carried, etc.*
 portāvit, *he has carried, etc.*

Plural

portāvimus, *we have carried, etc.*
 portāvistis, *you have carried, etc.*
 portāvērunt, *-ēre, they have carried, etc.*

PAST PERFECT

Singular

portāveram, *I had carried*
 portāverās, *you had carried*
 portāverat, *he had carried*

Plural

portāverāmus, *we had carried*
 portāverātis, *you had carried*
 portāverant, *they had carried*

FUTURE PERFECT

Singular

portāverō, *I shall have carried*
 portāveris, *you will have carried*
 portāverit, *he will have carried*

Plural

portāverimus, *we shall have carried*
 portāveritis, *you will have carried*
 portāverint, *they will have carried*

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Sing. portā, *carry (thou)* *Plur.* portāte, *carry (ye)*

INFINITIVES

Pres. portāre, *to carry*
Perf. portāvisse, *to have carried*
Fut. portātūrus esse, *to be about to carry*

PARTICIPLES

Pres. portāns, *carrying* *Fut.* portātūrus, *about to carry*

GERUND

G. portandī, *of carrying*
D. portandō, *to (for) carrying*
Ac. portandum, *carrying*
Ab. portandō *from, by carrying*

30.

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular

portor, *I am carried*
 portāris, -re, *you are carried*
 portātur, *he is carried*

Plural

portāmur, *we are carried*
 portāminī, *you are carried*
 portantur, *they are carried*

IMPERFECT

Singular

portābar, *I was (being) carried*
portābāris, -re, *you were (being) carried*
portābātur, *he was (being) carried*

Plural

portābāmur, *we were (being) carried*
portābāminī, *you were (being) carried*
portābantur, *they were (being) carried*

FUTURE

Singular

portābor, *I shall be carried*
portāberis, -re, *you will be carried*
portābitur, *he will be carried*

Plural

portābimur, *we shall be carried*
portābiminī, *you will be carried*
portābuntur, *they will be carried*

PERFECT

Singular

portātus sum, *I have been carried*
portātus es, *you have been carried*
portātus est, *he has been carried*

Plural

portātī sumus, *we have been carried*
portātī estis, *you have been carried*
portātī sunt, *they have been carried*

PAST PERFECT

Singular

portātus eram, *I had been carried*
portātus erās, *you had been carried*
portātus erat, *he had been carried*

Plural

portātī erāmus, *we had been carried*
portātī erātis, *you had been carried*
portātī erant, *they had been carried*

FUTURE PERFECT

Singular

portātus erō, *I shall have been carried*
portātus eris, *you will have been carried*
portātus erit, *he will have been carried*

Plural

portātī erimus, *we shall have been carried*
portātī eritis, *you will have been carried*
portātī erunt, *they will have been carried*

INFINITIVES

Pres. portārī, *to be carried*
Perf. portātus esse, *to have been carried*
Fut. portātum irī, *to be about to be carried*

PARTICIPLE

Perf. portātus, *having been carried*

31. SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum
 dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum
 capiō, capere, cēpī, captum
 audiō, audire, audivī, auditum

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
monēs	dūcis	capis	audīs
monet	dūcit	capit	audit
monēmus	dūcimus	capimus	audīmus
monētis	dūcitis	capitis	audītis
monent	dūcunt	capiunt	audiunt

IMPERFECT

monēbam	dūcēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
monēbās	dūcēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
monēbat	dūcēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
monēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
monēbātis	dūcēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
monēbant	dūcēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

FUTURE

monēbō	dūcam	capiam	audiam
monēbis	dūcēs	capies	audiēs
monēbit	dūcet	capiet	audiet
monēbimus	dūcēmus	capiemus	audiēmus
monēbitis	dūcētis	capietis	audiētis
monēbunt	dūcent	capient	audient

PERFECT

monuī, etc. dūxī, etc. cēpī, etc. audīvī, etc.

PAST PERFECT

monueram, etc. dūxeram, etc. cēperam, etc. audīveram, etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

monuerō, etc. dūxerō, etc. cēperō, etc. audīverō, etc.

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

monē dūc¹ cape audī
monēte dūcite capite audite

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

monēns dūcēns capiēns audiēns

FUTURE

monitūrus ductūrus captūrus audītūrus

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

monēre dūcere capere audire

PERFECT

monuisse dūxisse cēpisse audīvisse

FUTURE

monitūrus esse ductūrus esse captūrus esse audītūrus esse

GERUND

monendī dūcendī capiendī audiendī
monendō dūcendō capiendō audiendō
etc. etc. etc. etc.

¹See section 550, a, page 284.

PASSIVE VOICE

32.

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

moneor	dūcor	capior	audior
monēris, -re	dūceris, -re	caperis, -re	audīris, -re
monētur	dūcitur	capitur	audītur
monēmur	dūcimur	capimur	audīmur
monēmini	dūcimini	capimini	audīmini
monentur	dūcuntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

IMPERFECT

monēbar	dūcēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
monēbāris, -re	dūcēbāris, -re	capiēbāris, -re	audiēbāris, -re
monēbātur	dūcēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
monēbāmur	dūcēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
monēbāmini	dūcēbāmini	capiēbāmini	audiēbāmini
monēbantur	dūcēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

FUTURE

monēbor	dūcar	capiar	audiar
monēberis, -re	dūcēris, -re	capiēris, -re	audiēris, -re
monēbitur	dūcētur	capiētur	audiētur
monēbimur	dūcēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
monēbimini	dūcēmini	capiēmini	audiēmini
monēbuntur	dūcentur	capientur	audientur

PERFECT

monitus sum	ductus sum	captus sum	auditus sum
-------------	------------	------------	-------------

PAST PERFECT

monitus eram	ductus eram	captus eram	auditus eram
--------------	-------------	-------------	--------------

FUTURE PERFECT

monitus erō	ductus erō	captus erō	auditus erō
-------------	------------	------------	-------------

PARTICIPLE

PERFECT

monitus	ductus	captus	auditus
---------	--------	--------	---------

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

monēri	dūci	capī	audiri
--------	------	------	--------

PERFECT

monitus esse	ductus esse	captus esse	auditus esse
--------------	-------------	-------------	--------------

FUTURE

monitum iri	ductum iri	captum iri	auditum iri
-------------	------------	------------	-------------

33.

DEPONENT VERBS

- I. cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum
- II. polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum
- III. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum
- IV. partior, partīrī, partītus sum

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I	II	III	IV
cōnor	polliceor	sequor	partior
cōnāris, -re	pollicēris, -re	sequeris, -re	partīris, -re
cōnātur	pollicētur	sequitur	partītur
cōnāmur	pollicēmur	sequimur	partīmur
cōnāminī	pollicēminī	sequiminī	partīminī
cōnāntur	pollicentur	sequuntur	partiuntur

IMPERFECT

cōnābar	pollicēbar	sequēbar	partiēbar
---------	------------	----------	-----------

FUTURE

cōnābor	pollicēbor	sequar	partiar
---------	------------	--------	---------

PERFECT

cōnātus sum	pollicitus sum	secūtus sum	partītus sum
-------------	----------------	-------------	--------------

PAST PERFECT

cōnātus eram	pollicitus eram	secūtus eram	partītus eram
--------------	-----------------	--------------	---------------

FUTURE PERFECT

cōnātus erō	pollicitus erō	secūtus erō	partītus erō
-------------	----------------	-------------	--------------

INFINITIVES

PRESENT

cōnārī	pollicērī	sequī	partīrī
--------	-----------	-------	---------

PERFECT

cōnātus esse	pollicitus esse	secūtus esse	partītus esse
--------------	-----------------	--------------	---------------

FUTURE

cōnātūrus esse	pollicitūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	partītūrus esse
----------------	-------------------	----------------	-----------------

PARTICIPLES

PRESENT

cōnāns	pollicēns	sequēns	partiēns
--------	-----------	---------	----------

PERFECT

cōnātus	pollicitus	secūtus	partītus
---------	------------	---------	----------

FUTURE ACTIVE

cōnātūrus	pollicitūrus	secūtūrus	partītūrus
-----------	--------------	-----------	------------

GERUND

cōnandī, etc.	pollicendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	partiendī, etc.
---------------	------------------	----------------	-----------------

IRREGULAR VERBS

34.

CONJUGATION OF SUM

Principal parts: *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

*Singular**Plural**sum, I am**sumus, we are**es, you are**estis, you are**est, he, she, it is**sunt, they are*

IMPERFECT

*eram, I was**erāmus, we were**erās, you were**erātis, you were**erat, he, she, it was**erant, they were*

FUTURE

*erō, I shall be**erimus, we shall be**eris, you will be**eritis, you will be**erit, he, she, it will be**erunt, they will be*

PERFECT

*fui, I have been, I was**fuimus, we have been, we were**fuistī, you have been, you were**fuistis, you have been, you were**fuit, he, she, it has been, was**fuērunt or -ēre, they have been, etc.*

PAST PERFECT

*fueram, I had been**fuerāmus, we had been**fuerās, you had been**fuerātis, you had been**fuerat, he, she, it had been**fuerant, they had been*

FUTURE PERFECT

*fuerō I shall have been**fuerimus, we shall have been**fueris, you will have been**fueritis, you will have been**fuerit, he, she, it will have been**fuerint, they will have been*

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
<i>2d pers.</i>	es, be (<i>thou</i>)	este, be (<i>ye</i>)

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futūrus, *about to be*

INFINITIVES

Pres. esse, *to be*

Perf. fuisse, *to have been*

Fut. futūrus esse *or fore, to be about to be*

35. CONJUGATION OF POSSUM

Principal parts: possum, posse, potuī

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
possum	possumus
potes	potestis
potest	possunt

PERFECT

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
potuī	potuimus
potuistī	potuistis
potuit	potuērunt

IMPERFECT

poteram	poterāmus
poterās	poterātis
poterat	poterant

PAST PERFECT

potueram	potuerāmus
potuerās	potuerātis
potuerat	potuerant

FUTURE

poterō	poterimus
poteris	poteritis
poterit	poterunt

FUTURE PERFECT

potuerō	potuerimus
potueris	potueritis
potuerit	potuerint

INFINITIVES

Pres. posse

Perf. potuisse

36. CONJUGATION OF FERŌ

Principal parts: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

*Active**Passive*

ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris, -re	feriminī
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

IMPERFECT

ferēbam	ferēbāmus	ferēbar	ferēbāmur
---------	-----------	---------	-----------

FUTURE

feram	ferēmus	ferar	ferēmur
-------	---------	-------	---------

PERFECT

tulī	tulimus	lātus sum	lātī sumus
------	---------	-----------	------------

PAST PERFECT

tuleram	tulerāmus	lātus eram	lātī erāmus
---------	-----------	------------	-------------

FUTURE PERFECT

tulerō	tulerimus	lātus erō	lātī erimus
--------	-----------	-----------	-------------

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

<i>2d pers. fer</i>	<i>ferre</i>
---------------------	--------------

INFINITIVES

*Active**Passive*

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferri
<i>Perf.</i>	tulisse	lātus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus esse	lātum iri

PARTICIPLES

	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns	<i>Perf.</i> lātus
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus	

GERUND

ferendī, etc.

37.

CONJUGATION OF EŌ

Principal parts: eō, ire, iī or ivī, itum

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

PERFECT

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
eō	īmus	iī	iimus
īs	ītis	istī (iistī)	istis (iistis)
it	eunt	iit	iērunt

IMPERFECT

PAST PERFECT

ībam	ībāmus	ieram	ierāmus
ībās	ībātis	ierās	ierātis
ībat	ībant	ierat	ierant

FUTURE

FUTURE PERFECT

ībō	ībimus	ierō	ierimus
ībis	ībitis	ieris	ieritis
ībit	ībunt	ierit	ierint

a. Forms are sometimes found in the perfect system with the stem *iv-*, as *ivī*, *iveram*, etc.

IMPERATIVE

Pres., 2d pers. *i,* *ite,*

INFINITIVES

<i>Pres.</i>	īre
<i>Perf.</i>	iisse or isse
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus esse

PARTICIPLES

<i>Pres.</i>	iēns (<i>gen. euntis</i>)
<i>Fut.</i>	itūrus

GERUND

eundī, etc.

38.

CONJUGATION OF FĪŌ

Principal parts: fĭō, fierī, factus sum

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
fĭō	—
fīs	—
fīt	fĭunt

PERFECT

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
factus sum	factī sumus
factus es	factī estis
factus est	factī sunt

IMPERFECT

fĭēbam	fĭēbamus
fĭēbās	fĭēbātis
fĭēbat	fĭēbant

PAST PERFECT

factus eram	factī erāmus
factus erās	factī erātis
factus erat	factī erant

FUTURE

fĭam	fĭēmus
fĭēs	fĭētis
fĭet	fĭent

FUTURE PERFECT

factus erō	factī erimus
factus eris	factī eritis
factus erit	factī erunt

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres., 2d pers.</i>	fĭ,	fĭte
------------------------	-----	------

INFINITIVES

<i>Pres.</i>	fierī
<i>Perf.</i>	factus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	factum īrī

PARTICIPLE

Perf. factus

39.

CONJUGATION OF VOLŌ

volō, velle, voluī, *be willing*

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
volō	volumus
vīs	vultis
vult	volunt

PERFECT

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
voluī	voluimus
voluistī	voluistis
voluit	voluērunt

IMPERFECT

volēbam	volēbāmus
volēbās	volēbātis
volēbat	volēbant

PAST PERFECT

volueram	voluerāmus
voluerās	voluerātis
voluerat	voluerant

FUTURE

volam	volēmus
volēs	volētis
volet	volent

FUTURE PERFECT

voluerō	voluerimus
volueris	volueritis
voluerit	voluerint

INFINITIVES

<i>Pres.</i>	velle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns
--------------	--------

REVIEW OF SYNTAX

AGREEMENT

40. (1) Adjectives and participles agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

(2) A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

(3) A noun in apposition is put in the same case as the word which it explains.

(4) A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

CASES

THE NOMINATIVE

41. (1) The nominative is the case of the subject or predicate.

THE GENITIVE

42. (1) The genitive is the case of the possessor. (*Genitive of Possession.*)

(2) With words denoting a part, a dependent genitive is used to denote the whole of that to which the part belongs. (*Genitive of the Whole, or Partitive Genitive.*)

(3) The genitive, modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing. (*Genitive of Description.*)

THE DATIVE

43. (1) The indirect object is put in the dative case. (*Dative of Indirect Object.*)

(2) The dative is used in dependence on adjectives meaning *kind, friendly, pleasing, dear, useful, near*, and some others. (*Dative with Adjectives.*)

(3) Most verbs meaning *to please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, serve, obey, favor, resist, envy, threaten, pardon*, and *spare* govern the dative. (*Dative with Special Verbs.*)

(4) Verbs compounded with **ante**, **ob**, **prae**, and **sub**, frequently have a dependent noun or pronoun in the dative.

This construction is sometimes found also with compounds of **ad**, **circum**, **com-**, **in**, **inter**, **post**, **prō**, and **super**. (*Dative with Compounds.*)

THE ACCUSATIVE

44. (1) The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case. (*Accusative as Direct Object.*)

(2) A noun which is used to tell how long an act or a situation continues is put in the accusative. (*Accusative of Duration of Time.*)

(3) The accusative without a preposition is used to express extent in space. (*Accusative of Extent of Space.*)

(4) Certain prepositions have their objects in the accusative. (*Accusative with Prepositions.*)

THE ABLATIVE

45. (1) Verbs meaning to *separate, remove, deprive of, be absent*, and the like, take the ablative of separation, often with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**. (*Ablative of Separation.*)

(2) With passive verbs, the noun or pronoun which denotes the person by whom the act is done is put in the ablative with **ā** or **ab**. (*Ablative of Agent.*)

(3) The ablative with **in** denotes the place where something is or where some act occurs. (*Ablative of Place.*)

(4) The time at which or within which an act takes place is regularly expressed in Latin by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition. (*Ablative of Time.*)

(5) The ablative with the preposition **cum** is used to denote the person with whom one is associated in doing an act. (*Ablative of Accompaniment.*)

(6) The ablative, frequently with the preposition **cum**, is used to express manner. (*Ablative of Manner.*)

(7) A word which is used to denote the means employed in accomplishing an act is put in the ablative without a preposition. (*Ablative of Means.*)

(8) A noun or pronoun in the ablative, together with an adjective, a participle, or another noun in agreement, may be used to denote some circumstance or event loosely connected with the rest of the sentence. (*Ablative Absolute.*)

(9) The measure or degree of difference is expressed by the ablative. (*Ablative of Degree of Difference.*)

(10) The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true. (*Ablative of Respect or Specification.*)

(11) The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing. (*Ablative of Description.*)

(12) The ablative is used to express cause. (*Ablative of Cause.*)

(13) **Ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor** take their objects in the ablative. (*Ablative with Certain Deponents.*)

THE VOCATIVE

46. The vocative denotes the person addressed.

MOODS

THE INDICATIVE

47. The indicative is used in statements of fact and in questions which imply as answer a statement of fact.

THE IMPERATIVE

48. The imperative is used to express commands.

THE INFINITIVE

49. (1) The infinitive is sometimes used to complete the meaning of another verb, by denoting an action of the subject of the verb on which it depends. (*Complementary Infinitive.*)

(2) The infinitive with subject accusative is used with words of *saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, seeing, and the like.* (*Indirect Discourse.*)

THE GERUND

50. The gerund is a verbal noun, used only in four cases and in the singular number. The cases in which it is used are the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative.

SELECTED WORD LIST

The following words from the vocabulary of this book appear in the list selected by the College Entrance Examination Board for the first two years of the high-school course. The total number comprising the list for the first two years is approximately nine hundred, of which more than half are here given.

For convenience in study, the words appearing in Lessons I-XCIII, Horatius, Perseus, and Circe are divided into four groups of about equal size. Group V includes words occurring in the Supplementary Lessons and the reading material following them.

I

ā, ab	cōpia	habeō	moneō
ad	cum (<i>prep.</i>)	hic	multus
adsum	cum (<i>conj.</i>)	hōra	nam
aedificium	cūr	ibi	-ne
aeger	dēbeō	ille	neque, nec
ager	dēfessus	in	noctū
amīcus	dēsīderō	insula	nōn
angustus	diū	ita	noster
ante	dō	juvō	nūllus
aqua	equus	labōrō	nunc
arma	ē, ex	lātus, -a, -um	occupō
aut	et	laudō	oppidum
auxilium	expectō	locus	parō
bellum	fāma	longus	parvus
bene	fīlius	magnus	pecūnia
bonus	frūmentum	maneō	per
castra	gladius	meus	perīculum
cōnsilium	grātus	miser	poena

portō	quam	sine	trēs
post	quis	socius	tum
postulō	quod	sōlus	tūtus
praemium	quoque	spectō	tuus
prō	saepe	stō	ubi
probō	sagitta	sum	vāstō
proelium	satis	terra	via
propinquus	scūtum	tertius	videō
propter	sed	timeō	vir
puer	silva	trāns	vīta

II

agmen	cupiō	inimīcus	nāvis
alius	dē	inīquus	necō
altus	dēfendō	insigne	neglegō
āmittō	dēleō	inter	nōmen
annus	dūcō	interficiō	nox
appellō, -āre	duo	is	nūntius
appropinquō	dux	iter	officium
arbor	etiam	iaciō	oppugnō
audeō	excipiō	jubeō	ostendō
audiō	expugnō	lapis	pāreō
barbarus	ferus	lēgātus	pars
calamitās	finis	legiō	pater
capiō	flūmen	lūx	paucī
caput	fluō	māter	pāx
centuriō	frāter	medius	pēs
cēterī	gēns	mīles	pōnō
cibus	gerō	mittō	populus
circum	homō	mōns	porta
cīvis	hostis	mora	procul
clāmō	hūc	moveō	respondeō
collis	idōneus	mūniō	rēx
corpus	imperō	mūrus	rīpa

rogō	sīc <i>thus</i>	suus	urbs
saxum	signum <i>sign</i>	tegō	usque <i>all the way</i>
sciō	sōlum (<i>adv only</i>)	tergum <i>back</i>	vāllum
scribō	statim <i>at once</i>	terreō	veniō
semper	sub	tōtus <i>all</i>	vester
servō	summus	ulterior <i>farther</i>	vincō
servus	superō	undique	vocō

III

accipiō	dicō, -ere	ipse	quattuor
ācer	dividō	jam	quī
agō	dūrus	lēx	redeō
alter	ego	lītus <i>shore</i>	regō
an	enim	magis	relinquō
animus	eō, īre	mare	restituō
antīquus	exercitus	nisi	silentium
aperiō	explōrātor	nōbilis	similis
apud	facilis	nōndum	sōl
arcessō	faciō	numerus	suī
at <i>but</i>	ferē <i>almost</i>	numquam	sūmō
brevis	fortis	occidō	tamen
cadō	frangō	omnis	tempus
caedō	fuga	paene	teneō
captīvus	fugiō	pellō	trahō
castellum	grātia	petō	tū
coepī	gravis	pōns	umquam
commūnis	honor	possum	ūnus
cōnsul	īdem	postea	uter
contrā	imperium	potēns	uterque
contrōversia	impetus	prehendō	uxor
currō	incipiō <i>begin</i>	premō	ventus
deinde <i>next</i>	injūria	primus	vertō
dēserō	intrā	pugna	vigilia
deus	inveniō <i>find</i>	putō	vōx

IV

afficiō	efficiō	ob	rumpō
adulēscēns	exanimō	octō	rūrsus
adversus (<i>adj.</i>)	expōnō	oculus	salūs
aes	famēs	offerō	secundus
aliquis	fōrma	omnīnō	senātus
anteā	frōns, -ntis	ōrdō	sentiō
autem	frūstrā	placeō	septem
beneficium	fundō, -ere	postquam	sex
cāsus	ignis	praebeō	sī
causa	ignorō	praeda	simul
cēnseō	inde	praestō, -āre	spatium
centum	ineō	praeter	speciēs
certus	intellegō	praetereā	subitō
circumdō	intereā	prior	suprā
cognōscō	iste	quaerō	tantus
committō	jungō	quārtus	tempestās
cōnsidō	jūrō	quīdam	tollō
cōspiciō	malus, -a, -um	quidem	trādō
cōstituō	manus	quiēs	turpis
cōsulō	mēns	quīnque	vacuus
contendō	modus	quō	vērus
cornū	mūtō	rapiō	vīgintī
cotīdiē	nātūra	reddō	virtūs
crēdō	nēmō	regiō	vītō
decem	nihil	rēgnum	vix
diēs	nōlō	rēmus	vulnus
domus	novem	reperiō	
dum	nūntiō	rēs	

SUPPLEMENTARY LESSONS AND READINGS

V

accidō	cruciātus	hortor	novus
aciēs	cupidus	incidō	objiciō
adeō (<i>adv.</i>)	cūra	incolō	obteneō
aditus	cūrō	incolumis	occāsiō
aestās	cursus	initium	occāsus
aetās	dēficiō	inquam	occurrō
aliēnus	dēligō, -ere	īnstruō	opera
animadvertō	dēmōnstrō	intervāllum	opīniō
atque, ac	dēsistō	invītus	opportūnus
attingō	dēspērō	jūs	opprimō
auctōritās	difficilis	labor	ops
caedēs	doceō	levis	opus
campus	doleō	liberī	pābulum
cernō	efferō	liberō	palūs
cīvitās	eō (<i>adv.</i>)	loquor	passus
claudō	eques	memoria	patior
cōgitō	etsī	mercātor	paulum
cōgō	exerceō	merīdiēs	pecus, -oris
collocō	exercitātiō	mille	pendō
colloquium	extruō	mīror	pereō
complūrēs	extrā	mīrus	perficiō
cōnficiō	extrēmus	modo	perpetuus
cōnfirmō	facultās	moror	persuādeō
cōnor	fallō	mors	perturbō
cōnsequor	ferō	mōs	polliceor
cōnsistō	fīnitimus	mulier	portus
cōnsuēscō	fiō	mūnus	pōscō
cōnsūmō	fortūna	nanciscor	posterus
contineō	fossa	nāvīgō	postrīdiē
continuus	genus	negō	praecipio
contumēlia	-gredior	negōtium	praefficiō

praesum	quisque	studeō	unde
prīnceps	quoniam	superior	ūsus
prīstinus	recūsō	supersum	vagor
priusquam	reliquus	supplicium	valeō
proficiāscor	revertor	suscipiō	vallēs
prohibeō	sequor	suspīcor	vereor
projiciō	servitūs	sustineō	vesper
prope	simulō	tam	vestis
prūdēns	singulī	tangō	vīs
quantus	sive, seu	tēlum	vīvō
-que	spēs	temptō	vīvus
quīntus	sponte	tot	volō, velle
quisquam	stīpendium	ūllus	voluntās

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

ā, ab, prep. with *abl.*, from, away from; by.

abeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go away, go.

abripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, carry off, steal.

abscido, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, cut off.

absēns, gen. absentis, absent.

absum, abesse, āfui, āfuturus, be away, be absent, be distant.

absūmo, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmp-tum, destroy, kill.

ac, see *atque*.

accendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēn-sum, kindle, set on fire.

accidō, -cidere, -cidi, happen.

accipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive, accept.

accumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubi-tum, recline.

accurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, run up, come up.

ācer, ācris, ācre, fierce, eager.

acerbus, -a, -um, bitter.

Achaeī, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, the Achaeans.

aciēs, -ēī, F., line of battle.

Ācrisius, -ī, M., Acrisius, *grand-father of Perseus*.

ācriter, adv., vigorously, fiercely.

acuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, sharpen.

ad, prep. with *acc.*, to, toward; until; near; at.

adducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, bring, influence.

adeō, -ire, -iī, -itum, go to, come to, approach.

adeō, adv., to such an extent, so.

adhūc, adv., as yet, still.

aditus, -ūs, M., entrance.

adjungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūnc-tum, join to, attach.

adjuvō, -juvāre, -jūvī, -jūtum, help.

Admēta, -ae, F., Admeta, *daughter of Eurystheus*.

admīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, admire.

adstō, -stāre, -stitī, stand near, stand.

adsum, -esse, -fui, -futurus, be present, be at hand, be here.

adulēscēns, adulēscētis, M., young man.

adūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, burn, scorch, sear.

advena, -ae, M., stranger.

adveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, come to, approach, arrive at.

adventus, -ūs, M., approach, arrival.

adversus, -a, -um, opposite, in front, facing; unfavorable.

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, turn toward, turn.

Aeacus, -ī, M., Aeacus, *a judge in the lower world*.

aedificium, -ī, N., a building.

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, build.

aeger, -gra, -grum, ill, sick.

aegra, see *aeger*.

aegrōtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, be sick.

Aegyptius, -a, -um, Egyptian; *M. pl. as noun*, the Egyptians.

Aegyptius, -ī, M., Aegyptius, *the name of a sailor in "Circe."*

aēneus, -a, -um, of bronze.

āēr, āeris, M., the air.

aes, aeris, N., bronze.

- > aestās, -ātis, F., summer.
 > aestāte, in summer.
 aetās, -ātis, F., age; lifetime.
 Aethiopēs, -um, M. pl., the Ethiopians, a people of Africa.
 afferō (adferō), afferre, attulī, allātum, bring to, bring.
 > afficiō (adficiō), -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-tum, affect, treat.
 > ager, agrī, M., field, farm, land.
 agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, drive, dis-turb, move; wave, shake.
 > agmen, agminis, N., column, line, army, band.
 agnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, recognize.
 agnus, -ī, M., lamb.
 > agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, drive; do; spend, pass.
 > agricola, -ae, M., farmer.
 > albus, -a, -um, white.
 Alcmenā, -ae, F., Alcmena, mother of Hercules.
 Alexander, -drī, M., Alexander, a man's name.
 > aliēnus, -a, -um, of another, an-other's, strange, unfavorable.
 aliēnus, -ī, M., stranger.
 aliquis (aliquī), aliquid, someone, somebody, something, anyone, anything.
 > alius, alia, aliud, another, other; alius . . . alius, one . . . another; pl., aliī . . . aliī, some . . . others.
 alātus, participle of afferō.
 alligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bind, tie.
 Alpēs, -ium, F. pl., the Alps.
 > alter, altera, alterum, one of two, the other of two, a second, another; alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other.
 > altitūdō, -dinis, F., height, depth.
 > altus, -a, -um, high, tall, deep.
 amāmus, we love.
 ar-ant, (they) love.
 amās, you love.
 amat, (he, she, it) loves.
 amātor, -ōris, M., lover.
 Amāzōnes, -um, F. pl., the Ama-zons, a fabulous race of women warriors.
 ambrosia, -ae, F., ambrosia, the food of the gods.
 ambulant, (they) walk.
 ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, walk.
 America, -ae, F., America.
 amicus, -a, -um, friendly.
 amicus, -ī, M., friend.
 amita, -ae, F., aunt.
 amittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, lose.
 amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, love.
 amoena, see amoenus.
 amoenus, -a, -um, pleasant.
 amor, -ōris, M., love.
 amoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move away, remove.
 amphitheatrum, -ī, N., amphitheater.
 amphora, -ae, F., jar.
 amplector, amplecti, amplexus sum, embrace; sē amplectuntur, they embrace each other.
 > an, conj., or.
 ancilla, -ae, F., maid-servant, maid.
 Andromeda, -ae, F., Andromeda, the daughter of Cepheus.
 angusta, see angustus.
 > angustus, -a, -um, narrow.
 anima, -ae, F., breath; life.
 > animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -ver-sum, observe, notice.
 animal, -ālis, N., animal.
 animus, -ī, M., mind, spirit.
 annōn, conj., or not.
 annuō, -ere, -uī, nod, nod assent.
 annus, -ī, M., year.
 ante, prep. with acc., before, in front of.
 anteā, adv., formerly, before.

antehāc, *adv.*, before this, heretofore.
 >antequam, *conj.*, before.
 >antiquitus, *adv.*, long ago, in former times.
 >antiquus, -a, -um, ancient; *M. pl.* as noun, the ancients.
 antrum, -ī, *N.*, cavern.
 apage, *interjection*, off with you, begone!
 >aper, apri, *M.*, wild boar.
 >aperiō, aperire, aperui, apertum, open.
 aperta, *see* apertus.
 >apertus, -a, -um, open.
 Apollō, Apollinis, *M.*, Apollo, *god of archery, prophecy, music, poetry, and medicine.*
 appāreō, -ēre, -ui, appear.
 >appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call, name.
 >appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive to, bring to; *with or without nāvem*, bring to land, come to land, land.
 appetō, -petere, -petivī or -petiī, -petitum, approach.
 >appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, draw near, approach.
 aptē, *adv.*, skillfully, cleverly.
 aptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, adjust, fit.
 >apud, *prep. with aec.*, among; at the house of.
 aqua, -ae, *F.*, water.
 āra, -ae, *F.*, altar.
 arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum, think.
 arbor, -oris, *F.*, tree.
 arca, -ae, *F.*, chest, box.
 Arcadia, -ae, *F.*, Arcadia, *a district of Greece.*
 >arcessō, -cessere, -cessivī, -cessitum, summon, bring.
 arcus, -ūs, *M.*, bow.
 ārdēns, *gen. ārdentis*, burning.
 ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsum, burn.

arēna, *see* harēna.
 Argolicus, -a, -um, of Argolis (*a district of Greece*).
 ariēs, -etis, *M.*, ram.
 >arma, -ōrum, *N. pl.*, arms, weapons.
 >armātus, -a, -um, armed.
 >armilla, -ae, *F.*, bracelet.
 ars, artis, *F.*, art.
 >ascendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsum, ascend, climb, mount.
 >at, *conj.*, but.
 >Atlās, -antis, *M.*, Atlas, *a giant who held up the heavens on his shoulders.*
 atque (*before consonants ac*), *conj.*, and, and also.
 ātrium, -ī, *N.*, atrium, *the principal room or hall of a house.*
 >attendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, turn toward; *animum attendere*, give attention.
 attingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctum, touch, reach, arrive at.
 auctōritās, -ātis, *F.*, influence, authority.
 audācia, -ae, *F.*, boldness, insolence.
 >audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare.
 >audiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, hear, listen to, listen.
 aufer, *imperative singular of auferō.*
 auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, carry off, take away, bring away.
 Augēās, -ae, *M.*, Augeas, *a king of Elis.*
 aureus, -a, -um, of gold, gold (*as adjective*).
 auris, -is, *F.*, ear.
 aurum, -ī, *N.*, gold.
 >aut, *conj.*, or; aut . . . aut, either . . . or.
 autem, *conj.* (*never stands first in a sentence*), but, however, on the other hand; furthermore.
 >auxilium, -ī, *N.*, help, assistance.
 avidus, -a, -um, greedy.
 >avis, avis, *F.*, bird.

āvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fly away.
 avunculus, -ī, M., uncle, a mother's brother.
 avus, -ī, M., grandfather.

B

baculum, -ī, N., wand, staff.
 bālātus, -ūs, M., bleating.
 balteus, -ī, M., girdle, belt.
 barbarus, -a, -um, barbarous; *M.*
as noun, a barbarian; *pl.*, the barbarians.
 beātus, -a, -um, happy.
 bellicōsus, -a, -um, warlike.
 > bellum, -ī, N., war.
 bēlua, -ae, F., wild beast, beast.
 > bene, *adv.*, well; *bene facere*, treat kindly (*with dative*).
 > beneficium, -ī, N., kindness, favor.
 > benigna, *see* benignus.
 > benignē, *adv.*, kindly.
 > benignus, -a, -um, kind.
 > bēstia, -ae, F., beast, wild animal.
 > bibō, bibere, bibī, drink.
 biceps, *gen.* bicipitis, two-headed.
 bona, *see* bonus.
 bonus, -a, -um, good.
 > bōs, bovis, M. and F., bull, ox, cow;
pl., cattle, oxen.
 brachium, -ī, N., forearm, arm.
 > brevī, *adv.*, in a short time.
 > brevis, -e, short, brief.
 > Britannia, -ae, F., Great Britain.
 Būsiris, -idis, M., Busiris, a king of Egypt.

C

> Cācus, -ī, M., Cacus, a giant slain by Hercules.
 cadāver, -eris, N., a dead body.
 > cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall.
 > caecus, -a, -um, blind.
 caedēs, caedis, F., killing, slaughter.

caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesum, cut
 caelum, -ī, N., sky, heaven.
 calamitās, -ātis, F., disaster.
 calathus, -ī, M., basket.
 calidus, -a, -um, hot, warm.
 callidissimus, -a, -um, shrewdest, wisest.
 callidus, -a, -um, skillful, shrewd, wise.
 calor, -ōris, M., heat.
 campus, -ī, M., plain.
 > cancer, -crī, M., crab.
 > canis, canis, M. and F., dog.
 > cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sing; crow.
 > caper, caprī, M., goat.
 > capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, take, seize, capture, receive; cōnsilium capere, to form a plan.
 > captivus, -ī, M., prisoner.
 caput, capitis, N., head.
 cāra, *see* cārus.
 > carō, carnis, F., meat; flesh; *pl.*, pieces of meat.
 > cārus, -a, -um, dear, precious.
 casa, -ae, F., cottage, hut.
 cāseus, -ī, M., cheese.
 > castellum, -ī, N., fort, redoubt.
 castra, -ōrum, N. *pl.*, camp.
 cāsus, -ūs, M., accident, chance.
 > catēna, -ae, F., chain.
 cauda, -ae, F., tail.
 causa, -ae, F., cause, reason; *abl.*
causā, preceded by genitive, for the sake (of), for the purpose (of).
 caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautum, be careful, take care, beware of.
 caverna, -ae, F., cavern, cave.
 celeber, -bris, -bre, famous.
 celeritās, -ātis, F., speed, swiftiness.
 > celeriter, *adv.*, swiftly.
 cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, conceal
 > cēna, -ae, F., dinner.

Cēnaeum, -ī, N., Cenaeum, a promontory of the island of Euboea.

cēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, dine.

cēnsēdō, -ēre, cēnsui, cēnsūm, think, believe.

centaurus, -ī, M., a Centaur, a mythical creature with a horse's body and a man's head.

centum, numeral adj., one hundred.

centuriō, -ōnis, M., centurion. <

Cēpheus, -ī, M., Cepheus, a king of Ethiopia.

Cerberus, -ī, M., Cerberus, the watch-dog of the lower world.

Cērēs, -eris, F., Ceres, goddess of agriculture.

cernō, -ere, crēvi, certum (crētum), discern, see.

certāmen, -inis, N., contest.

certē, adv., certainly, surely.

certus, -a, -um, certain, definite; prō certō, as certain.

cervus, -ī, M., stag, deer.

cēterī, -ae, -a, the other, the rest of, the others.

Charōn, -ontis, M., Charon, the ferryman over the River Styx.

cibus, -ī, M., food. <

cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctum, surround, encircle.

Circē, Circae, F., Circe, an enchantress.

circulus, -ī, M., circle; ring, hoop.

circum, prep. with acc., around. <

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, put around, surround. <

circumspectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, look around. <

circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, —, stand around.

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, surround.

cithara, -ae, F., cithara.

cīvis, cīvis, M. and F., citizen.

cīvītās, -ātis, F., the state, state.

clāmitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, shout, cry out. <

clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, shout, cry out.

clāmor, -ōris, M., shout, cry.

clāra, see clārus.

clārus, -a, -um, bright, clear; famous.

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, shut, close; inclose.

clausus, -a, -um, closed.

clāva, -ae, F., club.

clēmentia, -ae, F., mercy, clemency.

coepī, coepisse, coeptum, began, < has begun.

cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, consider, think.

cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, find out, know, recognize.

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, collect; compel.

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, encourage, urge on.

colit, see colō.

colligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tie together.

collis, collis, M., hill. <

collocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, place, put.

colloquium, -ī, N., interview, conversation.

collum, -ī, N., neck.

colō, -ere, colui, cultum, cultivate, worship.

Colossēum, -ī, N., the Colosseum.

columna, -ae, F., column, pillar.

comedō, -edere, -ēdī, -ēsum, eat up.

comes, -itis, M. and F., companion. <

committō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, entrust; proelium committere, begin battle, engage in battle.

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, arouse, stir, alarm.

commūnis, -e, common.

commūtatiō, -ōnis, F., change.

comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, prepare.
compellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum,
drive.

complector, -plecti, -plexus sum,
clasp, embrace.

compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, fill.

complūrēs, -plūra or -plūria, several,
a number of.

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī,
-hēnsum, seize.

comprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pres-
sum, squeeze.

cōnātus, -ūs, M., attempt, effort.

concidō, -ere, concidī, collapse, fall
in ruins.

condō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, found,
establish.

cōnferō, -ferre, contulī, collātum,
bring together; sē cōnferre, be-
take oneself, go.

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,
finish, complete; weaken, over-
come.

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
strengthen, establish.

cōnfricō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, rub
together.

conjiō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum,
throw, hurl; in fugam conjicere,
put to flight.

conjungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūnc-
tum, join.

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, try, attempt.

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī,
-scēnsus, climb; go on board.

cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, con-
secrate.

cōnsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum,
follow, overtake.

cōnservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, retain,
preserve.

cōnsidō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum,
sit down.

cōnsilium, -ī, N., plan, design,
advice.

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, take a
stand.

cōnsōbrīna, -ae, F., cousin (*a woman
or girl*).

cōnspectus, -ūs, M., sight, view.

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spec-
tum, observe, see.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitū-
tum, erect, set up; determine, de-
cide upon.

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, con-
sist.

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suē-
tum, become accustomed; *perfect*,
be accustomed.

cōnsul, -ulis, M., consul.

cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultum,
consult.

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmp-
tum, consume, spend.

contegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctum,
cover.

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum,
hasten, contend.

continēns, -entis, F., continent,
mainland.

contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum,
shut in, confine.

continuus, -a, -um, successive.

contorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tor-
tum, turn, twist.

contrā, *prep. with acc.*, against, con-
trary to.

contrōversia, -ae, F., controversy.

contumēlia, -ae, F., disrespect.

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum,
assemble, come together.

convertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum,
turn.

convivium, -ī, N., banquet.

coōrior, -oriri, -ortus sum, arise.

cōpia, -ae, F., plenty, supply; *pl.*,
forces, troops.

coquus, -ī, M., cook.

Cornēlia, -ae, F., Cornelia (*name of
a woman or girl*).

cornū, -ūs, N., horn; flank or wing
(of an army).

corpus, -oris, N., body.

corripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum,
seize.

cotidiē, *adv.*, daily, every day.

crās, *adv.*, tomorrow.

Crassus, -ī, M., Crassus (*name of a
ram in Polyphemus's flock*).

crātēra, -ae, F., bowl.

crēdibilis, -e, credible.

crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, believe,
trust.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, elect, choose.

Creōn, -ontis, M., Creon, *a king of
Thebes*.

crepitus, -ūs, M., noise.

crepundia, -ōrum, N. *pl.*, a child's
rattle, a rattle.

Crēsius, -ī, M., Cresius, *name of a
sailor in "Circe."*

Crēta, -ae, F., Crete, *an island in
the Mediterranean Sea*.

cruciātus, -ūs, M., torture.

crūdēlis, -e, cruel.

crūs, crūris, N., leg.

cubiculum, -ī, N., bedroom.

cubō, -āre, cubui, cubitum, lie
down, lie.

cuiquam, *dative of quisquam*.

culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, blame, cen-
sure.

culter, -trī, M., knife.

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with.

cum, *conj.*, when.

cum primum, as soon as.

cumulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, pile up.

cūnae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, cradle.

cupiditās, -ātis, F., desire.

cupidus, -a, -um, desirous, fond.

cupiō, -ere, cupivī, cupitum, wish,
desire.

cupit, (he, she, it) wishes.

cūr, *adv.*, why.

cūra, -ae, F., care, anxiety.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, care for,
take care of.

currō, -ere, cucurri, cursum, run.

cursus, -ūs, M., running, course.

custodiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, guard.

cyathus, -ī, M., cup.

Cyclōps, Cyclōpis, M., a Cyclops.

D

Danaē, *Greek gen. form Danaēs,
F., Danaē, mother of Perseus*.

dant, (they) give.

dat, (he, she, it) gives.

dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from, from;
regarding, concerning, about.

dea, -ae, F., goddess.

dēbeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, owe, ought.

dēbilis, -e, weak.

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidi, fall down.

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, de-
ceive.

decorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, adorn,
honor.

dēdecus, -decoris, N., disgrace.

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,
lead, conduct; *nāvem dēdūcere*,
to launch a ship.

dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum,
defend.

dēfessus, -a, -um, tired out, ex-
hausted.

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, fail,
run out.

Dēianira, -ae, F., Deianira, *wife of
Hercules*.

deinde, *adv.*, next, then.

dējiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw
down.

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, delight.

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, destroy,
blot out.

dēliberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, deliber-
ate, consider.

lĕligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, choose, select.

Delphicus, -a, -um, of Delphi, at Delphi.

dēmīttō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send down, let down, lower, drop.

dēmō, -ere, dēmpsī, dēemptum, take down.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, point out, show.

dēmum, *adv.*, at last, at length.

dēnique, *adv.*, finally, at last.

dēnsus, -a, -um, dense.

dēplōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, deplore, lament.

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, put down, deposit, lay aside, give up.

dēprecōr, -ārī, -ātus sum, deprecate.

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, come down, descend.

dēsērō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, desert, abandon.

dēsertus, -a, -um, deserted.

dēsiderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, desire, long for; miss.

dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, dēsultum, jump down.

dēsīnō, -sinere, -sīī, -situm, cease.

dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, desist from, cease.

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, despair, despair of.

dēsūper, *adv.*, from above.

dētīnēō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, detain.

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, draw off, strip off.

deus, -ī, *M.*, a god; *pl.* dī, the gods.

dēvertō, -vertere, -vertī, turn aside.

dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, devour.

dextra, -ae, *F.*, right hand, right (*as opposed to left*).

dī, *plural of deus*.

Diāna, -ae, *F.*, Diana, goddess of hunting.

dīc, *imperative singular of dicō*.

dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum, say; appoint.

diēs, -ēī, *M. and F.*, day.

difficilis, -e, difficult.

difficultās, -ātis, *F.*, difficulty.

difficulter, *adv.*, with difficulty; haud difficulter, with no difficulty.

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, spread, diffuse.

diligēns, *gen. diligentis*, careful.

diligenter, *adv.*, industriously, diligently.

dīmīttō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, send away, send out; lose.

Diomēdēs, -is, *M.*, Diomedes, a king of Thrace.

dīruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, destroy.

dīrus, -a, -um, dreadful.

dīs, *dative and ablative plural of deus*.

discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw, depart, go away.

discimus, we learn.

dīscit, (he, she) learns.

discō, -ere, didicī, learn.

discus, -ī, *M.*, discus, quoit.

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, station, arrange.

dissimilis, -e, unlike.

dissimulātus, -a, -um, concealed, disguised, pretended.

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, conceal.

diū, *adv.*, for a long time, long.

dīvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, tear away.

dīves, *gen. divitis*, rich.

dīvidō, -ere, divisī, divisum, divide, separate.

dō, dare, dedī, datum, give.

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, teach; explain.

doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, suffer; grieve.

dolor, -ōris, M., sorrow, grief, pain.

dolus, -ī, M., trick, treachery, deceit.

domī, at home.

domina, -ae, F., mistress, madam.

dominus, -ī, M., master.

domus, -ūs (-ī), F., home, house;

domum (*as place to which*), homeward, home.

dōnec, *conj.*, until.

dōnum, -ī, N., gift.

dormiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, sleep.

dracō, -ōnis, M., serpent, dragon.

dubium, -ī, N., doubt.

dubius, -a, -um, doubtful; haud dubius, unmistakable.

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead, bring; marry.

dūdum, *adv.*, before, formerly; jam dūdum, this long time, a long time ago.

dulcis, -e, sweet, delicious.

dulcissimus, -a, -um, sweetest, very delicious.

dum, *conj.*, while.

duo, duae, duo, two.

duodecim, *numeral adj.*, twelve.

duodēvigintī, *numeral adj.*, eighteen.

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hold out, endure.

dūrus, -a, -um, hard.

dux, ducis, M., leader.

E

ē, *ex*, *prep. with abl.*, from within, out of, from.

ecce, *interjection*, behold, see!

edepol, *interjection*, by heavens, really!

ēdicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum, appoint.

ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give out, give forth.

edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum, eat.

ēducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out.

edunt, (they) eat.

efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, carry out.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish, render, make.

efflō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, breathe out; animam efflāre, die.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, flee, escape.

effundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, pour out; sanguinem effundere, shed blood.

ego, *gen. mei, pers. pron.*, I.

ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, go out, come out; disembark.

ēheu, *interjection*, alas, oh! oh dear!

eia, *interjection*, ah!

ēligō, -ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctum, choose, select.

Ēlis, -idis, F., Elis, a district in Greece.

Ēlysium, -a, -um, Elysian.

ēn, *interjection*, ah! there!

enim, *conj.* (*never stands first in its clause*), for; at enim, but indeed.

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, proclaim, reveal.

eō, īre, iī or ivī, itum, go.

eō, *adv.*, to that place, thither.

epistula, -ae, F., letter.

eques, equitis, M., horseman; *pl.*, the cavalry.

equidem, *adv.*, indeed, for my part; sometimes merely emphasizing the pronoun I.

equus, -ī, M., horse.

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, toward, for.

Erginus, -ī, M., Erginus, a king of the Minyae.

ergō, *adv.*, therefore.

ērīgō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, lift up, arouse, encourage.

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wander.

error, -ōris, M., wandering.

ērudiō, -īre, -īvī, -itum, instruct.

Erymanthius, -a, -um, Erymanthian.

Erythia, -ae, F., Erythia, *an island*.

est, (he, she, it) is.

este (*imperative plural of sum*), be.

ēsuriō, -īre, be hungry, hunger.

et, *conj.*, and.

etiam, *adv.*, also, even.

Etrūscī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Etruscans.

Etrūscus, -a, -um, Etruscan.

etsī, *conj.*, though, although, even if.

euge, *interjection*, good, hurrah!

Eunomus, -ī, M., Eunomus, *a youth slain by Hercules*.

Eurōpa, -ae, F., Europe.

Eurylochus, -ī, M., Eurylochus, *one of the companions of Ulysses*.

Eurystheus, -ī, M., Eurystheus, *a king of Tiryns*.

Eurytiōn, -ōnis, M., Eurytion, *a giant*.

Eurytus, -ī, M., Eurytus, *a king of Oechalia*.

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, escape.

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, challenge.

ēvomō, -vomere, -vomui, -vomitum, vomit forth.

ex, *see ē*.

exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, overcome, exhaust, kill.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw, depart.

excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive, entertain.

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, stir up, rouse, arouse.

exclāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, cry out, call out.

excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, torture. exemplar, exemplāris, N., copy, specimen.

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go out.

exerceō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, train, exercise.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, F., exercise.

exercitus, -ūs, M., army.

exilium, -ī, N., exile.

exior, -oriri, -ortus sum, come forth, arise.

expectat, (he, she, it) expects, awaits.

expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, expect, await, wait for, wait.

expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsum, drive out.

expiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, atone for, expiate.

expirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, breathe out.

explōrātor, -ōris, M., scout.

expōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, set forth, explain; set ashore.

expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, take by storm, capture.

extemplō, *adv.*, immediately.

extinguō, -tinguere, -tinxī, -tinctum, put out, extinguish.

extrā, *prep. with acc.*, outside of; *as adv.*, outside.

extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, draw out; save, release.

extrēmus, -a, -um, farthest, most distant.

extruō, -ere, extruxī, extructum, heap up, build.

exul, exulis, M., an exile.

exuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, take off, remove.

F

faber, -brī, M., workman, smith.

fabricor, -ārī, -ātus sum, make, fashion.

fābula, -ae, F., story, play.
 fac, *imperative singular of faciō*.
 facile, *adv.*, easily.
 facilis, -e, easy.
 facinus, facinoris, N., crime, deed.
 faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, make, do.
 facit, (he, she, it) makes or does.
 facultās, -ātis, F., means, opportunity.
 fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum, deceive.
 falsus, -a, -um, deceptive, misleading.
 falx, falcis, F., sickle.
 fāma, -ae, F., report, reputation.
 famēs, famis, F., hunger.
 fār, farris, N., grain, meal.
 fās, *indeclinable, N.*, heaven's will; *translated as adjective*, right.
 fātum, -ī, N., fate, destiny.
 faucēs, -ium, F. *pl.*, throat.
 faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum (*takes dative*), favor.
 fax, facis, F., torch, firebrand.
 fēlix, *gen.* fēlicis, happy, fortunate.
 fēmina, -ae, F., woman.
 fenestra, -ae, F., window.
 fera, -ae, F., wild animal, animal.
 ferē, *adv.*, almost, about.
 feriō, -īre, strike.
 ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, carry, bring, endure.
 ferōx, *gen.* ferōcis, fierce.
 ferreus, -a, -um, of iron, iron (*as adjective*).
 fert, *third person singular of ferō*.
 ferula, -ae, F., ferule, ruler.
 ferus, -a, -um, wild.
 fessus, -a, -um, weary, tired.
 festinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hasten, hurry.
 fictus, -a, -um, fictitious.
 fidēlis, -e, faithful.
 figūra, -ae, F., figure.
 filia, -ae, F., daughter.

filius, -ī, M., son.
 finis, finis, M., end, limit; *pl.*, country, territory.
 finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring;
 finitimī, -ōrum, M. *pl. as noun*, neighbors.
 fiō, fierī, factus sum, be made, be done, become.
 flamma, -ae, F., flame.
 Flavius, -a, -um, Flavian.
 flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, turn, bend.
 flō, flāre, flāvī, flātum, blow.
 flōreō, -ēre, -uī, flourish, be prosperous.
 flōs, flōris, M., flower.
 flūmen, -inis, N., river.
 fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxum, flow.
 foedō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, dishonor, disgrace.
 fōrma, -ae, F., form, beauty.
 fōrmōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, beautiful.
 fortasse, *adv.*, perhaps.
 forte, *adv.*, perhaps, by chance.
 fortis, -e, brave.
 fortiter, *adv.*, bravely.
 fortūna, -ae, F., fortune.
 fossa, -ae, F., ditch.
 frāctus, -a, -um, broken.
 frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, break, break down.
 frāter, frātris, M., brother.
 fremitus, -ūs, M., a roar, a loud noise.
 fretum, -ī, N., strait, channel.
 frigidus, -a, -um, cold.
 frōns, frontis, F., forehead, brow.
 frūctus, -ūs, M., fruit, products.
 frūmentum, -ī, N., grain.
 frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain.
 fuga, -ae, F., flight.
 fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee.
 fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, drive away, drive, put to flight.

fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, shine.

Fulvia, -ae, F., Fulvia, *name of a woman or girl*.

fūmus, -ī, M., smoke, odor.

funda, -ae, F., sling.

fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour;
lacrimās fundere, shed tears.

fūnis, fūnis, M., rope.

furibundus, -a, -um, frantic, mad;
sometimes translated as adverb,
madly.

furor, -ōris, M., madness, insanity.

fūrtum, -ī, N., theft.

G

galea, -ae, F., helmet.

Gallia, -ae, F., Gaul, *a country*.

gallus, -ī, M., rooster.

Gallus, -ī, M., a Gaul, *an inhabitant of Gallia; pl., the Gauls*.

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, be glad,
rejoice.

gaudium, -ī, N., joy, happiness.

geminī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, twins.

generōsus, -a, -um, noble-minded.

gēns, gentis, F., nation.

genus, generis, N., kind, sort.

Germānus, -a, -um, German.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, carry,
wear; carry on, wage, do.

Gēryōn, -onis, M., Geryon, *name of a Spanish giant*.

gigās, -antis, M., giant.

gladiātor, -ōris, M., gladiator.

gladius, -ī, M., sword.

glāns, glandis, F., acorn.

Gorgō, -onis, F., a Gorgon.

Graecae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, the Graecae.

Graecia, -ae, F., Greece.

Graecus, -ī, M., a Greek; *pl., the Greeks*.

grāmen, grāminis, N., grass.

grandis, -e, large.

grāta, *see grātus*.

grātia, -ae, F., favor, gratitude;
grātiās agere, thank; grātiām
referre, requite, repay in appropriate
manner.

grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, welcome,
grateful.

gravis, -e, heavy; difficult, severe.

graviter, *adv.*, heavily, severely;
greatly, deeply.

grex, gregis, M., flock, herd.

gubernāculum, -ī, N., helm, rudder.

gustō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, taste.

H

habent, (they) have.

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, have, hold;
regard.

habet, (he, she, it) has.

habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, live, dwell.

habitus, -ūs, M., appearance.

Hādēs, -ae, M., Hades, *the abode of the dead*.

haedus, -ī, M., kid.

haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesūrus, stick,
cling; hesitate.

haesitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hesitate.

Hammōn, -ōnis, M., Hammon, *an Egyptian god*.

harēna (arēna), -ae, F., sand, shore,
beach.

hasta, -ae, F., spear.

haud, *adv.*, not at all, not; *haud*
procul, not far away.

haudquāquam, *adv.*, by no means,
not at all.

hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustum, draw,
drain; drink.

hei, *interjection*, oh, woe! hei mihi,
oh!

hem, *interjection*, ha, well!

hercle, *interjection*, by heavens,
good heavens!

Herculēs, -is, M., Hercules, *a famous Greek hero*.

herī, *adv.*, yesterday.

Herminius, -ī (*vocative Herminī*),
M., Herminius, a Roman name.

Hēsionē, *Greek gen. form Hēsionēs*,
F., Hesione, daughter of Laomedon.

Hesperides, -um, F. *pl.*, the Hesperides.

heu, *interjection*, alas!

heus, *interjection*, here, hello!

Hibernia, -ae, F., Ireland.

hic, *haec*, *hoc*, this; *as pronoun*, he, she, it; *pl.*, these, they.

hīc, *adv.*, here.

hieme, in the winter.

hinc, *adv.*, from here, hence.

Hippolytē, *Greek gen. form Hippolytēs*, F., Hippolyte, queen of the Amazons.

Hispania, -ae, F., Spain.

hodiē, *adv.*, today.

homō, *hominis*, M., man, human being.

honestus, -a, -um, honorable.

honor, -ōris, M., honor, esteem.

hōra, -ae, F., hour.

Horātius, -ī, M., Horatius (*a Roman name*); **Horātius Cocles**, *name of a Roman hero*.

horribilis, -e, horrible, dreadful.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, urge.

hortus, -ī, M., garden.

hospes, *hospitis*, M., host, guest; friend.

hostis, *hostis*, M., enemy.

hūc, *adv.*, to this place, here.

humerus, *see umerus*.

humī, *adv.*, on the ground.

Hydra, -ae, F., the Hydra.

I

ibi, *adv.*, there.

ictus, -ūs, M., blow, stroke.

idem, *eadem*, *idem*, same. the same.

idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, fit, favorable.

igitur, *adv.*, therefore.

ignāvus, -a, -um, idle; cowardly;
M. *as noun*, coward.

ignis, *ignis*, M., fire.

ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, not know.

ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nōtum
(*takes dative*), pardon.

ignōtus, -a, -um, unknown.

ille, *illa*, *illud*, that; *as pronoun*, he, she, it; *pl.*, those, they.

illūc, *adv.*, to that place, there.

illuviēs, *ablative illuviē*, no genitive, dirt, filth.

imāgō, -inis, F., image, likeness.

imbēcillus, -a, -um, weak, helpless.

imber, -bris, M., rain, storm.

imbuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, dip, wet.

immittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, send in, let in.

immō, *adv.*, on the other hand;
immō vērō, rather, much more likely.

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, sacrifice.

immortālis, -e, immortal.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, impel, urge on.

imperātor, -ōris, M., general, commander.

imperātum, -ī, N., command, order;
imperāta facere, to obey commands.

imperitus, -a, -um, inexperienced (in), unskilled (in).

imperium, -ī, N., authority; command; power, government.

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, command.

impetus, -ūs, M., attack.

impiger, -gra, -grum, industrious, energetic.

impigra, *see impiger*.

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, place upon, impose.

impotēns, *gen.* impotentis, weak.
 improbus, -a, -um, wicked, bad.
 impudēns, *gen.* impudentis, shameless, impudent.
 impūne, *adv.*, with impunity, without punishment.
 in, *prep.* with *abl.* and *acc.*; with *abl.*, in, on; over; with *acc.*, into, on, against, at.
 incidō, -cidere, -cidī, fall in, fall into.
 incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, begin.
 inclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut up, inclose.
 incola, -ae, *M. and F.*, inhabitant.
 incolō, -colere, -coluī, inhabit.
 incolumis, -e, unharmed, safe.
 incommodum, -ī, *N.*, annoyance; harm.
 incredibilis, -e, incredible.
 inde, *adv.*, from there, thence.
 indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, point out.
 inducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, induce, move.
 induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, put on; clothe.
 ineō, -īre, -iī (or -īvī), -itum, enter, enter upon; form.
 infāns, -antis, *M. and F.*, infant.
 infēlix, *gen.* -fēlicis, unfortunate.
 inferī, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, the dead, the shades.
 inferō, -ferre, intulī, illātum, bring upon; bellum inferre, make war on.
 infestus, -a, -um, unsafe, hostile, hateful.
 inficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, stain, dye, dip.
 infidissimus, -a, -um, most faithless.
 infirmus, -a, -um, weak.
 ingēns, *gen.* ingentis, huge, very great.

ingrātus, -a, -um, ungrateful.
 inimicus, -ī, *M.*, enemy, personal foe.
 inīquus, -a, -um, unfavorable, unjust.
 initium, -ī, *N.*, beginning.
 injiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum (*takes dative*), throw upon; inspire in.
 injūria, -ae, *F.*, injury, injustice.
 inquam, inquis, inquit, *employed with direct quotations*, say.
 insigne, insignis, *N.*, decoration, badge.
 inspergō, -spergere, -spersī, -persum, sprinkle.
 inspicō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, look into, look.
 instruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, draw up.
 insula, -ae, *F.*, island.
 intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, understand, know.
 intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, bend, aim.
 inter, *prep.* with *acc.*, between, among.
 interdum, *adv.*, sometimes.
 intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile.
 interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, kill.
 interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ask.
 intervāllum, -ī, *N.*, distance.
 intimus, -a, -um, innermost, interior of.
 intrā, *prep.* with *acc.*, within.
 intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, enter.
 introitus, -ūs, *M.*, entrance.
 inūsītātus, -a, -um, unusual.
 inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, find.
 invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, invite.
 invitus, -a, -um, unwilling, unwillingly.
 invocatūs, -a, -um, uninvited.
 iō, *interjection*, hurrah! iō triumphe, hurrah, triumph!

Iolāus, -ī, M., Iolaus, *a companion of Hercules.*

Iolē, *Greek genitive form Iolēs, F., Iole, daughter of Eurytus.*

Īphiclēs, -is, M., Iphicles, *brother of Hercules.*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, self, himself, herself, itself, themselves.

īra, -ae, F., anger.

īrātus, -a, -um, angry.

irrideō, -ridēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, laugh at.

irrupō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, rush into.

is, ea, id, that; he, she, it.

iste, ista, istud, that of yours, that.

ita, *adv.*, so, thus; yes.

Italia, -ae, F., Italy.

itaque, *conj.*, and so, therefore.

iter, itineris, N., road, journey, march, route, course.

iterō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, repeat.

iterum, *adv.*, again.

Ithaca, -ae, F., Ithaca, *an island, home of Ulysses.*

J

jaceō, -ēre, -uī, lie.

jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum, throw.

jaculātor, -ōris, M., javelin-thrower.

jaculum, -ī, N., javelin.

jam, *adv.*, now, already; nōn jam, no longer; jam jam, even now, very soon.

Jāniculum, -ī, N., the Janiculum, *a hill across the Tiber from the Palatine.*

jānuā, -ae, F., door.

jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum, order, command.

jūcundus, -a, -um, pleasant, delightful.

jūdex, -icis, M., judge.

jungō, -ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, join, fasten together.

Jūnō, -ōnis, F., Juno, *queen of the gods.*

Juppiter, Jovis, M., Jupiter, *king of the gods.*

jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, swear.

jūs, jūris, N., right, law, justice.

jussum, -ī, N., order, command.

juvenis, -is, M., young man.

juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum, help, assist.

L

labor, -ōris, M., labor, task.

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, slip, fall.

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, work, labor.

labrum, -ī, N., lip.

lāc, lactis, N., milk.

lacertus, -ī, M., arm, upper arm.

Lacōnia, -ae, F., Laconia, *a district in Greece.*

lacrima, -ae, F., tear.

lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, weep, cry.

lacus, -ūs, M., lake.

laedō, -ere, laesī, laesum, harm, injure.

Lāertēs, -ae, M., Laërtes, *father of Ulysses.*

laeta, *see laetus.*

laetitia, -ae, F., joy, happiness.

laetus, -a, -um, happy, glad.

laeva, -ae, F., the left hand.

Lāomedōn, -ontis, M., Laomedon, *a king of Troy.*

lapis, lapidis, M., a stone.

laqueus, -ī, M., noose.

Lārissa, -ae, F., Larissa, *a city of Thessaly.*

lātē, *adv.*, widely

lateō, -ēre, -uī, lurk, be concealed.

Latina, *see Latinus.*

Latinus, -a, -um, Latin.

lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad.

laudāmus, we praise.

laudant, (they) praise.
 laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, praise.
 lectulus, -ī, M., couch, bed.
 lēgātus, -ī, M., lieutenant, ambassador, envoy.
 legiō, -ōnis, F., legion.
 legit, (he, she) reads.
 legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, read.
 lentē, *adv.*, slowly.
 leō, -ōnis, M., lion.
 Lernaëus, -a, -um, of Lerna, a marsh near Argos.
 Lēthē, *Greek genitive form Lēthēs*, F., Lethe, the river of forgetfulness in the underworld.
 lētum, -ī, N., death.
 levis, -e, light, slight.
 leviter, *adv.*, slightly.
 lēx, lēgis, F., law.
 libenter, *adv.*, willingly, with pleasure.
 liber, librī, M., book.
 liberī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, children.
 liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, set free, release.
 libertās, -ātis, F., freedom, liberty.
 libum, -ī, N., cake.
 Libya, -ae, F., Libya, a country of northern Africa.
 licet, licēre, licuit, *impersonal verb*, it is permitted, it is allowed.
 Lichās, -ae, M., Lichas, a companion of Hercules.
 ligneus, -a, -um, wooden.
 lignum, -ī, N., wood; *pl.*, firewood, wood.
 ligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tie.
 Ligurēs, -um, M. *pl.*, the Ligurians, the people of Liguria.
 Liguria, -ae, F., Liguria, a district of northern Italy.
 lilium, -ī, N., lily.
 limen, -inis, N., threshold, door.
 limus, -ī, M., mud, mire.

lingua, -ae, F., tongue, language.
 linter, -tris, F., boat, skiff.
 Linus, -ī, M., Linus, a Centaur.
 litus, litoris, N., shore.
 loculī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, book-satchel.
 locus, -ī, M. (*pl.*, usually neuter, loca, -ōrum), place.
 longa, *see* longus.
 longē, *adv.*, far, at a distance.
 longinquus, -a, -um, distant.
 longus, -a, -um, long.
 loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, speak, talk.
 lucerna, -ae, F., lamp.
 Lūcius, -ī, M., Lucius (*name of a man or boy*).
 lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsum, play.
 lūdus, -ī, M., play, game, school.
 lūmen, -inis, N., light, a light.
 lūna, -ae, F., the moon.
 lūx, lūcis, F., light; prima lūx, day-break.

M

macer, -cra, -crum, lean, thin.
 maga, -ae, F., enchantress.
 magicus, -a, -um, magical, magic.
 magis, *adv.*, more, rather.
 magister, -trī, M., master, teacher.
 magna, *see* magnus.
 magnanimus, -a, -um, generous-spirited, noble.
 magnitūdō, -inis, F., size, magnitude.
 magnopere, *adv.*, greatly, very, very much.
 magnus, -a, -um, large, great.
 male, *adv.*, badly.
 malum, -ī, N., evil.
 malus, -a, -um, bad.
 mālus, -ī, M., mast.
 Mamilius, -ī, M., Mamilius, a king of Tusculum.

māne, *adv.*, in the morning.
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūm, remain, wait.
mānēs, -ium, *M. pl.*, a departed spirit, a shade.
manet, (he, she, it) remains.
manus, -ūs, *F.*, hand; band (*of armed men*).
Mārcus, -ī, *M.*, Marcus (*name of a man or boy*).
mare, maris, *N.*, sea.
maritus, -ī, *M.*, husband.
Mārs, Mārtis, *M.*, Mars, *the Roman god of war*.
māter, -tris, *F.*, mother.
mātrimōnium, -ī, *N.*, marriage; in mātrimōnium dūcere, marry.
mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hasten, hurry.
maximē, *adv.*, especially, very, very greatly.
maximus, -a, -um, greatest.
mē (*accusative or ablative case*), me.
mea, *see meus*.
mēcum, with me (*see ego*).
medicāmentum, -ī, *N.*, medicine.
medicus, -ī, *M.*, doctor.
medius, -a, -um, middle, middle of, in the middle; *N. sing. as noun*, the middle.
Medūsa, -ae, *F.*, Medusa, *a Gorgon*.
melius, *neuter comparative of bonus*.
membrum, -ī, *N.*, limb.
mementō, *pl. mementōte, imperative of meminī*.
meminī, meminisse, remember.
memor, *gen. memoris*, mindful.
memoria, -ae, *F.*, memory.
memorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, mention, relate.
mendīcus, -a, -um, beggarly, needy; *M. as noun*, beggar; **senex mendīcus**, old beggar.
Menelāus, -ī, *M.*, Menelaus, *a Greek hero*.

Menexenus, -ī, *M.*, Menexenus, *name of a sailor in "Circe."*
mēns, mentis, *F.*, mind.
mēnsa, -ae, *F.*, table.
mentiō, -ōnis, *F.*, mention.
mercātor, -ōris, *M.*, merchant, trader.
mercēs, -ēdis, *F.*, pay, fee.
Mercurius, -ī, *M.*, Mercury, *the messenger-god and the god of traders*.
mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum, dip, plunge, sink.
meridiē, *adv.*, at noon.
meritus, -a, -um, deserved.
Messāna, -ae, *F.*, Messina, *a city of Sicily*.
metuō, -ere, -uī, fear.
meus, mea, meum, my, mine.
mihi, to me, me (*as indirect object*).
miles, militis, *M.*, soldier.
militāris, -e, military; **rēs militāris**, the art of war.
mille, *num. adj. (pl. milia, -ium, neuter noun)*, thousand.
minae, -ārum, *F. pl.*, threats.
Minerva, -ae, *F.*, Minerva, *the goddess of wisdom*.
minimē, *adv.*, least, not at all, no.
minister, -trī, *M.*, attendant.
Minōs, Minōis, *M.*, Minos, *a judge in the lower world*.
minus, *adv.*, less.
Minyae, -ārum, *M. pl.*, the Minyae, *neighbors of the Thebans*.
mīrificus, -a, -um, wonderful.
mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, wonder at, be surprised, wonder.
mīrus, -a, -um, strange, remarkable.
misellus, -a, -um, poor (little), unfortunate.
miser, misera, miserum, unhappy, unfortunate.
misera, *see miser*.

miserē, *adv.* (*superlative* miserrimē), miserably, wretchedly.

misericordia, -ae, *F.*, pity.

mittō, -ere, **misī**, **missum**, send, shoot.

modo, *adv.*, only; **modo . . . modo**, now . . . now.

modus, -ī, *M.*, manner, way.

moenia, -ium, *N. pl.*, walls.

mola, -ae, *F.*, meal, coarse flour.

molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, annoying.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, warn, advise.

mōns, **montis**, *M.*, mountain.

mōnstrat, (he, she) points out.

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, point out, show, display.

mōnstrum, -ī, *N.*, monster.

mora, -ae, *F.*, delay.

morbus, -ī, *M.*, illness, disease.

mordeō, -ēre, **momordī**, **morsum**, bite.

morior, **mori**, **mortuus sum**, die.

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, delay.

mors, **mortis**, *F.*, death.

mortifer, -era, -erum, deadly.

mortuus, -a, -um, dead; *M. sing. as noun*, a dead person.

mōs, **mōris**, *M.*, custom.

moveō, -ēre, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, move.

mox, *adv.*, soon.

mūgiō, -īre, -īvī, bellow.

mūgītus, -ūs, *M.*, bellowing.

mulgeō, -ēre, **mulsi**, **mulsum**, milk.

mulier, -eris, *F.*, woman.

multa, *see* **multus**.

multī, many.

multitūdō, -inis, *F.*, multitude, large number.

multō, *adv.*, used with comparatives, much.

multum, *adv.* much, greatly.

multus, -a, -um, much; *pl.*, many; *N. sing. as noun*, much.

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -itum, fortify.

mūnus, **mūneris**, *N.*, service, duty.

murmurō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, murmur, complain.

mūrus, -ī, *M.*, wall.

mūsica, -ae, *F.*, music.

mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, change.

N

nam, *conj.*, for.

nancīscor, **nancīscī**, **nactus sum**, find, obtain.

nārrat, (he, she, it) tells.

nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tell, relate, tell a story.

natō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, swim, float.

nātūra, -ae, *F.*, nature.

nātus, -a, -um, born; **duodecim annōs nātus**, twelve years old.

Naupactōus, -ī, *M.*, Naupactous, a companion of Ulysses.

nauta, -ae, *M.*, sailor.

nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, sail, navigate.

nāvis, **nāvis**, *F.*, ship, boat.

-ne, an enclitic denoting a question to be answered by "yes" or "no."

nē . . . quidem, not even.

nec, *see* **neque**.

necesse, *indeclinable adj.*, necessary, inevitable.

necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, kill.

nectar, **nectaris**, *N.*, nectar, the drink of the gods.

nefās, *indeclinable*, *N.*, a sin, a crime.

neglegō, -ere, **neglēxī**, **neglēctum**, neglect, disregard.

negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, refuse.

negōtium, -ī, *N.*, business, task.

Nemaeus, -a, -um, Nemean, of Nemea (a city in Greece).

nēmō, *dat.* **nēmīnī**, *acc.* **nēmīnem**, no *gen. or abl.*, *M. and F.*, no one, nobody.

nepōs, -ōtis, *M.*, grandson.
 Neptūnus, -ī, *M.*, Neptune, *god of the sea*.
 nēquāquam, *adv.*, by no means.
 neque or nec, *conj.*, nor, and . . . not; neque . . . neque, neither . . . nor.
 nervus, -ī, *M.*, bow-string.
 nesciō, -īre, -ivī, not know.
 Nessus, -ī, *M.*, Nessus, *a Centaur*.
 neuter, -tra, -trum, neither.
 niger, -gra, -grum, black.
 nihil, *indeclinable, N.*, nothing.
 nīl, *same as nihil*.
 nimis, *adv.*, too, too much.
 nisi, *conj.*, unless, except, if not.
 nix, nivis, *F.*, snow.
 nō, nāre, nāvī, swim.
 nōbilis, -e, noble; *M. pl. as noun, the nobles*.
 noctū, *adv.*, at night.
 nocturnus, -a, -um, at night, night (*as adjective*).
 nōlī, *pl. nōlīte*, be unwilling, do not; *imperative of nōlō*.
 nōlīte, *see nōlī*.
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling, not wish.
 nōmen, -inis, *N.*, name.
 nōn, *adv.*, not.
 nōndum, *adv.*, not yet.
 nōnne, *a word used to introduce a question implying an affirmative answer*.
 nōnnūllus, -a, -um, some; *pl., several*.
 nōs (*nominative and accusative*), we, us.
 noster, -tra, -trum, our.
 nostra, *see noster*.
 nōta, *see nōtus*.
 nōtus, -a, -um, known, familiar.
 novem, *numeral adj.*, nine.
 nōvī, nōvisse, know (*perfect of nōscō, learn*).

novissimus, -a, -um (*superlative of novus*), last, latest.
 novus, -a, -um, new; quid novī, what news?
 nox, noctis, *F.*, night.
 nūbēs, nūbis, *F.*, cloud.
 nūbilō, -āre, be cloudy, cloud up.
 nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, marry (*takes dative*).
 nūgae, -ārum, *F. pl.*, jests, non-sense; aufer nūgās, enough of this nonsense.
 nūllus, -a, -um, no, none.
 num, *a word used to introduce a question implying a negative answer*.
 numerus, -ī, *M.*, number.
 nummus, -ī, *M.*, a coin.
 numquam, *adv.*, never.
 nunc, *adv.*, now.
 nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, announce, report.
 nūntius, -ī, *M.*, messenger.
 nūper, *adv.*, recently, a little while ago.
 nusquam, *adv.*, nowhere.
 nympha, -ae, *F.*, nymph.

O

Ō, *interjection*, O, oh!
 ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.
 objiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, offer.
 obscūra, *see obscūrus*.
 obscūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, darken.
 obscūrus, -a, -um, dark, dim.
 obserō, -serere, -sēvī, -situm, cover, fill.
 obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, stop up, bar.
 obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold, possess.
 occāsiō, -ōnis, *F.*, opportunity.
 occāsus, -ūs, *M.*, setting.
 occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, kill.

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, seize.
occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum,
meet.

Ōceanus, -ī, M., the ocean.

Octāvia, -ae, F., Octavia (*name of a woman or girl*).

octō, *numeral adj.*, eight.

oculus, -ī, M., eye.

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus (*perfect tense with present meaning*), hate.

odiōsus, -a, -um, hateful.

odor, -ōris, M., smell, odor.

Oechalia, -ae, F., Oechalia, a town of Euboea.

Oeneus, -ī, M., Oeneus, father of Deianira.

Oeta, -ae, F., Oeta, a mountain in Thessaly.

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum, offend.

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, offer.

officium, -ī, N., service.

ohē, *interjection*, hello, hello there; oh, oh!

olfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, smell.

ōlim, *adv.*, formerly, once upon a time.

Olympus, -ī, M., Olympus, a mountain north of Greece.

omniñō, *adv.*, entirely.

omnis, -e, all.

onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, load.

opera, -ae, F., effort, labor.

opiniō, -ōnis, F., opinion, expectation.

oportet, -ēre, -uit, it is proper, one ought.

oppidum, -ī, N., town.

opportūnus, -a, -um, opportune.

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, overcome, overpower.

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, attack.

(ops), opis, F., power; *pl.*, resources.

optimē, *adv.*, best, in the best way.

optimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, best.

opus, operis, N., work, task.

ōra maritima, seacoast.

ōrāculum, -ī, N., oracle.

Orbilus, -ī, M., Orbilius (*a Roman name*).

orbis, orbis, M., circle; orbis terrarum, the world, the earth.

Orcus, -ī, M., Orcus, the lower world.

ōrdō, ōrdinis, M., line, rank, order.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, adorn.

ōs, ōris, N., mouth.

ostendit, (he, she, it) shows.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, show, display.

ōstium, -ī, N., door, mouth.

ovile, ovilis, N., sheep-pen.

ovis, ovis, F., sheep.

P

pābulum, -ī, N., pasture, feed (*for animals*).

paene, *adv.*, almost.

palaestra, -ae, F., wrestling-place, place of exercise.

Palātium, -ī, N., the Palatine Hill.

palma, -ae, F., palm, hand.

palūs, -ūdis, F., swamp, marsh.

pānis, pānis, M., bread.

pannōsus, -a, -um, ragged.

pannus, -ī, M., a cloth.

parātus, -a, -um, ready, prepared.

pāreō, -ēre, -uī (*takes dative*), obey.

pariter, *adv.*, equally.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, prepare, obtain, get.

pars, partis, F., part, direction; side.

partior, -īrī, partitus sum, share, divide.

parum, *adv. and indeclinable noun*, too little, insufficiently, little.

parva, *see parvus*.

parvulus, -a, -um, little; *M. pl. as noun*, little boys.

parvus, -a, -um, small, little.

pāscō, **pāscere**, **pāvi**, **pāstum**, pasture; *in passive*, graze.

passus, -ūs, *M.*, pace; **mille passūs** or **mille passuum**, a mile.

pāstor, -ōris, *M.*, shepherd.

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, open, lay open.

pater, **patris**, *M.*, father.

patera, -ae, *F.*, a flat dish or bowl, a platter.

patiēns, *gen. -entis*, long-enduring.

pator, **pati**, **passus sum**, endure.

patria, -ae, *F.*, native country, country.

patrius, -a, -um, of one's father; of one's native country.

paucī, -ae, -a, few, a few.

paulō, *adv.*, a little, somewhat.

paulum, *adv.*, a little, somewhat; a little way.

pavidus, -a, -um, trembling, alarmed, terrified.

pavor, -ōris, *M.*, terror, alarm.

pāx, **pācis**, *F.*, peace.

pectus, **pectoris**, *N.*, breast.

pecūnia, -ae, *F.*, money.

pecus, **pecoris**, *N.*, cattle, flock, herd.

pecus, **pecudis**, *F.*, a head of cattle, beast; *pl.*, flock, herd.

pellis, **pellis**, *F.*, skin.

pellō, -ere, **pepulī**, **pulsum**, drive, rout.

pendeō, -ēre, **pependī**, hang.

pendō, -ere, **pependī**, **pēnsum**, pay.

pēnsum, -ī, *N.*, task, lesson.

per, *prep. with acc.*, through, all along.

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, perceive, feel.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, strike.

perdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, destroy, ruin, lose.

perducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead, bring.

peregrinus, -ī, *M.*, foreigner.

perennis, -e, lasting through the year, perpetual.

pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, perish.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, accomplish, complete.

perfidus, -a, -um, treacherous.

periculōsa, *see periculōsus*.

periculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous.

periculum, -ī, *N.*, danger.

peritē, *adv.*, skillfully.

perpetuus, -a, -um, continuous.

perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, break through, break.

perscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, describe fully.

Perseus, -ī, *M.*, Perseus, a Greek hero.

persolvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solutum, pay.

persōna, -ae, *F.*, person, character (*in a play*).

persuadeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum (*takes dative*), persuade

perterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, terrify.

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, throw into disorder.

pervenio, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, arrive, come.

pēs, **pedis**, *M.*, foot.

pessimus, -a, -um, worst.

petō, -ere, **petiī** or **petivī**, **petitum**, seek, look for; ask, ask for; attack.

Phaeacēs, -um, *M. pl.*, the Phaeacians.

Philippus, -ī, *M.*, Philippus, name of a sailor in "Circē."

Pholus, -ī, M., Pholus, a *Centaur*.
 pictūra, -ae, F., picture.
 piger, -gra, -grum, lazy.
 piscātor, -ōris, M., fisherman.
 placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, please.
 plāga, -ae, F., blow.
 plaudō, -ere, plausī, plausum, clap.
 plēnus, -a, -um, full.
 plūrēs, plūra, *gen.* plūrium (*pl.* of plūs), more, several, many.
 plurimus, -a, -um, most, very much; *pl.*, very many.
 Plūtō, -ōnis, M., Pluto, god of the lower world.
 pōculum, -ī, N., cup; dose.
 poena, -ae, F., punishment; poenās dare, pay the penalty, be punished.
 poēta, -ae, M., poet.
 polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum, promise.
 Polydectēs, -is, M., Polydectes, king of *Seriphus*.
 Polyphēmus, -ī, M., Polyphemus, a *Cyclops*.
 Pompeiī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, Pompeiī, a city of ancient Italy.
 pōmum, -ī, N., apple.
 pondus, ponderis, N., weight.
 pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, place, pitch.
 pōns, pontis, M., bridge.
 populus, -ī, M., a people.
 porcus, -ī, M., pork.
 Porsena, -ae, M., Porsena, a king of the *Etruscans*.
 porta, -ae, F., gate, door.
 portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry.
 portus, -ūs, M., harbor.
 poscō, -ere, poposci, demand, request, ask for.
 possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, possess, have.
 possum, posse, potuī, be able, can.

post, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*, after, behind; afterwards, later.
 posteā, *adv.*, afterwards, thereafter.
 posterus, -a, -um, following, next.
 postquam, *conj.*, after.
 postrēmus, -a, -um, last.
 postridiē, *adv.*, on the next day.
 postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, demand.
 potēns, *gen.* -entis, powerful.
 potentia, -ae, F., power.
 praebeō, -ēre, praebuī, praebitum, exhibit, show.
 praecipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, impose upon.
 praecipuē, *adv.*, especially.
 praecīlārus, -a, -um, very famous.
 praeda, -ae, F., booty, prey.
 praeditus, -a, -um, endowed with, provided with.
 praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum (*takes dative*), put in charge of, put in command of.
 praemium, -ī, N., reward.
 praestāns, *gen.* -stantis, extraordinary.
 praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum, exhibit, show, furnish.
 praesum, praeesse, praefuī (*takes dative*), be in command of, be in charge of.
 praeter, *prep.* with *acc.*, past; in addition to, except.
 praetereā, *adv.*, in addition, besides.
 precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, pray, beg, beg for, implore.
 prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, seize, take hold of.
 premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, press, press hard.
 pretiōsus, -a, -um, expensive, costly.
 pretium, -ī, N., price.
 pridem, *adv.*, long ago.
 primum, *adv.*, first, in the first place; quam primum, as soon as possible.

prīmus, -a, -um, first.
 princeps, -cipis, M., chief, prince.
 prior, prius, first, in advance.
 pristinus, -a, -um, former.
 priusquam, *conj.*, before.
 prō, *prep. with abl.*, for, in return
 for, on behalf of; before, in front
 of.
 probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, approve,
 approve of.
 prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,
 proceed, advance.
 procul, *adv.*, at a distance, far.
 prōdeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, come for-
 ward, come forth.
 proelium, -ī, N., battle.
 proficiscor, proficiscī, profectus sum,
 set out, start.
 prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum,
 advance, proceed.
 prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum,
 forbid, prevent, hinder.
 prōjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, hurl
 down; throw to.
 prōmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum,
 promise.
 prōmunturium, -ī, N., promontory.
 prope, *prep. with acc.*, near.
 properant, (they) hasten.
 properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hurry,
 hasten.
 propinqua, *see* propinquus.
 propinquus, -a, -um, near, neigh-
 boring.
 prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum,
 set forth, relate; offer.
 proprius, -a, -um, one's own, own.
 propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account
 of.
 Prōserpina, -ae, F., Proserpina
 (Proserpine), *queen of the lower*
world.
 prōspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, look
 forth, look, look toward.

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strā-
 tum, knock down.
 prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, benefit,
 help.
 prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum,
 protect.
 prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum,
 carry forward; aetate prōvectus,
 well on in years.
 Proxenus, -ī, M., Proxenus, *a com-
 panion of Ulysses.*
 proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next.
 prūdēns, *gen. -entis*, prudent, far-
 seeing.
 Pūblius, -ī, M., Publius (*name of a*
man or boy).
 puella, -ae, F., girl.
 puer, puerī, M., boy.
 pugna, -ae, F., fight, battle.
 pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fight.
 pugnus, -ī, M., fist.
 pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful.
 pulchra, *see* pulcher.
 pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, knock,
 knock at or upon.
 Pulvillus, -ī, M., Pulvillus, *a Roman*
consul.
 punctum, -ī, N., point, moment.
 pūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, punish.
 pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, clean,
 cleanse.
 putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, think.
 Pŷthia, -ae, F., Pythia, *the priestess*
of Apollo at Delphi.

Q

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum,
 inquire, ask; search for.
 quālis, -e, what sort of, what kind
 of.
 quam, *adv.*, how, as, than; *quam*
primum, as soon as; *with super-*
latives, as . . . as possible.
 quamquam, *conj.*, although.
 quandō, *adv.*, when?

quantus, -a, -um, how large, how great; **quantum** (*as noun*), how much; (*as adverb*), how greatly, how.

quārē, adv., why.

quārtus, -a, -um, fourth.

quasi, adv., as if.

quatiō, -ere, —, quassum, shake.

quattuor, numeral adj., four.

-que, enclitic conj., and.

quendam, see quidam.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., who, which, that; **interrog. adj.**, what?

quia, conj., because.

quid, what?

quidam, quaedam, quoddam *or quiddam*, a certain, some one, some.

quidem, adv. (*never stands first in its clause*), indeed, certainly; **nē . . . quidem**, not even.

quies, -ētis, F., rest.

quīnquāgintā, numeral adj., fifty.

quīnque, numeral adj., five.

quīntus, -a, -um, fifth.

Quīntus, -ī, M., Quintus (*name of a man or boy*).

quis, quid, who, what?

quisquam, quicquam *or quidquam*, anyone, anything.

quisque, quidque, each, each one, each man.

quisquis, quicquid, whoever, whatever.

quō, adv., to what place, whither, where.

quod, adv., because.

quō modo (quōmodo), adv., how?

quoniam, conj., since, because.

quoque, conj. (*never stands first in its clause*), also.

quot, indeclinable adj., how many.

quotannis, adv., every year, yearly.

quotiēns, adv., as often as.

quotus, -a, -um, which in number? what? **quota hōra**, what hour? **quousque, adv.**, how long?

R

rāmus, -ī, M., branch, bough.

rapīō, -ere, rapuī, raptum, seize.

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, take back; **sē recipere**, to withdraw, to betake oneself, to recover.

recreō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, renew, refresh.

rēctā, adv., directly.

rēctē, adv., rightly.

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, refuse.

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give back, give; render.

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, go back, return.

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, renew.

reditus, -ūs, M., return.

redūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead back, bring back.

referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, bring back, bring; **grātiā referre**, to repay in appropriate manner, to make a return.

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, flee.

rēgia, -ae, F., palace.

rēgina, -ae, F., queen.

regiō, -ōnis, F., region, district.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, reign, rule.

rēgnum, -ī, N., kingdom, royal power.

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, direct, rule.

rejiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw away, throw back.

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, leave.

reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest of.

relūctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, struggle against, resist.

remūneror, -ārī, -ātus sum, reward.

Remus, -ī, M., Remus, *the brother of Romulus*.

rēmus, -ī, M., oar.

renovō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, renew.

renūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, report.

repellō, -pellere, reppulī, repulsum, drive back, repel.

reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum, find.

repleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, fill.

repōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, put away, keep.

rēs, rei, F., thing, affair, fact, circumstance.

resistō, -sistere, -stiti (*takes dative*), resist.

respirō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, breathe.

respondeō, -ēre, respondi, respōnsum, reply, answer.

respōnsum, -ī, N., reply, answer.

restituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, restore.

retineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, retain, restrain.

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, draw back.

rettulī, *perfect of referō*.

revēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, reveal.

reveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, come back (to), return.

revertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, or revertor, -verti, -versus sum (*active regularly in perfect, past perfect, and future perfect only*), return.

rēx, rēgis, M., king.

Rhadamanthus, -ī, M., Rhadamanthus, *a judge in the lower world*.

Rhēnus, -ī, M., the Rhine.

Rhodium, -ī, M., Rhodius, *a companion of Ulysses*.

rideō, -ēre, risi, risum, laugh.

ridiculus, -a, -um, absurd, ridiculous.

rīpa, -ae, F., bank (*of a stream*).

risus, -ūs, M., laughter, laugh.

rītē, *adv.*, in a proper manner.

rīvus, -ī, M., stream.

rōbustus, -a, -um, strong.

rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, ask.

rogus, -ī, M., funeral pile.

Rōma, -ae, F., Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman; M. *as noun*, a Roman; *pl.*, the Romans.

Rōmulus, -ī, M., Romulus, *the founder of Rome*.

rosa, -ae, F., rose.

rōstrum, -ī, N., beak, prow.

ruīna, -ae, F. (*often in the plural*), ruins.

rumpō, -ere, rūpi, ruptum, break down, break.

ruō, -ere, ruī, rush.

rūpēs, -is, F., rock, cliff.

rūrsus, *adv.*, again.

S

sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, M., F., a priest, a priestess.

sacrificium, -ī, N., sacrifice.

sacrificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, offer sacrifice, sacrifice.

saepe, *adv.*, often.

saevus, -a, -um, fierce, savage.

sagāx, *gen.* sagācis, shrewd, sagacious.

sagitta, -ae, F., arrow.

sagittārius, -ī, M., archer.

sāl, salis, M., salt.

salsus, -a, -um, salted.

saltem, *adv.*, at least.

saltō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, dance.

salūs, -ūtis, F., safety.

salūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, greet.

salvē, *pl.* salvēte (*imperative of salveō*), hail, welcome, how do you do?

salvus, -a, -um, safe.

sānē, *adv.*, of course.
 sanguis, sanguinis, *M.*, blood.
 sānitās, -ātis, *F.*, sanity.
 sapiēns, *gen. -entis*, wise.
 satis, *adv.*, enough
 saxum, -ī, *N.*, stone, a stone, rock.
 scaena, -ae, *F.*, scene.
 scapha, -ae, *F.*, skiff, boat.
 scelerātus, -a, -um, wicked; *M. as noun*, wretch, scoundrel.
 scelus, sceleris, *N.*, crime.
 schola, -ae, *F.*, school.
 scientia, -ae, *F.*, knowledge, skill.
 sciō, scīre, scivī, scītum, know, know how.
 scribit, (he, she) writes.
 scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum, write.
 scūtum, -ī, *N.*, shield.
 sēcum, with himself, herself, itself, themselves.
 secundus, -a, -um, second.
 secūris, -is, *F.*, ax.
 sed, *conj.*, but.
 sēdecim, *numeral adj.*, sixteen.
 sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, sit, be seated.
 sēdēs, -is, *F.*, residence, abode.
 semper, *adv.*, always.
 senātor, -ōris, *M.*, senator.
 senātus, -ūs, *M.*, senate.
 senectūs, -ūtis, *F.*, old age.
 senex, senis, *M.*, old man.
 sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsū, feel, notice, think, know.
 sēparat, *see* sēparō.
 sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, separate.
 sepeliō, -īre, -ivī, sepultum, bury.
 septem, *numeral adj.*, seven.
 sepultūra, -ae, *F.*, burial.
 sepultus, -a, -um (*participle of sepeliō*), overcome, buried.
 sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow, pursue.

Seriphus, -ī, *F.*, Seriphus, *an island in the Aegean Sea*.
 sermō, -ōnis, *M.*, conversation.
 sērō, *adv.*, late, too late.
 serpēns, -entis, *F.*, serpent, snake.
 servitūs, -ūtis, *F.*, servitude, slavery.
 servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, save, preserve.
 servus, -ī, *M.*, slave, servant.
 Sextus, -ī, *M.*, Sextus (*name of a man or boy*); Sextus Tarquinius, *son of Tarquinius Superbus*.
 sī, *conj.*, if; sī quis, if anyone.
 sic, *adv.*, thus, so.
 siccus, -a, -um, dry.
 Sicilia, -ae, *F.*, Sicily.
 signifer, -erī, *M.*, standard-bearer.
 signum, -ī, *N.*, sign, mark, standard, signal.
 silentium, -ī, *N.*, silence.
 sileō, -ēre, -uī, be silent.
 silva, -ae, *F.*, forest.
 similis, -e, like, similar.
 simul, *adv.*, at the same time.
 simulātus, -a, -um, pretended, fictitious.
 simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, pretend.
 sīn, *conj.*, but if; sīn minus, if not.
 sine, *prep. with abl.*, without.
 singulī, -ae, -a, one by one, one at a time.
 sinistra, -ae, *F.*, left hand, left.
 sinō, -ere, sivī, situm, permit, allow.
 sinus, -ūs, *M.*, a fold, bosom.
 sitiō, -īre, -ivī, thirst, be thirsty.
 situs, -ūs, *M.*, site, location.
 sive, or seu, *conj.*, whether, or if; sive . . . sive, whether . . . or, either . . . or.
 socius, -ī, *M.*, ally, comrade.
 sōl, sōlis, *M.*, the sun.
 soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, be accustomed.

solitus, -a, -um, customary, usual.
 solium, -ī, N., throne.
 solum, *adv.*, only, merely.
 solus, -a, -um, alone, only.
 solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, loosen,
 unfasten, pay; *of ships, with or*
without nāvem, weigh anchor, set
 sail.
 somnus, -ī, M., sleep.
 sonitus, -ūs, M., sound.
 sonōrus, -a, -um, sonorous.
 sonus, -ī, M., sound.
 soror, -ōris, F., sister.
 sors, sortis, F., lot.
 Sparta, -ae, F., Sparta, *a city of*
Greece.
 spatium, -ī, N., space.
 speciēs, -ēī, F., appearance, aspect.
 spectātor, -ōris, M., spectator.
 spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, watch,
 look at, look.
 speculum, -ī, N., mirror.
 spēlunca, -ae, F., cave, cavern.
 spēs, speī, F., hope.
 splendidus, -a, -um, splendid.
 spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, plunder.
 (spōns, spontis), F., *only abl. sponte,*
usually with meā, tuā, suā, of
one's own accord, voluntarily.
 Spurius, -ī, M., Spurius, *a Roman*
name; Spurius Lartius, a Roman
senator.
 squālidus, -a, -um, squalid, dirty.
 squālor, -ōris, M., squalor, filth.
 stabulum, -ī, N., stable, stall.
 statim, *adv.*, at once, immediately.
 statua, -ae, F., statue.
 stella, -ae, F., star.
 stipendium, -ī, N., tribute.
 stō, stāre, steti, stātūrus, stand.
 stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictum, strip,
 draw, draw tight.
 studeō, -ēre, studuī (*takes dative*),
 apply oneself, study.

studiōsus, -a, -um, studious.
 stultus, -a, -um, foolish.
 Stymphālis, *gen. -idis*, Stymphalian.
 Stymphālus, -ī, M., Stymphalus, *a*
town of Greece.
 Styx, Stygis, F., the Styx, *a river of*
the lower world.
 suāvis, -e, sweet, agreeable.
 sub, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, under.
 subdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, put
 under, set to.
 subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, undergo.
 subitō, *adv.*, suddenly.
 sublicius, -a, -um, resting on piles;
 pōns sublicius, a pile bridge.
 succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,
 succeed, take the place of.
 succidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, cut
 down.
 suī, *dat. sibi, acc. and abl. sē, third*
person, sing. and pl., reflexive pro-
noun, of himself, herself, itself,
themselves.
 suibus, *dative and ablative plural of*
sūs.
 sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be.
 summoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtus,
 remove.
 summus, -a, -um, highest, greatest,
 utmost; highest part of, top of.
 sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take,
 take up, assume.
 sunt, (they) are.
 superbia, -ae, F., pride, haughtiness.
 superbus, -a, -um, proud, haughty.
 superior, -ius, higher, preceding.
 superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, defeat,
 overcome.
 supersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, re-
 main, be left.
 supplex, *gen. supplicis, M. and F.,*
suppliant.
 supplicium, -ī, N., punishment.
 supplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, pray to.
 suprā, *adv.*, above, before.
 surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum, rise.

sūs, suis, M., hog; *pl.*, swine.
 suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,
 undertake.
 suspiciō, -ōnis, F., suspicion.
 suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, suspect.
 sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum,
 hold up, withstand.
 suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their,
in reflexive meaning; his own,
 her own, its own, their own.

T

tabernāculum, -ī, N., tent.
 taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitum, be silent.
 Taenarum, -ī, N., Taenarum, *a
 promontory on the coast of Greece*.
 tālāria, -ium, N. *pl.*, winged sandals.
 tālis, -e, such.
 tam, *adv.*, so; tam . . . quam, as
 . . . as.
 tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless, still, how-
 ever.
 tandem, *adv.*, at length.
 tangō, -ere, tetigī, tactum, touch.
 tantus, -a, -um, so great, so large;
 tantus . . . quantus, as large
 . . . as.
 Tarquinius, -ī, M., Tarquinius Su-
 perbus, *a king of Rome*.
 Tartarus, -ī, M., Tartarus, *the place
 of punishment in the lower world*.
 taurus, -ī, M., bull.
 tē, *see* tū.
 tēctum, -ī, N., house, roof.
 tēcum, with you (*see* tū).
 tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover,
 protect.
 tēla, -ae, F., web (*a piece of cloth
 in a loom*).
 tēlum, -ī, N., weapon.
 temerārius, -a, -um, rash.
 tempestās, -ātis, F., storm, weather.
 templum, -ī, N., temple.
 temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, try
 temptus, -oris, N., time.

tenebrae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, darkness.
 teneō, -ēre, tenuī, hold, hold to;
 keep back.
 tergum, -ī, N., back, rear.
 ternī, -ae, -a; three by three, by
 groups of three.
 terra, -ae, F., land, the earth.
 terreō, -ēre, terruī, territum,
 frighten.
 terribilis, -e, terrible, dreadful.
 terror, -ōris, M., terror, fright.
 tertius, -a, -um, third.
 texō, -ere, texuī, textum, weave.
 Thēbae, -ārum, F. *pl.*, Thebes, *a
 city of Greece*.
 Thēbānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Thebans.
 Thermōdōn, -ontis, M., the Ther-
 modon, *a river in Asia Minor*.
 Thessalia, -ae, F., Thessaly.
 Thrācia, -ae, F., Thrace.
 Tiberis, -is, M., the Tiber, *a river of
 Italy*.
 tibi, to you, you (*as indirect object*).
 timeō, -ēre, -uī, fear.
 timet, (he, she, it) fears.
 timidus, -a, -um, timid, cowardly.
 timor, -ōris, M., fear.
 Tīryns, Tīrynthīs, F., Tiryns, *a city
 in Greece*.
 Titus, -ī, M., Titus (*name of a boy
 or man*); Titus Herminius, *a
 Roman senator*.
 tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, raise,
 lift.
 torreo, -ēre, torruī, tostum, roast.
 tostus, -a, -um, roasted.
 tot, *indeclinable adj.*, so many.
 tōtus, -a, -um, the whole, all.
 tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, treat;
 handle.
 trādō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, sur-
 render, give up; report.
 trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,
 lead across, bring across.

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum, drag, draw, pull.

trājectus, -ūs, M., crossing, passage.

trājiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, pierce.

tranquillē, *adv.*, quietly.

tranquillitās, -ātis, F., a calm at sea.

tranquillus, -a, -um, calm, still.

trāns, *prep.* with *acc.*, across.

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum, cross.

trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, pierce.

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry across, transport.

trānsvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, convey across.

tredecim, *numeral adj.*, thirteen.

tremō, -ere, -uī, tremble.

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, be in confusion, hurry about in alarm.

trēs, tria, three.

tribūtum, -ī, N., tribute; *pl.*, tribute, indemnity.

triumphus, -ī, M., triumph.

Trōja, -ae, F., Troy.

Trōjānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Trojans.

tū, *gen.* tuī, you (*of one person*).

tua, *see* tuus.

tum, *adv.*, then.

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, disturb.

turpis, -e, disgraceful.

Tusculum, -ī, N., Tusculum, a town not far from Rome.

tūtō, *adv.*, safely.

tūtus, -a, -um, safe.

tuus, -a, -um, your, yours (*of one person*).

U

ubi, *adv.*, where, when.

ubinam, *adv.*, where in the world, where?

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, punish, take vengeance on.

Ulixēs, Ulixis, M., Ulysses, a Greek hero.

ūllus, -a, -um, any.

ulterior, -ius, farther.

ultimus, -a, -um, last.

ululō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, howl, bark.

umerus, -ī, M., upper arm, shoulder.

umquam, *adv.*, ever.

unda, -ae, F., wave.

unde, *adv.*, from where, whence.

ūndecimus, -a, -um, eleventh.

undique, *adv.*, on all sides, from all sides.

ūnus, -a, -um, one; ad ūnum, to a man.

urbs, urbis, F., city.

urna, -ae, F., jar, pitcher.

usque, *adv.*, all the way, even; usque ad, as far as, until.

ūsus, -ūs, M., experience.

ut, *adv.*, as, when, how.

uter, -tra, -trum, which (*of two*)?

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two, both.

uxor, -ōris, F., wife.

V

vacuus, -a, -um, vacant, empty.

vae, *interjection*, woe, alas (for)!

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, wander.

valdē, *adv.*, very, very much.

valē, farewell, good-by (*imperative of valeō*).

valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, be well, be strong.

Valerius, -ī, M., Valerius, a Roman consul.

validus, -a, -um, strong, well.

vallēs, vallis, F., valley.

vāllum, -ī, N., rampart, wall.

vāpulo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (*active forms translated as passive*), be beaten, be whipped.

varius, -a, -um, various, different.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, lay waste, destroy.

vehementer, *adv.*, violently, strongly, earnestly, very much, very.
 vel, *adv.*, even; *conj.*, or.
 vellus, velleris, *N.*, fleece.
 velō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, envelop, veil.
 venēnum, -ī, *N.*, poison, magic drug.
 veneror, -ārī, -ātus sum, worship, reverence.
 veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, come.
 venter, ventris, *M.*, stomach, belly.
 ventus, -ī, *M.*, wind.
 verbera, -um, *N. pl.*, blows.
 verbum, -ī, *N.*, word.
 vereor, -ērī, veritus sum, fear.
 vērō, *adv.*, in truth, indeed. *See* immō.
 vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn.
 vērus, -a, -um, true; vērum or vēra as *noun*, the truth.
 vēscor, vēscī, feed upon.
 Vespasiānus, -ī, *M.*, Vespasian, a Roman name; Flavius Vespasiānus, the Roman emperor Vespasian.
 vesper, -erī, *M.*, evening.
 vesperī, in the evening.
 vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours (*of more than one person*).
 vēstīgium, -ī, *N.*, footstep, track.
 vestimentum, -ī, *N.*, garment, coverlet, blanket.
 vestis, vestis, *F.*, garment, clothing.
 vestitus, -ūs, *M.*, clothing.
 vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitum, forbid.
 via, -ae, *F.*, street, road, way.
 viātor, -ōris, *M.*, traveler.
 victī, -ōrum, *M. pl.* (*past participle of vincō as noun*), the conquered, the vanquished.
 victima, -ae, *F.*, victim (*for sacrifice*).
 victōria, -ae, *F.*, victory.
 vidēmus, we see.
 vident, (they) see.
 videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsum, see.

videor, -ērī, vīsus sum, seem.
 videt, (he, she, it) sees.
 vigil, vigilis, *M.*, sentinel.
 vigilia, -ae, *F.*, watch (*a division of time*).
 vīgintī, *numeral adj.*, twenty.
 villa, -ae, *F.*, farmhouse, country house.
 vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vinctum, bind.
 vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, conquer, defeat.
 vinculum, -ī, *N.*, chain, bond.
 vinum, -ī, *N.*, wine.
 vir, virī, *M.*, man, husband.
 virēs, *plural of vīs*.
 virgō, virginis, *F.*, young woman, maiden, virgin.
 virtūs, -ūtis, *F.*, manhood, manly spirit, courage.
 vīs, *F.*, violence, force; *pl.* virēs, virium, strength.
 vīs, *second person of volō*, wish.
 vita, -ae, *F.*, life.
 vitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, avoid.
 vivō, -ere, vīxī, victum, live, be alive.
 vivus, -a, -um, alive.
 vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.
 vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call.
 volō, -āre, -āvi, -āturus, fly.
 volō, velle, voluī, wish, be willing.
 voluntās, -ātis, *F.*, will, wish.
 vorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, devour.
 vōs, you (*plural nominative and accusative*).
 vōx, vōcis, *F.*, voice; magna vōx, a loud voice; parva vōx, a low voice.
 Vulcānus, -ī, *M.*, Vulcan, the god of fire.
 vulnerātus, -a, -um (*participle of vulnerō as adj.*), wounded.
 vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, wound.
 vulnus, vulneris, *N.*, a wound.
 vulpēs, vulpis, *F.*, fox.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

able, be able, possum, posse, potuī.

about, dē, *prep. with abl.*

absent, be absent, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.

accept, accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

account, on account of, propter, *prep. with acc.*

across, trāns, *prep. with acc.*

admire, miror, -ārī, -ātus sum.

advance, prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum.

advice, cōnsilium, -ī, N.

after (*preposition*), post, *prep. with acc.*

again, iterum, *adv.*

aid, auxilium, -ī, N.

alive, vīvus, -a, -um.

all, omnis, -e.

ally, socius, -ī, M.

alone, sōlus, -a, -um.

also, quoque; etiam, *advs.*

always, semper, *adv.*

America, America, -ae, F.

and, et, -que, *conj's.*

animal, bēstia, -ae, F.; animal, animālis, N.

announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

another, alius, -a, -ud.

answer, respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum.

appear, appāreō, -ēre, -uī.

approach, appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

approve, probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

archer, sagittārius, -ī, M.

armed, armātus, -a, -um.

arms, arma, -ōrum, N. *pl.*

army, exercitus, -ūs, M.

arouse, excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

arrival, adventus, -ūs, M.

arrive, perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum.

arrow, sagitta, -ae, F.

ask, interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

assemble, conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum.

at length, tandem, *adv.*

at once, statim, *adv.*

attack (*noun*), impetus, -ūs, M.

attack (*verb*), oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

aunt, amita, -ae, F.

await, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

away, be away, be distant, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.

ax, secūris, secūris, F.

B

bad, malus, -a, -um.

badge, insigne, -is, N.

bank, ripa, -ae, F.

barbarian, barbarus, -ī, M.

battle, proelium, -ī, N.

be, am, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus.

beast, bēstia, -ae, F.

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

because, quod, *conj.*
 before (*conjunction*), antequam.
 before (*preposition*), ante, *prep.*
 with acc.
 began, coepī, coepisse, coeptum.
 begin, incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -cep-
 tum.
 behind, post, *prep. with acc.*
 believe, crēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum.
 bend, flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum.
 best, optimus, -a, -um.
 between, inter, *prep. with acc.*
 bird, avis, avis, F.
 blame, culpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 blind, caecus, -a, -um.
 boat, nāvis, nāvis, F.
 body, corpus, corporis, N.
 boldness, audācia, -ae, F.
 book, liber, librī, M.
 bow, arcus, -ūs, M.
 boy, puer, puerī, M.
 branch, rāmus, -ī, M.
 brave, fortis, -e.
 bravely, fortiter, *adv.*
 bread, pānis, pānis, M.
 break, perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī,
 -ruptum.
 break down, frangō, -ere, frēgī,
 frāctum.
 bridge, pōns, pontis, M.
 bright, clārus, -a, -um.
 bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.
 bring, bring into, addūcō, -ducere,
 -dūxī, -ductum.
 brother, frāter, frātris, M.
 building, aedificium, -ī, N.
 but, sed, *conj.*
 by, ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*

C

call, appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;
 vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 camp, castra, -ōrum, N. *pl.*

can, be able, possum, posse, potuī.
 capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum;
 expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 carry, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 cavalry, equitēs, -um, M. *pl.*
 cave, antrum, -ī, N.; caverna, -ae, F.
 centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, M.
 certain, certus, -a, -um; to be cer-
 tain, prō certō habēre; a certain
 (person or thing), quīdam,
 quaedam, quiddam or quoddam.
 chain, vinculum, -ī, N.
 change, mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 child, infāns, infantis, M. and F.
 choose, dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
 Circe, Circē, Circae, F.
 citizen, cīvis, cīvis, M. and F.
 city, urbs, urbis, F.
 close, claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum.
 cloud, nūbēs, nūbis, F.
 collect, cōgō, -ere, cōgēgī, cōāctum.
 come, veniō, -īre, vēmī, ventum.
 command, be in command of, prae-
 sum, praeesse, praeuī.
 companion, comes, comitis, M.
 conceal, cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 concerning, dē, *prep. with abl.*
 conquer, vincō, -ere, vicī, victum.
 consul, cōsul, cōsulis, M.
 controversy, contrōversia, -ae, F.
 Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, F.
 cottage, casa, -ae, F.
 country, terra, -ae, F.; (native)
 country, patria, -ae, F.
 courage, virtūs, virtūtis, F.
 cousin (a girl or woman), cōnsō-
 brīna, -ae, F.
 cowardly, ignāvus, -a, -um.
 credible, crēdibilis, -e.
 cross, trānseō, -īre, -īī, -itum.
 cruel, crūdēlis, -e.
 cup, pōculum, -ī, N.

D

danger, periculum, -ī, N.
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.
daughter, filia, -ae, F.
day, diēs, diēī, M. and F.
daybreak, prima lūx.
dead, mortuus, -a, -um.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
deer, cervus, -ī, M.
defeat, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;
vincō, -ere, vici, victum.
defend, dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī,
dēfēnsū.
delay, moror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
demand, postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
desert, dēsērō, -ere, -uī, -tum.
desire, cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -itum;
dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
despair of, dēspērō, -āre, -āvī,
-ātum.
destroy, dēlēō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum;
diruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum.
dim, obseūrus, -a, -um.
dinner, cēna, -ae, F.
divide, dividō, -ere, divīsī, divīsum.
dog, canis, canis, M. and F.
door, jānuā, -ae, F.
doubt, dubium, -ī, N.
drink, bibō, -ere, bibī.
drive, agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum.
drive back, repellō, -ere, reppulī,
repulsum.
drive out, expellō, -pellere, -pulī,
-pulsum.
duty, officium, -ī, N.

E

easily, facile, *adv.*
easy, facilis, -e.
eat, edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum.
eight, octō, *indeclinable numeral.*

elect, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
enchantress, maga, -ae, F.
end, finis, finis, M.
enemy, inimicus, -ī, M. (*a personal enemy*); hostis, hostis, M. (*a public enemy*).
energetic, impiger, -gra, -grum.
enter, intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
escape, effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī,
-fugitūrus.
Etruscan, Etrūscus, -ī, M.
Eumaeus, Eumaeus, -ī, M.
Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, F.
evening, in the evening, *vesperī.*
everything, omnia (*neuter pl. of omnis*).
exile, exul, exulis, M.
expect, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
expensive, pretiōsus, -a, -um.
eye, oculus, -ī, M.

F

fact, *see thing.*
faithful, fidēlis, -e.
faithless, perfidus, -a, -um.
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
far, longē, *adv.*
farewell, valē, *pl. valēte.*
farmer, agricola, -ae, M.
farmhouse, villa, -ae, F.
father, pater, patris, M.
fear, timeō, -ēre, -uī; vereor, -ērī,
veritus sum.
few, a few, pauci, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, M.
fierce, ferus, -a, -um; ācer, ācris,
ācre.
fiercely, ācriter, *adv.*
fifty, quīnquāgīntā, *indeclinable numeral.*
fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
finally, dēnique, *adv.*
find, invenīō, -venīre, -venī,
-ventum.

fire, ignis, ignis, M.
 first, primus, -a, -um.
 five, quīque, *indeclinable numeral*.
 flee, fugiō, -ere, fugī, fugitūrus.
 fleece, vellus, velleris, N.
 flight, fuga, -ae, F.
 flock, grex, gregis, M.
 flow, fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxum.
 flower, flōs, flōris, M.
 follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.
 food, cibus, -ī, M.
 foot, pēs, pedis, M.
 for, on behalf of, prō, *prep. with abl.*
 forces, cōpiae, -ārum, F. *pl.*
 forehead, frōns, frontis, F.
 forest, silva, -ae, F.
 form (*noun*), fōrma, -ae, F.
 form (*a plan*), capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
 formerly, ōlim, *adv.*
 fort, castellum, -ī, N.
 fortify, mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -itum.
 found, condō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
 four, quattuor, *indeclinable numeral*.
 friend, amīcus, -ī, M.
 from, ē, ex; dē; ā, ab, *preps. with abl.*
 front, in front of, ante, *prep. with acc.*; prō, *prep. with abl.*
 full, plēnus, -a, -um.
 Fulvia, Fulvia, -ae, F.

G

garden, hortus, -ī, M.
 gate, porta, -ae, F.
 Gaul (*a country*), Gallia, -ae, F.
 Gaul (*an inhabitant of the country of Gaul*), Gallus, -ī, M.
 general, imperātor, -ōris, M.
 Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
 gift, dōnum, -ī, N.
 girl, puella, -ae, F.
 give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.

go, eō, īre, īī (īvī), itum; go out, go forth, exeō, -īre, -īī, -itum; go away, abeō, -īre, -īī, -itum.
 god, a god, deus, deī (*pl. dī*), M.
 golden, aureus, -a, -um.
 good, bonus, -a, -um; very good, optimus, -a, -um.
 grain, frūmentum, -ī, N.
 grass, grāmen, grāminis, N.
 Great Britain, Britannia, -ae, F.
 greatly, magnopere, *adv.*
 Greek, a Greek, Graecus, -ī, M.
 greet, salūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 ground, on the ground, humī.
 guard, custōdiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum.
 guest, hōspes, hospitis, M.

H

hall, ātrium, -ī, N.
 happy, laetus -a, -um; fēlix, *gen. fēlicis*.
 hasten, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 hate, ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus.
 have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
 he, is, *gen. ejus*.
 head, caput, capitis, N.
 hear, audiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum.
 heavy, gravis, -e.
 height, altitūdō, -dinis, F.
 helmet, galea, -ae, F.
 help (*noun*), auxilium, -ī, N.
 help (*verb*), jūvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum.
 her, when reflexive, suus, -a, -um; when not reflexive, ejus.
 here, hīc, *adv.*
 high, altus, -a, -um.
 hill, collis, collis, M.
 himself, herself, itself, reflexive, *gen. suī (dat. sibi, acc. and abl. sē or sēsē)*.
 his, her, its, when reflexive, suus, -a, -um; when not reflexive, ejus.
 hold, teneō, -ēre, -uī.
 home, domus, -ūs, F.; at home, domī.

honor, honor, honōris, M.
 Horatius, Horātius, -ī, M.
 horn, cornū, -ūs, N.
 horse, equus, -ī, M.
 hour, hōra, -ae, F.
 house, tēctum, -ī, N.
 how, quam, *adv.*
 hungry, be hungry, hunger, ēsuriō,
 -īre.
 hurry, properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 husband, vir, virī, M.; marītus,
 -ī, M.

I

I, ego, *gen.* meī.
 if, sī, *conj.*
 ill, aeger, -gra, -grum.
 immortal, immortalis, -e.
 impudent, impudēns, *gen.* impuden-
 tis.
 in, in, *prep. with abl.*
 in front of, ante, *prep. with acc.*; prō,
prep. with abl.
 in vain, frūstrā, *adv.*
 industrious, impiger, -gra, -grum.
 inhabitant, incola, -ae, M. and F.
 into, in, *prep. with acc.*
 invite, invitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 Ireland, Hibernia, -ae, F.
 is, est.
 island, insula, -ae, F.
 it, is, ea, id.
 Italy, Italia, -ae, F.

J

jar, amphora, -ae, F.
 javelin, jaculum, -ī, N.; pilum, -ī, N.
 jump, jump down, dēsiliō, -silire,
 -siluī, -sultum.

K

kill, interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum;
 necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; occidō,
 -cidere, -cidī, -cisum.

kind, benignus, -a, -um.
 kindle, accendō, -cendere, -cendī,
 -cēsum.
 king, rēx, rēgis, M.
 kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, N.
 know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum.
 known, well known, nōtus, -a, -um.

L

lake, lacus, -ūs, M.
 lamb, agnus, -ī, M.
 lamp, lucerna, -ae, F.
 land, terra, -ae, F.; native land,
 patria, -ae, F.
 language, lingua, -ae, F.
 large, magnus, -a, -um.
 late, sērō, *adv.*
 Latin, Latīnus, -a, -um.
 law, lēx, lēgis, F.
 lay down, dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī,
 -positum.
 lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 lazy, piger, -gra, -grum.
 lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
 leader, dux, ducis, M.
 learn, discō, -ere, didicī.
 leave, relinquō, -ere, reliquī, re-
 lictum.
 left, left hand, sinistra, -ae, F.
 legion, legiō, -ōnis, F.
 less, minus, *adv.*
 let down, dēmittō, -mittere, -misi,
 -missum.
 letter, epistula, -ae, F.
 lie, jaceō, -ēre, -uī.
 lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, M.
 life, vīta, -ae, F.
 light, lūx, lūcis, F.
 little, parvus, -a, -um.
 live, habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
 long, longus, -a, -um.
 long, for a long time, diū, *adv.*
 look, spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

look around, circumspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

lose, amitto, -ere, amīsi, amissum.

loud, magnus, -a, -um.

love, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

M

maid, maid servant, ancilla, -ae, f.

make, faciō, -ere, feci, factum.

make war on, bellum inferō, inferre, intulī, illātum.

man, vir, virī, m.; homō, hominis, m.

many, multī, -ae, -a.

march (noun), iter, itineris, n.

Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, m.

master, dominus, -ī, m.

me, as direct object, mē; as indirect object, mihi.

Mercury, Mercurius, -ī, m.

messenger, nūntius, -ī, m.

Messina, Messāna, -ae, f.

middle, middle of, medius, -a, -um.

mine, see my.

money, pecūnia, -ae, f.

monster, mōnstrum, -ī, n.

moon, lūna, -ae, f.

morning, in the morning, māne, adv.

mother, māter, mātris, f.

mountain, mōns, montis, m.

move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum.

murmur, murmurō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

my, mine, meus, -a, -um.

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, n.

narrow, angustus, -a, -um.

nation, gēns, gentis, f.

native country, patria, -ae, f.

near (adjective), propinquus, -a, -um.

near (preposition), prope, prep. with acc.

neglect, neglegō, -ere, neglēxī, neglēctum.

Neptune, Neptūnus, -ī, m.

never, numquam, adv.

nevertheless, tamen, adv.

night, nox, noctis, f.; at night, noctū, adv.

no (adjective), nullus, -a, -um; no longer, nōn jam.

noble, the nobles, nōbilēs, -ium, m. pl.

nobody, nēmō, dat. nēminī, acc. nēminem (gen. and abl. from nullus).

nor, neque, conj.

not, nōn, adv.

not yet, nōndum, adv.

now, nūnc, adv.

number, numerus, -ī, m.

O

obey, pāreō, -ēre, -uī.

offer, offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum.

often, saepe, adv.

old man, senex, gen. senis, m.

on, in, prep. with abl.

on account of, propter, prep. with acc.

on all sides, undique, adv.

once, at once, statim, adv.

one by one, singulī, -ae, -a.

open (adjective), apertus, -a, -um.

open (verb), aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tum.

order, jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum.

others, the others, reliquī, -ōrum, m. pl.; cēteri, -ōrum, m. pl.

ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

our, noster, -tra, -trum.

outside, extrā, prep. with acc.

P

Palatine (Hill), Palātium, -ī, n.

part, pars, partis, f.

peace, pāx, pācis, f.

people, populus, -ī, m.

perhaps, fortasse, adv.

perish, pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.

picture, pictūra, -ae, F.
pierce, trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum.
place (*noun*), locus, -ī, M. (*pl.* loca, -ōrum, N.).
place (*verb*), pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum.
place in command of, praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, N.
pleasant, amoenus, -a, -um.
please, placeō, -ēre, -uī.
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
poet, poēta, -ae, M.
point out, mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
powerful, potēns, *gen.* potentis.
praise, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
prepare, parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
prepared, parātus, -a, -um.
present, dōnum, -ī, N.
(be) present, adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus.
prisoner, captīvus, -ī, M.
protect, tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum.
Publius, Pūblius, -ī, M.
pull, trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum.
punish, pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -itum.
punishment, poena, -ae, F.
put out, extingūō, -tinguere, -tīnxī, -tinctum.

Q

queen, rēgīna, -ae, F.
quickly, celeriter, *adv.*

R

ram, ariēs, arietis, M.
rampart, vāllum, -ī, N.
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum.
rear, tergum, -ī, N.
receive, excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum; accipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.

recognize, agnōscō, -ere, agnōvī, agnitum.
redoubt, castellum, -ī, N.
region, regiō, -ōnis, F.
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.
renew, renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
reply, respondeō, -ēre, respondi, respōnsum.
repulse, repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum.
reputation, fāma, -ae, F.
resist, resistō, -ere, restitī.
restore, restituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum.
return (*noun*), reditus, -ūs, M.
return (*verb*), redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum.
reward, praemium, -ī, N.
right, right hand, dextra, -ae, F.
rise, surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctum.
river, flūmen, flūminis, N.
road, iter, itineris, N.; via, -ae, F.
Roman (*noun*), Rōmānus, -ī, M.
Roman (*adjective*), Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, F.
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, M.
rope, fūnis, fūnis, M.
rose, rosa, -ae, F.
rouse, excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
route, iter, itineris, N.
rule, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum.
run, currō, -ere, cucurri, cursum.

S

safe, tūtus, -a, -um.
safely, tūtō, *adv.*
sailor, nauta, -ae, M.
same, idem, eadem, idem.
save, servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
say, dīcō, -ere, dixī, dictum.
school, schola, -ae, F.
scout, explōrātor, -ōris, M.

sea, mare, maris, N.
 sea coast, ōra maritima.
 see, videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsum.
 seek, quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quae-
 sītum; petō, -ere, petivī or petiī,
 petitum.
 seem, videor, vidērī, vīsus sum
 (*passive of videō*).
 seize, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 self, himself, herself, itself, ipse,
 ipsa, ipsum.
 senator, senātor, -ōris, M.
 send, mittō, -ere, misi, missum.
 sentinel, vigil, vigilis, M.
 serpent, serpēs, -entis, M.
 servant, servus, -ī, M.
 set out, proficiscor, proficisci, pro-
 fectus sum.
 Sextus, Sextus, -ī, M.
 share, partior, partiri, partitus sum.
 sharp, acūtus, -a, -um.
 sheep, ovis, ovis, F.
 shield, scūtum, -ī, N.
 ship, nāvis, nāvis, F.
 shore, litus, litoris, N.
 short, brevis, -e.
 shout, clāmor, clāmōris, M.
 show, ostendō, -dere, -dī, -tum.
 Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, F.
 sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.
 sight, cōspectus, -ūs, M.
 silence, silentium, -ī, N.
 silent, be silent, sileō, -ēre, -ui.
 sing, cantō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 sister, soror, sorōris, F.
 sit, sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum.
 six, sex.
 slave, servus, -ī, M.
 sleep (*noun*), somnus, -ī, M.
 sleep (*verb*), dormiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum.
 slowly, lentē, *adv.*
 small, parvus, -a, -um.
 soldier, miles, militis, M.
 sometimes, interdum, *adv.*

son, filius, -ī, M.
 soon, mox, *adv.*; as soon as possible,
 quam primum.
 sound, sonus, -ī, M.
 Spain, Hispānia, -ae, F.
 Sparta, Sparta, -ae, F.
 speak, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.
 spear, hasta, -ae, F.
 splendid, splendidus, -a, -um.
 staff, baculum, -ī, N.
 stand, stō, stāre, steti, stāturus.
 stand about, circumstō, -stāre,
 -steti, —.
 star, stella, -ae, F.
 stone, saxum, -ī, N.; lapis, lapidis, M.
 story, fābula, -ae, F.
 street, via, -ae, F.
 strength, virēs, virium, F. *pl.*
 strong, validus, -a, -um.
 suddenly, subitō, *adv.*
 sufficiently, satis, *adv.*
 suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.
 summer, aestās, aestātis, F.; in
 summer, aestāte.
 sun, sōl, sōlis, M.
 sweet, dulcis, -e.
 swiftly, celeriter, *adv.*
 swim, natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 sword, gladius, -ī, M.

T

table, mēnsa, -ae, F.
 take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum;
 sūmō, -ere, sūmsi, sūptum.
 talk, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.
 teacher, magister, -trī, M.; magistra,
 -ae, F.
 tell, nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
 temple, templum, -ī, N.
 tent, tabernāculum, -ī, N.
 thank, grātiās agō (agere, ēgī,
 āctum).
 that (*pl. those*), ille, illa, illud; is,
 ea, id.

their, when reflexive, suus, -a, -um;
when not reflexive, eorum, eorum.

themselves, gen. suī, dat. sibi, acc.
and abl. sē or sēsē.

there, ibi, adv.

thing, rēs, rei, f.

think, putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.

three, trēs, tria.

through, per, *prep. with acc.*

throw, jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum;
conjiō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum.

throw away, rejiciō, -jicere, -jēcī,
-jectum.

thus, ita, adv.

Tiber, Tiberis, Tiberis, m.

tie together, colligō, -āre, -āvi,
-ātum.

time, tempus, temporis, n.

timid, timidus, -a, -um.

tired, tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um.

Titus, Titus, -i, m.

to, ad, in, *preps. with acc.*

today, hodiē, adv.

tomorrow, crās, adv.

top, the top of, summus, -a, -um.

toward, ad, *prep. with acc.*

town, oppidum, -i, n.

tree, arbor, arboris, f.

triumph, triumphus, -i, m.

Troy, Trōja, -ae, f.

turn, vertō, -ere, vertī, versum.

twist, contorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī,
-tortum.

two, duo, duae, duo.

U

Ulysses, Ulixēs, Ulixis, m.

uncle, avunculus, -i, m.

under, sub, *prep. with abl. or acc.*

unfavorable, iniquus, -a, -um.

unfortunate, miser, misera, miserum.

unhappy, miser, misera, miserum.

unlike, dissimilis, -e.

V

vain, in vain, frūstrā, adv.

victory, victōria, ae, f.

vigorously, ācriter, adv.

voice, vōx, vōcis, f.

W

wage (war), gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum.

wait for, expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

walk, ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

wall, mūrus, -i, m.

wander, errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum;
vāgor, -ārī, vāgātus sum.

war, bellum, -i, n.

warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.

waste, lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvi,
-ātum.

watch (noun), vigilia, -ae, f.

watch (verb), spectō, -āre, -āvi,
-ātum.

water, aqua, -ae, f.

weapons, arma, -ōrum, n. pl.

well, bene, adv.

well known, nōtus, -a, -um.

what, interrogative, quid?

when, ubi; cum.

where, ubi, adv.

which, relative pronoun, quī, quae,
quod.

who, interrogative, quis, quid; rela-
tive, quī, quae, quod.

whole, tōtus, -a, -um.

why, cūr, adv.

wide, lātus, -a, -um.

widely, lātē, adv.

wild, ferus, -a, -um.

wild animal, fera, -ae, f.

window, fenestra, -ae, f.

wine, vīnum, -i, n.

winter, hiems, hiemis, f.; in winter,
hieme.

wise, sapiēns, gen. sapientis.

wish, cupiō, -ere, -ivī, -itum; volō,
velle, volui.

with, cum, *prep. with abl.*

withdraw, discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum; mē recipiō, *etc.*, recipere, recēpī, receptum.

without, sine, *prep. with abl.*

woman, fēmina, -ae, F.

wonder at, mīror, -ārī, -atus sum.

word, verbum, -ī, N.

work, labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

wound, vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

write, scribō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum.

Y

year, annus, -ī, M.

yesterday, herī, *adv.*

yet, not yet, nōndum, *adv.*

you, tū, *gen. tuī; pl., vōs, gen. vestrum.*

young man, juvenis, -is, M.

your, *of one person*, tuus, -a, -um;
of more than one person, vester, -tra, -trum.

INDEX

(Numbers refer to sections, unless page reference is specified.)

- ā, ab*, with ablative, 194 *a, b*.
 as prefix, Word Study V, p. 202.
- ABLATIVE CASE**, absolute, 696-699.
 of accompaniment, 424.
 of agent, 194
 of cause, Perseus, line 87, note.
 of description, 759.
 of manner, Perseus, line 43, note.
 of means, 422-425.
 of separation, App. 45 (1).
 of time at which, 541.
 with prepositions, 77.
- ACCENT**, p. 25.
- ACCUSATIVE CASE**, as direct object, 31.
 of duration of time, 542.
 with prepositions, 215.
- ad*, with accusative, *see* **ACCUSATIVE**.
 as prefix, Word Study IV, p. 168.
- ADJECTIVES**, defined, (3) p. 27.
 agreement of, 14, 22, 41 *a*, 50 *a*,
 77 *a*, 136, 178.
 comparison of, 623-626, 641,
 642, 649.
 declension of comparatives, 633.
 numeral, cardinal, 688, 689, App. 19.
 ordinal, App. 19.
 interrogative, 257.
 position of, 4.
 possessive, 171 *a*.
 predicate, 7, 14 *a*.
 substantive use of, 179.
 first and second declension of,
 170, 186.
 third declension of, 499-501, 513.
- ADVERB**, defined, 152.
 comparison of, 664, 665.
 formation of, 656, 657.
- AGREEMENT**, of adjectives, 14, 22,
 41 *a*, 50 *a*, 77 *a*, 136, 178.
 of appositives, 87.
 of participles, 369 *a*.
 of relative pronouns, 483.
 of verbs, 107.
- ALPHABET**, p. 22.
- ANTECEDENT**, defined, (5) p. 27.
- APPOSITION**, and appositive, defined,
 86.
 cases in apposition, 87.
- ARTICLE**.
 lack of in Latin, 3.
- ASSIMILATION OF CONSONANTS**,
 Word Study IV, p. 168.
- CARDINAL NUMERALS**, 688, 689.
- CASE**, defined, 36.
 names of Latin cases, 31, 41, 50,
 77.
- CASE ENDINGS**, first declension, 31,
 39, 49, 76.
 second declension, Fourth Review
 Lesson, p. 98.
 third declension, 318.
 fourth declension, 520.
 fifth declension, 681.
- castra*, form and meaning, 199 *a*.
- circum*, as prefix, Word Study III,
 p. 143.
- coepī*, use of, 536 *a*.
- COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES**, declen-
 sion of, 633.
- COMPARISON**, of adjectives, 623-626,
 641, 642, 649.
 of adverbs, 664, 665.
- COMPOUND VERBS**, with dative, 727.
- CONJUGATION**, first, 108, 109, 192,
 248, 268, 288, 355.
 second, 225, 248, 268, 288, 355.
 third, 403, 415, 447, 465.
 fourth, 432, 447, 465.
see under eō, ferō, fīō, possum,
sum, volō.
- CONJUNCTIONS**, defined, 223.
- cum*, preposition, with ablative, 76.
 enclitic, 573.
 as a prefix, Word Study V, p. 201.

- DATIVE CASE**, with adjectives, 68.
 with compound verbs, 727.
 with special verbs, 728.
 as indirect object, 50.
 position of, 69 (2).
- DECLENSION**.
 how determined, 85 *a*.
 first declension, 83, 85.
 second, 127, 128, 144, 153, 154, 161-163.
 third, 316, 317, 318, 331, 338, 339, 346, 347.
 fourth, 520.
 fifth, 681.
 of comparative adjectives, 633.
- DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES**, 204, 236, 275.
- DEPONENT VERBS**, 706-711, 717-721.
- DESCRIPTION**, ablative of, 759.
 genitive of, 758.
- "do"** in negative sentences and questions, 16.
- duo**, declension of, 689.
- ego**, declension of, 572.
- ENCLITICS**, 118, 573.
- eō**, conjugation of, 527, 552.
 compounds of, 528.
- ē, ex**, with ablative case, 76.
 use of in distinction from *ā* and *ab*, 194 *b*.
 as a prefix, Word Study III, p. 143.
- EXPLETIVE "there"** not translated into Latin, 78.
- ferō**, conjugation of, 764.
- fiō**, conjugation of, App. 38.
- FUTURE TENSE**, *see* TENSE.
- FUTURE PERFECT TENSE**, *see* TENSE.
- GENDER**, of nouns and pronouns, 143.
 in first declension, 134.
 in second declension, 163 (2), (3), (4).
 in third declension, 347.
 in fourth declension, 520.
 in fifth declension, 681 *a*.
- GENITIVE CASE**, defined, 41.
 of description, 758.
 of possession, 39.
 of the whole, App. 42 (2).
 position of, 69 (1).
- GERUND**, defined, 769.
 declension of, 769.
 uses of, 770.
- GRAMMAR**, elementary principles of, pp. 26-28.
 review of, 61-64.
- hic**, declension of, 204.
 as pronoun, 277.
- īdem**, declension of, 595.
- ille**, declension of, 236.
 as pronoun, 277.
- IMPERATIVE MOOD**, defined, 549.
 conjugation of, 550, 552.
- IMPERFECT TENSE**, *see* TENSE.
- in**, preposition with ablative, 76.
 with accusative, 417 *a*.
 as a prefix, Word Study V, p. 202.
- in-**, inseparable prefix, Word Study III, p. 144.
- INDICATIVE MOOD**, defined, 117.
- INDIRECT DISCOURSE**, 672-674.
- INDIRECT OBJECT**, defined, 49, 64.
 dative of, in Latin, 50.
 English phrase with "to" as equivalent, 49 *a*.
 position of, 69 (3).
- INFINITIVE MOOD**.
 future, 744.
 present, of regular verbs, 473 *a*.
 perfect, of regular verbs, 744, 745.
 of deponent verbs, 745 *a*.
 of *sum*, 100 *b*.
 in indirect discourse, 673, 749-752.
- INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE**, 256, 257.
- INTRANSITIVE VERBS**, defined, 126.
- ipse**, declension of, App. 25.
- is**, declension of, 275.
 as adjective, 276.
 as pronoun, 275 *a*.
- LATIN**, in ancient times, p. 18.
 modern Latin (Romance languages), p. 16

- LATIN ELEMENT IN ENGLISH**, p. 19.
 legal and medical terms from Latin, p. 20.
 forms of English derivatives from Latin, p. 20.
- meus*, use of, 171 *a*.
- MOOD**, *see* IMPERATIVE, INDICATIVE, INFINITIVE.
- "*my*," an adjective in Latin, 14 *b*, 171 *a*.
- ne*, sign of a question, 118.
- Negative commands, 551.
- NOMINATIVE CASE**, defined, 31.
 as subject, (1) p. 65.
 in predicate, (2) p. 65.
- nōnne*, sign of a question, 130, *a*, *b*.
- NOUN**, defined, (1) p. 26.
- NUMBER**, of nouns and pronouns, 27.
 of verbs, 107.
- NUMERALS**, adjectives, cardinal, 688, 689. App. 19.
 ordinal, App. 19.
- ob*, as a prefix, Word Study IV, p. 168.
- OBJECT**, direct, defined, 13, 63.
 accusative of, 31.
- OBJECT**, indirect, defined, 49.
 dative of, 50.
 phrases in English equivalent to, 49 *a*.
- ORDER OF WORDS** in Latin, 4, 15.
 position of genitive, 69 (1).
 position of dative, 69 (2).
- ORDINAL NUMERALS**, App. 19.
- PARTICIPLES**, defined, 368.
 agreement of, 369 *a*.
 future active, 736.
 perfect, 369.
 present, 734.
 declension of, 735.
 use of, 735 *a*.
- PAST PERFECT TENSE**, *see* TENSE.
- PERFECT SYSTEM OF VERBS**, 609.
- PERFECT TENSE**, *see* TENSE.
- PERSON OF VERBS**, 107.
- PERSON ENDINGS OF VERBS** IN LATIN, active, 110.
 passive, 193.
 in perfect tense, 355 *b*.
- PERSONAL PRONOUNS**, 572, 574.
- POSSESSION**, indicated by case ending, 39.
 two forms for its expression in English, 40.
- POSSESSIVES** of the first and second persons, 171 *a*, 571.
 of the third person, reflexive, 307, 309.
 of the third person, not reflexive, 308.
 omission of, 309 *a*.
- POSSESSIVE CASE**, 46.
- possum*, conjugation of, 559.
- PREDICATE**, defined, 62.
 adjective, 7.
 noun, 6.
- PREFIXES**, inseparable, p. 144.
 changes in spelling, p. 168.
 prepositions as, p. 202.
- PREPOSITIONS**, with ablative, 76.
 with accusative, 215.
 as prefixes, Word Study III, p. 143.
- PRESENT SYSTEM OF VERBS**, 289.
- PRESENT TENSE**, *see* TENSE.
- PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS**, 382, 383, 385, 387, 389, 404.
- PRONOUN**, defined, (4) p. 27.
 omitted in Latin as subject, 30.
 antecedent of, (5) p. 27.
 classes of, (6) p. 27.
 interrogative, 256.
 personal, declension of, 572.
 use of, 570, 571, 574.
 reflexive, 457, 458.
 relative, 480-483.
- PRONUNCIATION**, pp. 22-25.
- QUESTIONS**, forms of with *-ne*, 118.
 with *nōnne* 130 *a*.
 answers to, 119.
- quis*, declension of, 256.
- QUOTATIONS**, *see* INDIRECT DISCOURSE.
- REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS**, 457, 458.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS, 480-483.

ROMANCE LANGUAGES, p. 16.

numerals, from Latin, p. 16.

SIGNS OF TENSES, *see* TENSE.

SPECIAL VERBS WITH THE DATIVE, 728.

STEM OF VERBS, present, 384.

perfect, 384.

participial, 384.

use of, 386.

sub, with ablative and accusative, 449 *a*.

SUBJECT, defined, 5, 61.

omission of, 30.

SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES, 179.

SUFFIXES, Latin, Word Study VI, p. 248.

sum, conjugation of, 100, 300, 356.

suus, use of, 307, 309.

SYNOPSIS OF VERBS, 616, 617.

TENSE, defined, 255.

present, 108, 192, 225, 403, 415, 432.

imperfect, 247, 248, 268, 447.

imperfect and perfect distinguished, 357.

future, 288, 465, 466.

perfect, 354, 355, 356, 396, 439, 440.

person endings of, 355 *b*.

past perfect, 587, 588.

future perfect, 606-608.

signs of tenses, imperfect, 248 *a*;
future, 288 *a*, 466; past perfect, 587; future perfect, 607.

"there," as an expletive, 78.

TIME, at which, ablative, 541.

duration of, accusative, 542.

"to," in English phrases equivalent to indirect objects, 49 *a*.

in English phrases denoting place to which, 216.

TRANSITIVE VERBS, defined, 126.

trēs, declension of, 689.

tū, declension of, 572.

tuus, use of, 571.

VERBS, defined, (2) p. 26.

agreement of, 107.

transitive and intransitive, defined, 126.

compound verbs with dative, 727.

deponent verbs, 706-711, 717-721.

position of, 15.

vester, use of, 571.

vir, declension of, 161 *a*.

vīs, declension of, App. 5.

VOCATIVE CASE, defined, 162.

form of, 162.

VOICE, defined, 191.

volō, conjugation of, 763.

WORD ORDER, 4, 15.

"yes," how expressed in Latin, 119.

"you," English uses and Latin equivalents, 100 *a*.

"your," an adjective in Latin, 14 *b*.

tenes	poterit
tenebam	poterit
tenebo	potuit
teneri	potuerot
tenere eum	

